Language Materials of China’s Monguor Minority:
Huzhu Mongghul and Minhe Mangghuer

by
Dpal-ladan-bkra-shis, Keith Slater, et al.
SINO-PLATONIC PAPERS is an occasional series edited by Victor H. Mair. The purpose of the series is to make available to specialists and the interested public the results of research that, because of its unconventional or controversial nature, might otherwise go unpublished. The editor actively encourages younger, not yet well established, scholars and independent authors to submit manuscripts for consideration. Contributions in any of the major scholarly languages of the world, including Romanized Modern Standard Mandarin (MSM) and Japanese, are acceptable. In special circumstances, papers written in one of the Sinitic topolects (fāngyán) may be considered for publication.

Although the chief focus of Sino-Platonic Papers is on the intercultural relations of China with other peoples, challenging and creative studies on a wide variety of philological subjects will be entertained. This series is not the place for safe, sober, and stodgy presentations. Sino-Platonic Papers prefers lively work that, while taking reasonable risks to advance the field, capitalizes on brilliant new insights into the development of civilization.

The only style-sheet we honor is that of consistency. Where possible, we prefer the usages of the Journal of Asian Studies. Sinographs (hánzì, also called tetragraphs [fāngkuàizi]) and other unusual symbols should be kept to an absolute minimum. Sino-Platonic Papers emphasizes substance over form.

Submissions are regularly sent out to be refereed and extensive editorial suggestions for revision may be offered. Manuscripts should be double-spaced with wide margins and submitted in duplicate. A set of "Instructions for Authors" may be obtained by contacting the editor.

Ideally, the final draft should be a neat, clear camera-ready copy with high black-and-white contrast.

Sino-Platonic Papers is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivs 2.5 License. To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, 543 Howard Street, 5th Floor, San Francisco, California, 94105, USA.

Please note: When the editor goes on an expedition or research trip, all operations (including filling orders) may temporarily cease for up to two or three months at a time. In such circumstances, those who wish to purchase various issues of SPP are requested to wait patiently until he returns. If issues are urgently needed while the editor is away, they may be requested through Interlibrary Loan.

N.B.: Beginning with issue no. 171, Sino-Platonic Papers has been published electronically on the Web. Issues from no. 1 to no. 170, however, will continue to be sold as paper copies until our stock runs out, after which they too will be made available on the Web at www.sino-platonic.org.
Language Materials of China’s Monguor Minority:
HUZHU MONGGHUL & MINHE MANGGHUER

in alphabetical order

Dpal-ladan-bkra-shis
Hu Jun 胡军
Hu Ping 胡平
Limusishiden (Li Dechun 李得春)
Keith Slater
Kevin Stuart
Wang Xianzheng 王献珍
Zhu Yongzhong 朱永忠
As time passes and old interpretive systems are replaced by the new, it is the text that remains as a thing of value. The interpretive systems become footnotes in graduate dissertations (Mitchell 1996:391).
Contributors
in alphabetical order

Dpal-ldan-bkra-shis graduated from Northwest Nationalities Institute with a BA in Tibetan Language and Literature. He presently works as an editor and translator for the Tibetan Section of the Qinghai Daily. He examined the word list and noted similarities to Tibetan lexical items.

Hu Jun 胡军 is a Ph.D. candidate in medical anthropology at Emory University in Atlanta, Georgia. He reviewed the Mangghuer portions of the monograph in 1993 and made substantial revisions.

Hu Ping 胡平 graduated from Qinghai Nationalities Institute with a BA in Chinese Language and Literature. He presently works in the Development Office of Minhe Hui and Mangghuer Autonomous County. He wrote the 300 Mangghuer sentences, the section on Mangghuer grammar and contributed to the wordlist entries.

Limusishiden earned a MD degree from Qinghai Medical College. He presently works in the Department of Osteopathy, Qinghai Medical College Affiliated Hospital in Xining. Limusishiden wrote the Huzhu entries.

Keith Slater is a Ph.D. candidate in linguistics at the University of California, Santa Barbara. His dissertation discusses the linguistic structures of Mangghuer and the historical development of the language. He co-edited the Mangghuer entries.

Kevin Stuart earned a Ph.D. in American Studies from the University of Hawaii-Manoa. He is a United Nations Volunteer and presently teaches English at Qinghai Junior Teachers’ College in Xining. He co-edited the English entries and wrote the English entries for “English-in-Mongghul.”

Wang Xianzheng 王献珍 graduated from Qinghai Medical College where he earned a MD degree in biomedicine. He presently works in the Burn Department of Qinghai Medical College Affiliated Hospital in Xining. He wrote the 900 Mangghuer sentences, contributed to the wordlist and co-edited the Mangghuer entries.

Zhu Yongzhong 朱永忠 graduated with a degree in English from Qinghai Education College. He presently teaches English at Zhongchuan Junior Middle School in Minhe County. He contributed to the wordlist and co-edited the Mangghuer entries.
Note to the PDF edition (April 2009)

Some of the original television broadcasts whose scripts are in this issue are available online.

For links to these multimedia files, please visit
www.sino-platonic.org/complete/spp069_monguor_language.html
# Contents

Dedication .........................................................................................................................<ii>
Contributors .......................................................................................................................<iii>
Contents ..............................................................................................................................<iv>
Introduction .......................................................................................................................<1>

**Part One: The Alphabet, Numbers and the Calendar** ......................................................<2>
  1. The Mongghul/Mangghuer Language Alphabet ..............................................................<2>
  2. Kajang Numbers .............................................................................................................<4>
  3. Sara, Duri Months and Days .........................................................................................<5>

**Part Two: Quwarihans Gulijin Ugo Simple Conversation** ..............................................<6>
  Example One ....................................................................................................................<6>
  Example Two ...................................................................................................................<6>
  Example Three ...............................................................................................................<6>
  Example Four ..................................................................................................................<6>
  Example Five ..................................................................................................................<7>
  Example Six ....................................................................................................................<7>
  Example Seven ...............................................................................................................<7>
  Example Eight ...............................................................................................................<8>
  Example Nine ................................................................................................................<8>
  Example Ten ..................................................................................................................<9>
  Example Eleven ............................................................................................................<9>
  Example Twelve ............................................................................................................<9>
  Example Thirteen .........................................................................................................<10>
  Example Fourteen .........................................................................................................<10>
  Example Fifteen ............................................................................................................<10>
  Example Sixteen ..........................................................................................................<10>
  Example Seventeen ......................................................................................................<11>
  Example Eighteen ........................................................................................................<12>
  Example Nineteen ........................................................................................................<12>

**Part Three: Ghuran Jang Nige Yanglijin Ugo 301 Useful Sentences** .........................<14>

**Part Four: Minhe Mangghuer 900** ................................................................................<28>

**Part Five: Huzhu Mongghul Readings** .........................................................................<63>
  1. Ndani Ayili My Village ..............................................................................................<63>
  2. Bu Zangda Marishida Adaguna I Can Never Forget .................................................<64>
  3. Muni Nigiiji... My Youth .........................................................................................<67>
  4. Huzhuuni Rgunbaa--Rachuali The Huzhu Temple--Rachuali .................................<71>
  5. Mongghul Kunni Jilaguni Mongghul Taboos .........................................................<71>
Part Six: Language Points

1. Ghudiligu Ugo Verbs
   Example One: sit ..................................................... <73>
   Example Two: read .................................................. <73>
   Example Three: write ............................................. <74>

2. Szagha Questions ................................................................ <74>

3. Minhe Mangghuer Question Words ...................................... <74>

4. Tindigu Nira Hgo Adjectives .............................................. <75>
   Example One: big ....................................................... <75>
   Example Two: tall ...................................................... <75>
   Example Three: fast ................................................... <75>

5. Pronouns ........................................................................... <75>
   Example One: bu/nda/muni/ndana/teni/teniwa/ndasgeni/ndasgela <75>
   Example Two: te/teni ................................................... <76>
   Example Three: qi/qini/teni/tehgin/qina ............................ <76>
   Example Four: tehgi/gahgini/tehgin/gahgidi ...................... <76>

6. Minhe Mangghuer Pronouns ................................................. <76>
   Example One: bi/damei/nda .......................................... <76>
   Example Two: muni ...................................................... <77>
   Example Three: dasi/datang ........................................... <77>
   Example Four: dasini/dani ............................................. <77>
   Example Five: qimei you singular .................................. <77>
   Example Six: tasi you plural ......................................... <77>
   Example Seven: tasini .................................................. <77>
   Example Eight: gan/gansi .............................................. <77>
   Example Nine: ganni/gansini .......................................... <78>

Part Seven: English-In-Mongghul Television Program .................. <79>

Lesson One ......................................................................... <82>
(1) Name ......................................................................... <82>
(2) Home ......................................................................... <82>
(3) Age ............................................................................. <82>
(4) Job ............................................................................. <82>
(5) Nationality ................................................................. <83>

Lesson Two ......................................................................... <83>
(6) Numbers ....................................................................... <84>
(7) Time ............................................................................ <84>
(8) Greetings ...................................................................... <84>
(9) Texts ........................................................................... <84>

Lesson Three ...................................................................... <86>
(10) Write in the missing words ........................................... <86>
(11) Write in the missing words ......................................... <86>
(12) Write in the missing words ......................................... <87>
(13) A: How many brothers do you have? ........................................ <87>
(14) A: How many sisters do you have? ....................................... <87>
(15) (text)............................................................... <88>
(16) (text)...................................................................... <88>
Lesson Four ........................................................................... <89>
(17) Write in the missing words..................................................... <89>
(18) Write in the missing words..................................................... <89>
(19) Write in the missing words..................................................... <89>
(20) Write in the missing words..................................................... <89>
(21) How many brothers do you have? ....................................... <90>
(22) 2,3,4,5, ... brothers/ sisters.............................................. <90>
(23) Write in the missing words..................................................... <91>
(24) Write in the missing word..................................................... <91>
(25) Write in the missing words..................................................... <91>
(26) Is this his/ hers/ yours/ mine............................................... <91>
(27) What color's your coat? hat? shirt?................................... <91>
(28) What color's his/ her/ my coat? hat? shirt?......................... <91>
(29) What color is that hat?....................................................... <91>
(30) ...the same as... too......................................................... <91>
(31) Are you Mongghul?........................................................... <92>
(32) Are you French?............................................................... <92>
Lesson Five ............................................................................. <92>
(33) Are these your books?......................................................... <92>
(34) Are you Mongghul?........................................................... <92>
(35) (short text)................................................................... <92>
(36) (conversation)................................................................ <94>
(37) (conversation)................................................................ <94>
(38) (conversation)................................................................ <94>
(39) (text).............................................................................<94>
Lesson Six .............................................................................. <96>
(40) Write answers to the following questions............................ <96>
(41) (text)............................................................................. <97>
Lesson Seven ........................................................................... <97>
(42) Write answers to the following questions............................ <97>
(43) (text)............................................................................. <98>
Lesson Eight ............................................................................ <100>
(44) Write answers to the following questions............................ <100>
(45) (text)............................................................................. <100>
(46) (text)............................................................................. <100>
(47) Write answers to the following questions............................ <101>
Lesson Nine ............................................................................. <101>
(48) Look at your classroom. Answer these questions.............. <101>
(49) (conversation)............................................................... <101>
Lesson Ten .................................................................<104>
Lesson Eleven ..............................................................<109>
Lesson Twelve ..............................................................<112>
Lesson Thirteen ............................................................<115>
Lesson Fourteen ............................................................<118>
Lesson Fifteen ..............................................................<122>
Lesson Sixteen ..............................................................<125>
Lesson Seventeen ..........................................................<130>
Lesson Eighteen ............................................................<130>
Lesson Nineteen ............................................................<133>

(50) (text) .........................................................................<104>
(51) (text) .........................................................................<106>
(52) (conversation) ............................................................<109>
(53) (conversation) ............................................................<109>
(54) (text) .........................................................................<109>
(55) (conversation) ............................................................<112>
(56) (text) .........................................................................<113>
(57) (text) .........................................................................<113>
(58) (conversation) ............................................................<114>
(59) (text) .........................................................................<115>
(60) (conversation) ............................................................<115>
(61) (conversation) ............................................................<116>
(62) (conversation) ............................................................<117>
(63) (song) My Bonnie .........................................................<118>
(64) (conversation) ............................................................<118>
(65) (conversation) ............................................................<119>
(66) (conversation) ............................................................<120>
(67) (text) .........................................................................<122>
(68) (conversation) ............................................................<122>
(69) (questions/answers) ......................................................<124>
(70) The Singing Dog (text) .................................................<125>
(71) The Frog Child (text) .....................................................<127>
(72) (conversation) ............................................................<130>
(73) (questions/answers) ......................................................<130>
(74) (conversation) ............................................................<132>
(75) (conversation) ............................................................<132>
(76) (conversation) ............................................................<132>
(77) (can/can’t) ..................................................................<132>
(78) (can/can’t) ..................................................................<132>
(79) (can/can’t) ..................................................................<133>
(80) (can/can’t) ..................................................................<133>

(81) (song) Kumbaya .........................................................<133>
(82) Write the sentences correctly. ......................................<134>
Choose the correct answer. ...........................................<135>
Choose "has" or "have." ..............................................<136>
He is taking his book.—He can take his book. ..................<136>

Lesson Twenty..........................................................<137>
Correct these sentences..............................................<137>
(conversation) .........................................................<137>
(conversation) .........................................................<138>
(conversation) .........................................................<138>
(series of exercises) ..................................................<139>
(a. (conversation) .....................................................<139>
b. (conversation) .....................................................<139>
c. (conversation) .....................................................<139>
d. (conversation) .....................................................<139>
e. (conversation) .....................................................<139>
f. (conversation) .....................................................<139>
g. (conversation) .....................................................<140>
h. do you like ..........................................................<140>
i. do you like ..........................................................<140>
j. do you like ..........................................................<140>
k. is this your .........................................................<140>
l. is this your .........................................................<140>

Lesson Twenty-One ...................................................<140>
m. This is (person) ....................................................<140>
n. This is a robe. Mongghul/ (Tibetan) .........................<141>
o. This is ...............................................................<141>
p. (jobs—questions) ..................................................<141>
q. Mrs Davis/ well ....................................................<141>
r. shirt/ Tim ............................................................<142>

Lesson Twenty-Two ..................................................<142>
s. Mr Ford/ umbrella/ black (color) .................................<142>
t. books/ red ..........................................................<143>
u. (mechanics)/clerks .................................................<143>
v. his shoes/ (dirty)/ clean ..........................................<144>
w. (this blue)/ that red ..............................................<144>

Lesson Twenty-Three ...............................................<145>
x. glasses/ on the shelf .............................................<145>
y. refrigerator in the kitchen/ white ................................<145>
z. (books)/ on the dressing-table/ cigarettes/ near ..........<145>
aa. Shut the.........................................................<146>

Lesson Twenty-Four .................................................<147>
bb. Miss Grey/ emptying the basket/ typing a letter ......<147>

(92) Dorijinsu and the Ball (text) .................................<148>
(93) The Skipping-Rope (text) ....................................<149>
Lesson Twenty-Five

(94) The Skipping-Rope (text).......................... <149>

Lesson Twenty-Five ........................................ <150>

(95) (series of exercises) .................................. <150>
   a. “A” is used before a consonant sound. ........... <150>
   b. “An” is used before a vowel sound. .............. <150>
   c. Put “a” or “an” before these words .............. <150>

(96) Plural and singular. ................................... <151>

(97) Make sentences using “this is” and “these are”
     correctly .............................................. <151>

(98) Make sentences using “that is” and “those are”
     correctly .............................................. <152>

Lesson Twenty-Six ....................................... <152>

(99) Use the following words correctly in the sentences <152>

(100) Nouns are names for things and people .......... <153>

(101) Who...? expects a person for the answer ....... <153>

(102) Read this text and then answer the questions ... <153>

(103) (months) ............................................. <155>

(104) (weather) ............................................ <155>

(105) (nationality) ....................................... <156>

(106) Use “come” or “comes” in the sentences that follow... <157>

(107) Use “like” or “likes” in the sentences that follow... <157>

(108) Use “want” and “wants” in the sentences that follow... <157>

Lesson Twenty-Seventy .................................. <158>

(109) Qinghai places and direction ....................... <158>

(110) Where do you come from?/Nationality .......... <159>

(111) (text) .................................................. <159>

(112) (text) .................................................. <160>

(113) Write out answers to these questions: What do you usually do? ......... <161>

Lesson Twenty-Nine ...................................... <161>

(114) (text) .................................................. <161>

(115) Look at these examples: I/you/they/we drink .... <162>

(116) (conversation) ...................................... <163>

(117) Add -s- or -es- where necessary ................ <164>

Lesson Thirty ................................................ <164>

(118) (conversation) ...................................... <164>

(119) Use the correct form of the verb .................. <165>

(120) Illness (conversation) ............................... <166>

Lesson Thirty-One ....................................... <168>

(121) (conversation) ...................................... <170>
Lesson Thirty-Two

(122) Begin each sentence with Njiuyaa ..................................................<171>
(123) (conversation) ...................................................................................<171>
(124) (conversation) ...................................................................................<172>
(125) Use “in,” “at,” and “from” in the following sentences .........................<172>
(126) (text) ......................................................................................................<172>
(127) (conversation) ...................................................................................<173>
(128) (conversation) ...................................................................................<174>
(129) Put in “the” where necessary ..............................................................<175>

Lesson Thirty-Three

(130) The Big Horse Race (text) ......................................................................<175>
(131) (conversation) ...................................................................................<177>
(132) Mrs Mills Visits Huzhu (text) ..............................................................<179>

Lesson Thirty-Four

(questions about the previous text) ..............................................................<180>
(133) (conversation) ...................................................................................<181>
(134) Bawog (long text: folktale) ..................................................................<182>

Lesson Thirty-Five


Lesson Thirty-Six

(135) (conversation) ...................................................................................<188>
(136) Correct these sentences .......................................................................<189>
(137) Answer these questions .......................................................................<190>
(138) Make these sentences plural ................................................................<190>
(139) (conversation) ...................................................................................<191>
(140) (questions about the earlier conversation) ..............................................<192>

Lesson Thirty-Seven

(141) Correct these sentences .......................................................................<194>
(142) Answer these questions using the correct forms of “write.” ..................<195>

Lesson Thirty-Eight: Figures

(1) Balloons ..................................................................................................<196>
(2) Arrow ....................................................................................................<196>
(3) What’s in the picture? .............................................................................<196>
(4) Certificate ..............................................................................................<196>
(5) Magnifying glass ..................................................................................<197>
(6) Printer ....................................................................................................<197>
(7) Bulb .......................................................................................................<197>
(8) Checkmark ............................................................................................<197>
(9) Disk ......................................................................................................<197>
(10) Mail ......................................................................................................<198>
(11) Scales ....................................................................................................<198>
(12) This picture means that something has burst ....................................<198>
(13) Clock ....................................................................................................<198>
Huzhu Mongghul & Minhe Mangghuer - Page xi - Sino-Platonic Paper № 69

(14) Gavel ..............................................................<198>
(15) Bicycle ...........................................................<199>
(16) Newspaper .......................................................<199>
(17) Star ..............................................................<199>
(18) Butterfly .........................................................<200>
(19) Contract ............................................................<200>
(20) A globe shows the world ....................................<200>
(21) What is in the picture? What is it used for? ..........<200>
(22) There are three things in the picture. What are they? ......<201>
(23) This is a calendar. How many days are in a ..........<201>
(24) Hands ..............................................................<201>
(25) Tell what are in the picture? ..............................<201>
(26) Trophy .............................................................<202>

(27) 😊 ......................................................................<202>
(28) 😞 ......................................................................<202>

Part Eight: English-Huzhu Mongghul & Minhe Mangghuer Wordlist ..<203>
Bibliography .................................................................<263>
Table

Table One. The Mongghul/Mangghuer Alphabet .......................<1>
Introduction

The Huzhu Mongghul and Minhe Mangghuer language materials presented here are from Huzhu Mongghul Autonomous County and Minhe Hui and Mangghuer Autonomous County in eastern Qinghai Province, the People's Republic of China. Other Monguor areas, that is Tianzhu Tibetan Autonomous County, Gansu Province and, in Qinghai, Datong Hui and Mongghul Autonomous County and Huangnan Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture, are not represented. We employ “Mangghuer” to refer to Minhe Monguor and “Mongghul” to refer to Monguor residents of Huzhu, for these are the terms the people themselves employ. When we are unsure how people refer to themselves, we use “Monguor,” which we also employ as a collective term to refer to all those classified as “Tu” by the Chinese government in the 1950s.

The material is in the form of the alphabet, numbers, and the calendar; 301 sentences rendered in English, Huzhu Mongghul and Minhe Mangghuer; 900 sentences in English and Minhe Mangghuer; Huzhu Mongghul readings, language points, the text of a television program that taught English in Huzhu Mongghul in Huzhu County and a word list.

The Mongghul/Mangghuer materials are given in a modified Chinese pinyin system used previously to record Monguor (e.g., Li Keyu 1988; Zhu, Ujiyediin Chuluu, and Stuart 1995; Wang and Stuart 1995; Zhu and Stuart 1996; Zhu, Wang, and Stuart 1995).

Sun (1990) was initially used as a basis for the English-Mongghul/Mangghuer wordlist. Readers who consult Sun will note many of Limusishiden’s Huzhu Mongghul word items are different. Certain of the material was inspired by the “English 900” and “Chinese 900” series and Book 1: New Concepts English.

Limusishiden thanks Professor Xi Yuanlin of Qinghai Nationalities Institute for his patient answering of many spelling questions.

---

1The Huzhu Mongghul and Minhe Mangghuer have been introduced in recent publications, which are referenced in the bibliography.

2The “Tu” are one of China’s officially recognized fifty-six nationalities.
### Part One
THE ALPHABET, NUMBERS AND THE CALENDAR

#### 1. Table One. The Mongghul/Mangghuer Alphabet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>nara</td>
<td>sun</td>
<td>father</td>
<td>aba</td>
<td>father</td>
<td>father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>bazari</td>
<td>town</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>bang</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>ciden</td>
<td>dictionary</td>
<td>that's</td>
<td>cida</td>
<td>tear</td>
<td>that's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>darima</td>
<td>fat</td>
<td>deep</td>
<td>dunda</td>
<td>center</td>
<td>deep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>timeen</td>
<td>camel</td>
<td>even</td>
<td>nige</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>eleven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>fulaan</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>fugure</td>
<td>cow</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>gurixjog</td>
<td>winnowing spade</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>gui</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>hawari</td>
<td>nose</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>tingere</td>
<td>sky, heaven</td>
<td>Islam</td>
<td>nidi</td>
<td>door</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>jari</td>
<td>use</td>
<td>jam</td>
<td>jiari</td>
<td>kill</td>
<td>jam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>kundin</td>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>kettle</td>
<td>keli</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>kettle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>lalang</td>
<td>young</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>kuala</td>
<td>praise</td>
<td>love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>mula</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>move</td>
<td>mushi</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>nara</td>
<td>sun</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>nasi</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>mori</td>
<td>horse</td>
<td>open</td>
<td>soni</td>
<td>night</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>pudog</td>
<td>evil, ghost</td>
<td>pig</td>
<td>pudera</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>pig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>qighaan</td>
<td>white</td>
<td>choose</td>
<td>qi</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>gurai</td>
<td>light</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>ri</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>saighan</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>sara</td>
<td>moon</td>
<td>sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>taraa</td>
<td>grain</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>tara</td>
<td>grain</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>timuri</td>
<td>iron</td>
<td>woo</td>
<td>suzu</td>
<td>water</td>
<td>woo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>tawun</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>wool</td>
<td>wulang</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>wool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>xnii</td>
<td>smile</td>
<td>sheet</td>
<td>xijie</td>
<td>shy</td>
<td>sheet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>yaara</td>
<td>pustule</td>
<td>yard</td>
<td>yila</td>
<td>cry</td>
<td>yard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>zeewu</td>
<td>brother-in-law</td>
<td>(t)zoo</td>
<td>hazi</td>
<td>blind</td>
<td>(t)zoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZH</td>
<td>zhuangki</td>
<td>pretend</td>
<td>drunk</td>
<td>kuanzhan</td>
<td>wide</td>
<td>jerk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>chog</td>
<td>damp</td>
<td>chirp</td>
<td>chigang</td>
<td>white</td>
<td>yard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH</td>
<td>taashi</td>
<td>stone</td>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>shini</td>
<td>new</td>
<td>sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NG</td>
<td>Mongghul</td>
<td>Mongghul</td>
<td>young</td>
<td>shizhang</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GH</td>
<td>ghajari</td>
<td>field</td>
<td>hop</td>
<td>ghada</td>
<td>outside</td>
<td>gulp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Kajang Numbers

nige--one [NIGE]
ghoori--two [GHUER]
ghuran--three [GHUERBANG]
deeran--four [DIERANG]
tawun--five [TABEN]
jirighun--six [JIERGHUANG]
duluun--seven [DUOLANG]
niiman--eight [NAIMANG]
shzin--nine [SHIZANG]
haran--ten [HERBANG]
haran-nige--eleven [HERBANG NIGE]
haran-ghoori--twelve [HERBANG GHUER]
haran-ghuran--thirteen [HERBANG GHUERBANG]
haran-deeran--fourteen [HERBANG DIERANG]
haran-tawun--fifteen [HERBANG TABEN]
haran-jirighun--sixteen [HERBANG JIERGHUANG]
haran-duluun--seventeen [HERBANG DUOLANG]
haran-niiman--eighteen [HERBANG NAIMANG]
haran-shzin--nineteen [HERBANG SHIZANG]
hurin--twenty
nige jang--100
ghoori jang--200
nie jang nige--101
haoran--ten
ghoori--second
ghurandari--third
deerandari--fourth
tawundari--fifth
jirighundari--sixth
duluundari--seventh
niimandari--eighth
shzindari--ninth
harandari--tenth
ghuranhan--only three
deeranla--four together
deeran tawun--four or five
tawunla--five together
duluun niiman--seven or eight
haranhan--only ten
tayinhan--only fifty
jangla--100 together

dalan--seventy
nayan--eighty
yirin--ninety
shzin--nine
haran--ten
haran-nige--eleven
haran-ghoori--twelve
haran-ghuran--thirteen
haran-deeran--fourteen
haran-tawun--fifteen
haran-jirighun--sixteen
haran-duluun--seventeen
haran-niiman--eighteen
haran-shzin--nineteen
hurin--twenty
niger-dari--first
ghooridari--second
ghurandari--third
deerandari--fourth
tawundari--fifth
jirighundari--sixth
duluundari--seventh
niimandari--eighth
shzindari--ninth
harandari--tenth
ghuranhan--only three
deeranla--four together
deeran tawun--four or five
tawunla--five together
duluun niiman--seven or eight
haranhan--only ten
tayinhan--only fifty
jangla--100 together

3. Sara, Duri Months and Days

Xni Sara--New Moon, January
Ghoori Sara--Second Moon, February
Ghuran Sara--Third Moon, March
Deeran Sara--Fourth Moon, April

*The names of the Gregorian Calendar months are not the exact equivalents of the lunar calendar. For example, the first day of the first lunar month changes from year to year, according to the Gregorian Calendar, and may not be in January, but in February or March.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tawun Sara--Fifth Moon, May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jirighun Sara--Sixth Moon, June</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duluun Sara--Seventh Moon, July</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niiman Sara--Eighth Moon, August</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shzin Sara--Ninth Moon, September</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haran Sara--Tenth Moon, October</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haran-Nige Sara--Eleventh Moon, November</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haran-Ghoori Sara--Twelfth Moon, December</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xni nige--first day  
xni ghoori--second day  
xni ghuran--third day  
xni niiman--eighth day  
xni haran--tenth day

afterwards just the number as in:  
haran-nige--eleventh day
Part Two

QUWARIHAN GULIJIN UGO
SIMPLE CONVERSATION

Huzhu Mongghul is followed by Minhe Mangghuer in brackets {}

Example One

Sanjii: Qi sainiisa? {QI GEZAI BAINU?} How are you?
Denjen: Saini hguaiwa. {GEZAI BANG.} Very well. Qida sainiisa? {Qi LAI?} And you?
Sanjii: Sainii. {GEZAI BANG.} Well.

Example Two

Sanjii: Qini nira yannii? {QINI NIERE YANG GELA BI?} What is your name?
Denjen: Muni nira Denjennii. {MUNI NIERE WUSHI GELA BI.} My name is Denjen/Wushii. Qini lai? {QINI NIERE LAI?} And you?
Sanjii: Muni nira Sanjii yii. {MUNI NIERE LAOWU GELA BI.} My name is Sanjii/Laowu.

Example Three

Sanjii: Ganni nirani yanna? {GANNI NIERE YANG GELA?} What is her name?
Denjen: Ganni nirani Saihuawa. {GANNI NIERE CAIHUA GELA BI.} Her name is Saihua/Caihua.

Example Four

Sanjii: Tehgini nirani yanna? {NUGU GHUOLONI NIERE YANG GELA?} What are their names? <two
Denjen: Nigeni Liuhua, dii nigeni Lamuqogwa. {NIGENI GUILAN, TIGENI WUYUEHUA GELANG.} One is Liuhua/Guilan, the other is Lamuqog/Wuyuehua.

hansi or

Sanjii: Te xjun ghoorini nirani yanna? {TI LIANGE AGUERNI NIERE YANG GELA?} What are those two girls’ names?
Denjen: Nigeni Lihuawa, dii nige xjunni Rnqanhuawa. {NIGE AGUERNI HUYIN, TIGEI AGUERNI JINHUA GELANG.} One is Lihuua/Huyin, the other girl is Rnqanhuaja/Jinhua.

Example Five

Sanjii: Tehgini nirani yanna? {NI GHIUOLONI NIREE YANG GELA?} What are their names? <two boys>
Denjen: Nigeni Shdanzhixjawa, dii nigeni Sishidenwa. {NIGENI LAOBEIN, TIGEIN ACHANG GELANG.} One is Shdanzhixja/Laoben, the other is Sishiden/Ancheng.

hansi or

Sanjii: Te ghoori kuu bulaini nirani yanna? {TI GHIUER BULAINI NIREE YANG GELA?} What are those two boys’ names?
Denjen: Nige kuu bulaini Shdanzhixjawa, dii tengi kuuni Sishidenwa. {NIGENI GUICHANG, TIGENI SHOUCANG GELANG.} One boy is Shdanzhixja/Guichang. The other boy is Sishiden/Shoucang.

Example Six

Hunzhi: Sangjishiji, nanggu fandi, qi mudeni bu kali nesiwa? {LINGLING, NIEHTUANG BI KEDU BERLANG.} This year, do you know how old I am?
Sangjishiji: Hujin-duluun. {SANSHI QI.} Thirty-seven.

Example Seven

Rashidan: Jaaxi, qimu aawu diu giji kali yii? {RAJI, QIMEI AGHADIAO JIGE BI?} Jaaxi/Raji, how many brothers do you have?
Jaaxi: Nda aawu nige ba diu ghoori yii. {DAMEII GAGA A. DIAO LIANGE BI.} I have an elder brother and two younger brothers.
Rashidan: Gandi aajii da xjundiu kiji kali yii? {GANDI JIANG YIGE MA GEQIDIAO KEDU BANG.} How many sisters does he/she have?
Jaaxi: Gandi jaaxi da xjundiu kiji kali yii? {GANDU JIANG YIGE AJIA, XUJUNDIAO GUANG.} He/she has only an elder sister, no younger sister.
Rashidan: Na, qimu aawu diu da aajii xjundiu giji kali yii? {TINSI, QIMEI AGHADIAO MA GEQIDIAO KEDU BANG.} No, thirty-two.
Sangjishiji: Na, gan kali nesilija? {TINSI, GAN KEDU BERLA B?} Then, how old is he/she?
Hunzhi: Gan tayin-deeranwa. {GAN WUSHISI BERA B.} He/she is fifty-four.
Sangjishiji: Na, tehgi lai? {TINSI GANSI KEDU BERLA?} Then, they?
Hunzhi: Nige xjunni tawunna, dii ghoori xjunlini jirighunna. {YIGE AGUERNI WU SUI, HAN LIANGGENI LUI SUI BERA B.} One girl is five, the other two girls are six. Na, qi kali nesiwa? {TINSI QI KEDU BERLA BI.} Then, how old are you?
Sangjishiji: Hujin-duluun. {SANSHI QI.} Thirty-seven.
BI?} Then how many brothers and sisters have you?

Jaaxi: Nda yamada gui, bu xjighalaw. {DANGDA⁶ YIGE A GUI, BI KHEZHIGHERNANG BI} I have none, I am just one (an only child).

Rashidan: Ganhgidi aawu diu da aajii xjundi giji kidi yiina?
{GANSIDU AGHADIO MA GEQIDIAO KEDU BANG?} How many brothers and sisters do they have?

Jaaxi: Nigedini jang xjundiungi yiina; nigedini ghooori aawuwa; dii nigedini deeran diu yiina. {YIGEJIANDU JIANG JKUER XUJUNDIAO BANG; YIGEJIANDU LIANGE GAGA BANG; HAN YIGEJIANDU SUGE DIAO BANG.} One only has a younger sister; one has two elder brothers; the other one has four younger brothers.

Example Eight

Zhuxi: Qi mudeni ganni xjundiuniini yan dodana? {QI GANNI XUJUNDIAONI NIERENI MIEDEILIU?} Do you know the name of his/her younger sister?

Niidoanzhuu: Liuxihua dodana. {GUILAN GEILANG.} Named Liuxihua/Guilan.

Zhuxi: Teni aaga kidi nesiwa? {QINI AWU KEDU NASI BERLA?} How old is your uncle?

Niidoanzhuu: Ndani aaga hujuin­ghooriwa. {MUNI A WU SANSHEIR BERLANG.} My uncle is thirty-two.

Example Nine

Gagog: Qiixinsu, qini kudi anjii?
{ZHANGQIAN, QINI GER ANGI BI?} Qiiixinsu/Zhangqian, where is your home?

Qiixinsu: Muni kudi Danmaadi yii. {MUNI GER GANGOUDU BI.} My home is in Danmaa/Gangou.

Gagog: Ganni kudini anjiwiwa. {GANNI GER ANGI BANG?} Where is his/her home?

Qiixinsu: Ganni kudini Sunduuwa. {GANNI GER SUNJADU BANG.} His/her home is in Sunduu/Sunjia.

Gagog: Qi mudeni muni kudi anjiwiwa? {MINI GER ANGI BIKUNI QI MIEDEILIU?} Do you know where my home is?

Qiixinsu: Muden, Tangraawa. {MIEDIELANG, ZHANGJIADU BANG BAL} Know, in Tangraa/Zhangjia.

Gagog: Gahegini kudini anjiwiwa? {GANSINI GER ANGI BANG?} Where is their home?

Qiixinsu: Gahegini kudini Taiziwa. {GANSINI GER TAIZIDU BANG.} Their home is in Taizi.

---

⁶Samawan: dangda, Zhongchuan and Guanting: angda.
Gagog: Teni aajiini kudini anjiwai?
{QINI AJANI GER ANGJI BANG?} Where is your elder sister’s home?
Qiixinsu: Ndani aajiini kudini Jiloghuashdiwa. {MUNI AJANI GER CHOUHAGHUERDU BANG.} My elder sister’s home is in Jiloghua/Chouhaghur.

Example Ten

Limuzhunma: Denjen, qi beeri awuwu? {LINGLING, QI BIERI HE BU?} Denjen/Lingling, are you married?
Denjen: Gui, bu darang awuji gui. {WUGULI} No, I am not married. Qi lai? {QI LAI?} You?
Limuzhunma: Bu awuwa. {BI BIERI HE BA.} Or: DAMEI DAHULA BA.} I am married. Qi ganni mudeni? {QI GANNI MIEDIELIU?} Do you know about him/her?
Denjen: Bu awuu. {BI BIERI HEBA. Or: DAMEI MULANI JIKUER BANG?} You?
Limuzhunma: Bu awuu. {BI BIERI HE BA.} Or: DAMEI DAHULA BA.} I am married. Qi ganni mudeni? {QI GANNI MIEDIELIU?} Do you know about him/her?
Denjen: Bu awuu. {BI BIERI HEBA. Or: DAMEI MULANI JIKUER BANG?} You?
Denjen: Bu. {BI BIERI HE BA.} Or: DAMEI DAHULA BA.} I am married. Qi ganni mudeni? {QI GANNI MIEDIELIU?} Do you know about him/her?

Example Eleven

Danlansu: Wuhua, qimu kidi bulai yi? {MEIHUA, QIMEI MULANI JIKUER BI?} Wuhua/Meihua, how many children do you have?
Wuhua: Ghoori yii, nigeni xjunga, nigeni kuungiwa. {LIANGGE BI, YIGE A GUER, YIGE BULAI BI.} Have two, one is a girl, one is a boy.
Danlansu: Qini xjuntiidi kidiwa?
{QINI XUJUN DIAODU LAI?} How many has your younger sister?
Wuhua: Jirighun. {LIUKUER.} Six.
Danlansu: Ganhgidi kidi bulaiwa?
{GANSIDU MULANI JIKUER BANG?} How many children do they have?
Wuhua: Bu yii mudeni. {BI AIMIEDIELANG.} I don’t know.
Danlansu: Qini xjuntiidi kidiwa?
{QINI XUJUN DIAODU LAI?} How many has your younger sister?
Wuhua: Bu yii mudeni. {BI AIMIEDIELANG.} I don’t know.
Danlansu: Qini xjuntiidi kidiwa?
{QINI XUJUN DIAODU LAI?} How many has your younger sister?
Wuhua: Bu yii mudeni. {BI AIMIEDIELANG.} I don’t know.

Example Twelve

Wuhua: Qi Tiwari yiu? {QI TIEBIE BIU?} Are you Tibetan?
Ma: Puxii. {PUZHII.} No.
Wuhua: Qi yan szaribatin kunnii?
{QI YANG MINGZU BI?} What nationality are you?
Ma: Bu Huihui yi. {BI SERTUER BI.} I am Hui.
Wuhua: Gan lai? {GAN LAI?} And he?
Ma: Gan Tiwariga. {GAN TIEBIE BANG.} He’s Tibetan.
Wuhua: Qi yan warinii? {QI YANG GELA BI?} What’s your job?
Ma: Bu lahgaingi yii. {BI ZHUANGJIAQI BI.} I am a farmer.
Example Thirteen

Wuhua: Te deel kennii? {NI KANNI JIAJIER BANG?} Whose shirt is that?
Ne qini deel yiu Denjen? {LAOBEN, NI JIAJIER QINI BU?} Is this your shirt Denjen/Laoben?

Denjen: Puxii, muni puxii. {PUZHI, MUNI PUZHI.} No, it's not mine. Muni deel fulaangi yii. {MUNIGE HULANG BANG.} My shirt is red. Tengi qighaangiwa. {NIGE CHIGHANG BANG BAI.} That one is white.

Wuhua: Nengi qinani? {NIGE QINI BU?} Is this one yours?

Denjen: Ninba. {AOLAl.} Yes.

Wuhua: Ne amaga tigii zangna? {NI YAJI NINGTAI ZANGNANG NI?} Why is it so dirty? Qi kijeji neni ghuawa? {QI KEJIE GHUA BA?} When did you wash it?

Denjen: Bu lannii. {BI LANCHUN NI.} I'm lazy. Bu muxi nige sara ghuawa. {MIESHIGE SARADU GHUA BA.} I washed it last month. Bu ghuagu yii duralani. {BI DIER GHUAKU DURUANG GUANG.} I don't like to wash (clothes).

Wuhua: Qi ghada gharisza, teni aama da aajii xjunduhgi qimu ghuaji lii gisa amahgunii? {QI GHADA GHERKU, QINI ANA MA AJASI GHUAJI HUDASA, QI YAGA GEBA?} What will you do when you leave home and your mother and sisters won't wash for you?

Denjen: Bu muka beerina awugunii {BI BIERIGE HENI BAI.} I'll get married.

Example Fourteen

Wuhua: Qi nda puijungi ghua, Gunbu. {HUYUAN, DAMEI SHU YIBEN HU.} Give me a book, Gunbu/ Huyuan.

Gunbu: Alinga? {ALIGE?} Which one? Nengima? {NIGE MA?} This one?

Wuhua: Puxii, tengi puxa. {PUZHANG, TIGE PUZHANG.} No, not that one. Tengi fulaan udogdii. {HULANGNI TIGE.} That red one.

Gunbu: Ma, qimu ghuya. {MA.} Here you are.

Example Fifteen

Aama [mother]: Bulai, qi yamagiwa? {BULAICHUER, QI YAGE BA?} Child, what's the matter?

Bulai [child]: Bu yidaja luasija. {BI LOSI MA YADA BA.} I am hungry and tired.

Aama: Dirii so. {NINGDU SAO.} Sit here. Ne shdimaani rde. {NIGE DIMEINI DI.} Eat this bread. Qi do sainasa? {DU GEZAITUJIANG BA?} Are you all right now?

Bulai: Saina. {GEZAITUJIANG.} OK.

Example Sixteen

Xeoliuni zuuhanni mula hguaiwa. {YUANLUNNI ZOUHA HUDU MULA BANG.} Xeoliu's/Yuanhu's kitchen is very small. Zuuhandini zu suulighangi yiina. {TUDUORO} CHAHUGE BANG. {TUDUORO} There is a waterpot in the kitchen. Te zuu

---

Sanchuan: tuduoro, Guanting.
suuligha qighaanga. {CHAHU NI CHIGHANG BANG.} The waterpot is white. Te warang rogshdiwa. {TI BARANG BEIDA BANG.} It’s on the right. Zuuhandi darang yiilan xraingi yiina. {ZOUHADUNI. HAN KUUGU SHIRIGE BANG.} There is a blue table in the kitchen. Te sulighu rogshdiwa. {TI SERGHAI BEIDA BANG.} It is on the left.

Ne Wuncihgini harilidii. Answer these questions.

2. Zuuha shgewani? {ZOUHANI SHUGO BAINU?} Is the kitchen big? Gua, te shge gua, te mulawa. {WUGUANG, MULA BANG.} No, it’s small.
3. Kenni zuuha mulawa? {KANNI ZOUHANI MULABANG?} Whose kitchen is small? Xeoliuniwa. {YUANLUNNl. Xeoliu’s/Yuanlun’s.
4. Zuuhandi yanna? {ZOUHADUNI YANG BANG?} What are in the kitchen? Szu suulighangi da xraingiwa. {YIGE CHAHU MA YIGE SHIRI BANG.} A waterpot and a table.
5. Warang rogshdini yanna? {BARANG BEIDA NI YANG BANG?} What is on the right? Szu sulighawa. {CHAHU BANG.} The waterpot.
6. Szu sulighani sulighui rogshdiwani? {CHAHU NI SERGHAI BEIDA BAINU?} Is the waterpot on the left? Puja, te warang rogshdiwa. {PUZHANG, BARANG BEIDA BANG.} No, it is on the right.
7. Te xrai anjiwiwa? {SHIRI ANGIBANG?} Where is the table? Te sulighui rogshdiwa. {SERGHAI BEIDABANG.} It is on the left.
8. Yan qighaanna? {YANG CHIGHANG BANG?} What is white? Szu sulighha qighaanna. {SHUHUNI.} The waterpot.
9. Te xrai qighaannani? {SHIRINI CHIGHANG BAINU?} Is the table white? Gua, te qighaan gua, te yiilanna. {WUGUANG, CHIGHANG GUANG, KUUGU BANG.} No, it isn’t white, it’s blue.

Example Seventeen

Denjen: Qiixi anjiwiwa, Danlansu?
{HUYUAN, JINHUA ANGJI BANG?} Where’s Qiixi/Jinhua, Danlansu/Huyuan?

Danlansu: Te qiju sanqangrwa,
Denjen. {GAN HUA YUANDU BANG, HUJUN.} She’s in the flower garden, Denjen/Hujun.

Denjen: Te yamagina? {GAN YALA?} What’s she doing?

Danlansu: Te xjuusiningini dura soja. {GAN BEGHE DUORO SAOSER BANG.} She’s sitting under a tree.

Denjen: Mankuada qiju sanqangrwani? {LAOBEN A HUA YUANDU BAINU?} Is Mankua/Laoben in the garden too?

Danlansu: Yiina, te xjuusi diraji gharina. {AOLAI, GAN BEGHE GHERJI NADUSER BANG.} Yes, he’s climbing the tree.

Denjen: Qi nda diingi kile, ken xjuusi diraji gharina? {KAN? QI PUZAGE KELI?} Who is climbing the tree, please tell me again?

Danlansu: Mankuawa. {LAOBEN.}
**Denjen:** Te nuhui yanghana? {TIGE NUGHUAI YALA?} *What is the dog doing?*

**Danlansu:** Nuhuida qijiu sanqangrwa, xjuusi jirihgari nadina. {TlNUGHUAI HUAYUANNI BEGHE JIURA NADUSER BANG.} *The dog is in the flower garden playing among the trees.*

**Example Eighteen**

Ne ndahgini ayiliwa. {NI DASI NI YIMEGH BANG.} *This is our village.* Budahgini ayili ghualigi turua yii. {DASINI YIMEGH GHUERGEDU BANG.} *Our village is in a valley. Te ghoori ulani juuraniwa. {GHUER WULA JIURA BANG.} It’s situated between two hills. Hawurishdi ndani ayili hudi saighannii. {NAZIER KUERSA DASINI YIMEGH HUDU ZAIHANG BANG.} *Our village is very beautiful in spring.* Buudi hudi nughuunna. {BUDI HUDU NUOGHUANG BANG.} *The wheat is very green then.* Xjuusihgi yiiguala nughuungi laxja. {BEGHESI YIGUA NUGHUOROLANG.} *The trees all have green leaves.* Ndani ayilidni hujinduluun qinsang yii. {DANSINI YMEGHDU SANSHIQI JIAZI GER BANG.} *There are thirty-seven families in our village.* Qinsang yiiguala Mongghulwa. {YIGUA MANGGHUER BANG.} *All the families are Mongghul/Mangghuer.* Ayilini yiiguala lahgaqiwa. {YMEGHIKU KONGSI YIGUA ZHUANGJIAQI BANG.} *The villagers are all farmers.* Ahangi bulai xuutangdi xna. {BULAI SI DUOBAN XUEDU XILANG.} *Many children go to school.* Gaahgi Qidari xuutangdi xna. {GANSI QIDAIGE XUEXIAODU XILANG.} *They go to Chinese language schools.* Hgengiini kudini huni, yimaa, hiiog, wunee, mori, liusa, darang, jige giji yiina. {DUOBANQI GERDU ASTAI BANG, KHUONI, YIMA, HUGUER, MORI, LAOSAO, BJIGE, NINGEJ.} *Many families also have livestock—sheep, goats, yaks, cows, horses, mules, and donkeys.*

Timeen yijinni gua. {TIEMIE KANDU A GUANG.} *Nobody has camels.* Ahangi shdugu kun lamawa. {LAOHIAN DUNDA LAMA WULAN BANG.} *Many of the old men are lamas.* Hgengi shdugu kun Mongghul deelna musija. {XIDIERSANG KONG DUOBANQI MONGHUR DIER MUSILANG.} *Many of the old people wear traditional Mongghul clothing.* Lalan kungsi jiixa pujisaa Mongghul deelna musin gua. {GUANJINDA DUEAI KUERSA NIANQINGRENSI YIBAN MUSILA GUANG.} *Young people don’t wear traditional clothing except during special times.*

**Example Nineteen**

**Gaasall:** Niuduri qi muha rdegu duralani, Sangjishiji? {GUICHANG, NIAODUER QI MUGHA DIKU DURANG BAINU?} *Do you want any meat today, Sangjishiji/Guichang?*

**Sangjishiji:** Duralani, bu nigijin do hudi duralani. {HUDU DURALALANG.} *Yes, I would like some very much.*

---

*Minhe Mangghuer stopped wearing distinctive ethnic clothing many years ago.*
Gaasan: Qi aasi muhadi huudu yiu huni muhadi huudu yii? \{HUGHUER MUGHA MA KHOONI MUGHA?\} Do you want beef or mutton?
Sanjishiji: Aasi muha. \{HUGHUER MUGHA.\} Beef.
Gaasan: Liguna. \{ZHA.\} All right. Bu wuuźindi xgu qimu nigiijii awu rya. \{B1 GEISHANG XIKU DUERJI RA.\} I'll buy some when I'm in town.
Sanjishiji: Nda darang nige langhua durasingi awa ra. \{DURASI A YIPING DUERJI RI ANG.\} Please buy a bottle of liquor too.
1. Qi sainiisa? {Qi GEZAI BIU?} How are you?
2. Bu Rnqannii. {Bi RENXIAO BI.} I'm Rnqan/ Renxiao.
3. Qi Shdanchin niu? {Qi MINLUN BUI?} Are you Shdanchin/Minlun?
4. Ninbii, bu Shdanchinnii. {AOLAI, BI MIBI.} Yes, I am.
5. Rnqanhua amahgingiwa? {MINZHAN GEZAI BAINU?} How is Rnqanhua/Minzhan?
6. Gan hudi saina, qimu hgali giwa. {GAN HUDU GEZAI BANG, QIMEI PUOHUALA BA.} She's very well, thank you.
7. Malang sgalidiya. {MUGHASHI QIGA.} See you tomorrow.
8. Ruaji ra. {RUOJI RI.} Come in please.
9. Sodii. {SAO.} Sit down.
10. Puzilidadii. {QI GE BOSI.} Stand up, please.
11. Qi miinbiraawu? {QI XIEGERE BU?} Do you understand?
12. Bu miinbirawa. {AOLAI, BI XIEGERE BA.} Yes, I understand.
13. Do muxilidi. {DU. MUSHI.} Now read, please.
14. Ne do hudi saina. {GEZAI BANG.} That's fine.
15. Ne yanna? {Ni YANG BANG?} What's this?
16. Te xeelgiwa. {Ti NIANJINZIGE BANG.} That's a glass.
17. Ne qini xeelwani? {Ni QINI NIANJINZI BAINU?} Is this your glass?
18. Puja, te muni xeel puja. {PUZHANG, TI MUNI NIANJINZI PUZHANG.} No, that's not my glass.
19. Ne dii kenni xeelwa? {Ni KANNI NIANJINZI BANG?} Whose glass is this?
20. Tesi qini xeelwa. {Ti QINI NIANJINZI BANG.} That's your glass.
21. Ude anjiwa? {YIDI ANGJI BANG?} Where's the door?
22. Ude tetiriwa. {TAITINGDU BANG.} There it is.
23. Nehgi yanna? {NISI YANG BANG?} What are these?
24. Tehgi xeelwa. {TISI NIANJINZI BANG.} Those are glasses.
25. Xeelhgi anjiwa? {NIANJINZI ANGJI BANG?} Where are the glasses?
26. Tehgi tetiriwa. {TAI TINGDU BANG.} There they are.
27. Nehgila muni malighaawa. {NISI MUNI MERGHA BANG.} These are my hats.
28. Qini deelhgi lai? {QINI DIERSI ANGJI BANG?} Where are your clothes?
29. Tehgi tetindiixwa. {TAI TINGBEIDA BANG.} They’re over there.
30. Nehgi qini malighaa ninbani? {NISI QINI MERGHA MUBAINU?} Are these your hats?
31. Ninba, tehgi ninja. {AOLAI, MUBANG.} Yes, they are.
32. Te deelhgi qina, ninbani? {NISI QINI DIER PUZHAINU?} These are your clothes, aren’t they?
33. Puja, tehgi puja. {AOLAI, PUZHANG.} No. they aren’t.
34. Tehgi muni puja. {TISI MUNI PUZHANG.} They’re not mine.
35. Nehgi muna, tehgh qina. {NISI MUNI BANG, TISI QINI BANG.} These are mine, and those are yours.
36. Te meelighahgi qini puja, ninbani? {NISI QINI MERGHA PUZHAINU?} Those aren’t your hats, are they?
37. Qi kennii? {QI KAN BI?} Who are you?
38. Bu lahgaqingi yii. {BI ZHUANGJIAQIGE B1.} I’m a farmer.
39. Te tetiriigu tengi kun kenna? {TAITINGBEIDAKU TI KAN BANG?} Who is that over there?
40. Teda lahgaqingiwa. {GAN YE ZHUANGJIAQI BANG.} He’s a farmer, too.
41. Tengi nine kun lahgaqingiwani? {TIGE XUJUNKONG ZHUANGJIAQI MUBAINU?} Is that lady a farmer?
42. Puja, te puja. {PUZHANG, GAN PUZHANG.} No, she isn’t.
43. Te kunhgi lahqaqi puja. {TI NONGKONGSI YE ZHUANGJIAQI PUZHANG.} Those men aren’t farmers, either.
44. Bu tehgini surighuajinnani? {BI QINI LAOSHI MUBAINU?} Am I your teacher?
45. Ninba, qi ninba. {AOLAI, MUBANG.} Yes, you are.
46. Tengi dide kun surighajinga, ninbani? {TIGE NONGKONG LAOSHI PUZHAINU?} That man is a teacher, isn’t he?
47. Ninba, te ninba. {MUBANG, GAN MUBANG.} Yes, he is.
48. Te kunhgi kenna? {NI KONGSI KAN BANG?} Who is these people?
49. Tehgi jangjiua lahgaqiwa. {GANSI ZHUANGJIAQI BANGBA.} Maybe they’re farmers.
50. Tehgi lahqaqi pujani? {GANSI ZHUANGJIAQI PUZHAINU?} Aren’t they farmers?
51. Bu saighan lii mudenii. {BI ZHUONI AIMIEDIELANG.} I really don’t know.
52. Qini nira yannii? {QINI NIERENI YANG GELA BI?} What’s your name?
53. Muni nira Kuala yii. {MUNI NIERENI SUNBEI GELA BI.} My name is Kuala/Sunbei.
54. Qini yaasi yannii? {QINI GERNI NIERE YANG GELA BI? or: QI XIN YANG BI?} What’s your family name?
55. Muni yaasi Liwa. {BI XING LI BI.} My family name is Li.
56. Qini huinagu niri amakiji kilena? {QINI NIERENI YIAJI ZHURULA?} How do you spell your given name?
57. Sishiden. S-i-s-h-i-d-e-n.
58. Qini zhoniini niri yannii? {QINI NUKUERNI NIERE YANG GELA?} What’s your friend’s name?
59. Teni nirani Lamazhaxiwa. {GANNI NIERENI QISHIWU GELANG.} His name is Lamazhaxi/Qishiwu.

60. Buda Lamazhaxi ghoorila zhonii yii. {BI MA QISHIWU GHUERLO XIDIERSANG NUKUER BI.} Lamazhaxi/Qishiwu and I are old friends.

61. Qisi Lamazhaxini aaghadiu niu? {QI QISHIWUNI AGHADIAO BIU?} Are you Lamazhaxi's/Qishiwu's brother?

62. Pujii, bu pujii. {PUZHI, BI PUZHI.} No, I'm not.

63. Ne Mankua. {NI MATONG BANG.} This is Mankua/Matong.

64. Qi sainiisa? { QI GEZAI BIU?} How do you do?

65. Mankua, ne Lamazhaxiwa. {MATONG, NI QISHIWU BANG.} Mankua/Matong, this is Lamazhaxi/Qishiwu.

66. Qimu sgawa hudingi baisiwa. {QIMEI QIGESA HUDU BA Y ASILANG.} Very pleased to meet you.

67. Do kidi sarawa? {NIEBIE ALIGE SARA BANG?} What month is this?

68. Do turang sarawa. {NIEBIE ZHENGYUE BANG.} This is the first month.

69. Muxi niegara Haran-Ghoori Sarawa, ninbani? {MIESHI GE SARA LAYUE PUZHAINU?} Last month was the twelfth, wasn't it?

70. Ninba, te ninba. {AOLAI, MUBANG.} Yes, it was.

71. Huina niegara sidii sarawa? {PUZAGE SARA JIYUE BANG?} What month is next month?

72. Ghoori Sarani sghudini qi diriwa, ninbani? {NIEBIE ERYUE PUZHAINU?} You were here in the second month, weren't you?

73. Ninba, Haran-Ghoori Sarawa. {AOLAI, NIEBIE LAYUE BANG.} Yes, it is the twelfth month.

74. Qimu hindaz zi ne gii yii? {QIMEI DU HANTERGE BIU?} Do you have a shirt?

75. Yii, nda yii. {AOLAI, BI.} Yes, I do.

76. Qimu moringi niegara yii? {QIMEI DU MUORIGE BIU?} Do you have a horse?

77. Gui, nda gui. {WUGUI, DANGDA GUL.} No, I don't.

78. Qimu huni niegara yina, ninbani? {QIMEI DU KHOUMIJAGE BI SHA?} You have a sheep, don't you?

79. Gui, nda gui. {WUGUI, DAMEI GUL.} No, I don't.

80. Nenga mori qini? {NIEBIE MUORI QINI BIU?} Does this horse belong to you?

81. Ninba, bu muulasada muna. {MUBANG, BI MULASA (OR: JUSA) MUBANG.} Yes, I think it does.

82. Qimu aaghadiu giji kidi yii? {QIMEI DU AIGHADIAO MA GEQIDIAO KEDU BI?} How many sisters and brothers do you have?

83. Qi muni malighaani washiji guiba? {QI MUNI MERGHA BARISANG GUI MA?} Don't you have my hat?

84. Guiji, qini malighaa da deel ghoorila muni dindiixiwa. {AOLAI, BI QINI MERGHA MA DIERNI YIGUANI BARI BA.} Yes, I have both your hat and your coat.

85. Gagodi fulaan haini yinaani? {SHULANDU HULANG HAI BAINU?} Does Gagog/Shulan have red shoes?

86. Yiina, gandi yiina. {AOLAI, GANDU BANG.} Yes, he does.
87. Tendi nuhui nige yiina, ninbani? {GANDU NUKHUAI GE BAINU?} He has a dog, doesn’t he?
88. Puja, tendi gua. {WUGUANG, GANDU WUGUANG.} No, he doesn’t have one.
89. Niuduri kidiwa? {NIAODUER KEDU BER?} What’s the date today?
90. Niuduri haran-shzin jang da jiran-ghuran fanni Haran-Nige Sarani xni nigewa. {NIAODUER YIJULUSANNIANNI SHIYIYUE CHUYIDU TUER BA.} Today is the first of the eleventh month, nineteen sixty-three.
91. Qimu kijii turaja? {QIMEIDU KEJIE TIER BA?} When were you born?
92. Nda haran-shzin jang da hujin-tawun fanni Haran-Nige Sarani xni nigedi turaja. {DAMEI YIJULUSANNIANNI SHIYIYUE CHUYIDU TUER BA.} I was born on the first of the eleventh month, nineteen thirty-five.
93. Qimu anjiixi turaja? {QIMEIDU ANGJ1 TIER BA?} Where were you born?
94. Nda mula ayiligidi turaja. {DANGDA MULA YIMEGHGEDU TIER BA.} I was born in a little village.
95. Budahgi yang nige sanbani tangxalayaba. {DASI GUORIDANI DIGER KELIA.} Let’s talk about something else.
96. Shdananggu fanni Deeran Sarani qi anjiixi yi? {DANTHUANG SIYUEDU QI ANGJI BI?} Where were you during the fourth month of last year?
97. Bu jilaji gharigha adani anjiixi yiixa. {ANGJI BUKUNI BI JILADALANG.} I don’t remember where I was then.
98. Deshijin ne sghuudini q1 anjiixi yiikua? {GUONIAN NIKER SHIJIE QI ANGJI XIN?} Where will you be next year at this time?
99. Qi yan hgilienii? {QI YANG KERLIN?} What do you want?
100. Bu nige caangangzi qa hgilenii. {BI CHA YIBEI KERLIN.} I want a cup of tea.
101. Qi yan rdegu duralani? {QI YANG DIKU DURALALA?} What do you want to eat?
102. Qi nda shdimaa nigii ji ghua. {DANGDA DIMEI DIGER HU.} Please give me a piece of bread.
103. Qi nengini hgilenii niu--tengini hgilienunii? {NGE MA TIGE, ALIGENI DURALALA?} Which one would you like--this one or that one?
104. Nda kilesa yama shijuanda gua. {DANGDA ALIBERSA BERN.} I was born in a little village.
105. Bu Gaasan da SangrUila tangxalagu duralani. {BI GANSAN BIU SHANQIN GHUELO YIGE XUANKENI.} I’d like to talk with Gaasan or Sangrui/Shanqin.
106. Do amahgji, gan ghoorila mangda soja. {YAMA BAO SANA MA, GAN GHUOLO YIGUA HUANGLASER BANG.} I’m sorry, but both of them are busy right now.
107. Qi qa wuqigu duralani? {QI CHA AIKERLINU?} Wouldn’t you like some tea?
108. Fangbenniia, bu qa wuqigii. {QI YAMA AISANASA, BI SUZU DIGER KERLIN.} I’d rather have some water if you don’t mind.
109. Ne jirihga kunri qi tannijin yiinani? {NIKER KONGSINI QI MIEELAINDU?} Do you know any of these people?
110. Ne jirihgari ghoori ghurangi tannini. {LIANG SANGEJANNI ANGJI QIGESANG SHENGE.} Two or three of those men look familiar.

111. Te kunhgi yiila muni zhoniihgiwa. {NI KONGSI YIGUA MUNI NUKUER BANG.} All of those people are friends of mine.

112. Ne kun jirihgari alingi Shdanzhixjawa? {NI TUDUORO ALIGE TIANSHOU BANG?} Which one of those men is Shdanzhi?/Tianshou?

113. Sulighui rogni tengi shge kunwani? {SERGHAI BEIDAKU TIGE WENDUER BIE KONG MUBAIINU?} Is he the tall man on the left?

114. Qi Qidari hqaqa gule shdani? {QI QIDAI GE KELJI NAGHULAINU?} Do you speak Chinese?

115. Nigiiji shdani. {AOLAI, DIGER MEDIELANG.} Yes, a little.

116. Qini zhoniihgi Qidari hqaqa gule shdannani? {QINI NUKUER QIDAIGE KELJI NAGHULAINU?} Does your friend speak Chinese?

117. Shdana, guleji hudi saina. {AOLAI, GAN QIDAIGE KELJI GEZAI BANG.} Yes, he speaks Chinese perfectly.

118. Qi kidi sanba hqaqa gule shdani? {QI JIYANGZI WUGE KELJI NAGHULA?} How many languages do you speak?

119. Muni zhonii kidi sanba hqaqala pujuu jiuri darang rjena. {MUNI NUKUER JIYANGZI WUGE JUJI MA ZHURUJI NAGHULANG.} My friend reads and writes several languages.

120. Qini Tiwari hqaqa amahginga? {QI TIEBIEGE YAJI KELJI NINGTAI GEZAI?} How well do you know Tibetan?

121. Te Mongghul gulesa Tiwari dailaja. {GAN TIEBIEGE DAILAKU MONGHIERGE KELILANG.} He speaks Mongghuer with a Tibetan accent.

122. Ndani aaba aama Tiwari guleji hudi saina. {MUNI ABANA TIEBIEGE KELJI GEZAI BANG.} My parents speak Tibetan fluently.

123. Qi amaginii? {QI YANG GELA BI?} What are you doing?

124. Bu pujiungi rjenii. {BI SHU MUSHILA BLU} I'm reading a book.

125. Qini zhonii yamagina? {QINI NUKUER YANG GELA?} What's your friend doing?

126. Te pujiuna surina. {GAN SHUNANG SUELANG.} He's studying his lesson.

127. Bu ne sghuudi yamada gin gui. {NIEBIE BI YAMA GELA GUI.} I'm not doing anything right now.

128. Qi do anji xgunii? {QI ANGJI XINI?} Where are you going?

129. Bu kudina xni. {BI GERDUNANG XINI.} I'm going home.

130. Qi ali sghuudini hariji rgunii?{QI KEJIE SUGHO KHARIJI RINI?} What time are you coming back?

131. Bu diinki adani ali sghuudi hariji rguniha. {KEJIE RIKUNI BI KELJI XIDERAGHA DAKUNANG.} I'm not sure what time I'm coming back.

132. Qi do yan muulanii? {QI YANG MULALA BI?} What are you thinking about?

133. Bu pujiuna muulanii. {BI SHUNANG MULALA BLU} I'm thinking about my lesson.

134. Qi kendi xn jiurinii? {QI KANDU XING ZHURULA BI?} Who are you writing to?

135. Bu Biijinni zhoniiingidina jiurinii. {BI BEIJINNI YIGE NUKUERDUNANG}
XING ZHURULA Bl.: I'm writing to a friend of mine in Beijing.

136. Tingisa, qi kenni, sgaanii? \{SHUNGBIANGE ERSE WA, QI KANNI XIGELA BI?\} By the way, who are you waiting for?

137. Bu kenmandinida sgaan gui. \{BI KANMANI XIGELA GUI\} I'm not waiting for anybody.

138. Qi kidi nesilija? \{QI KEDU NASI DI BA?\} How old are you?

139. Bu hurin-agine nesilija. \{BI ERSIIYI BER BA\} I'm twenty-one-years-old.

140. Ndani aawu han hurin-tawun lija gua. \{MUNI GAGA HAN ERSIIYU BERSANG GUANG\} My older brother is not quite twenty-five.

141. Lamuhua tijin-tawun puja, ninbani? \{XIANGYIN HAN SISHIIYU BERSANG GUANU\} Lamuhua/Xiangyi is not forty-five yet, is he?

142. Srang darang tijin kidiwa. \{ERZIHZHA HAN WUSII BERSANG GUANG\} Srang/Erzhia is still in her forties.

143. Bu qimusia ghoori nesi shgewa. \{BI QIMEISA LIANGGE SHUGUO BANG\} I'm two years older than you are.

144. Muni diu ndasa ghoori nesi mulawa. \{MUNI DIAO DANGDASA LIANGGE MULA BANG\} My brother is two years younger than I am.

145. Teni kudi kidila yi? \{QINI GERDU KEDU KONG BANG\} How many are there in your family?

146. Ndani kudi yiigualaji dulunula yii. \{YIGUANI SANAJI QIGE KONG BANG\} There are seven of us altogether.

147. Muni aajii zui shgewa. \{MUNI AJIA ZUI SHUGUO BANG\} My sister is the oldest.

148. Bu zui shgena. \{BI ZUI SHUGUO BI\} I'm the oldest.

149. Qi nige ta, bu kidi nesi yiikua. \{QI TA, BI KEDU BERJI\} Guess how old I am.

150. Bu kilesa, qi jangijuha hurin-ghuranna. \{BI JUSA QI ERSIIYAN BERJIANG\} I'd say you're about twenty-three.

151. Qi guadindii ali sghuudi puzinii? \{JIAODUER QI KEJIE SUGHO BUOSILA BI?\} What time do you get up every day?

152. Bu hgengii sariguni shde yii. \{BI JIAODUER SHIDIIETAI XIERRIANG\} I usually wake up early.

153. Muni diu puziguni ndasa daana. \{MUNI GAGA JIAODUER DANGDASA WURAI BUOSILANG\} My brother gets up later than I do.

154. Bu deelna musadigii, nangsaawuqini. \{DIERNANG MUSIKU, BI YAMA DILAB\} After I get dressed, I have breakfast.

155. Hgengii, bu shdeji wuqiguni luannii. \{JIAODUER, BI SHIDIIEDU WULANG DILANG\} Usually, I have a big breakfast.

156. Quguduri qi anji xwa? \{CHUGUOUDER QI ANJI XI BA?\} Where did you go yesterday?

157. Bu zhonihgina rjela xwa. \{BI NUKUERGENANG NAOLA XI BA\} I went to see a friend of mine.

158. Quguduri qi Gashijunni sgawu? \{CHUGUOUDER QI CHENHAIXINQIGEBU\} Did you see Gashijun/Chenhaixin yesterday?

159. Bu Gashijunni sgaja guida Lamutaini sgawa. \{BI CHENHAIXIN HUZHULU\}
Qige Sanggui Ma, Chenhaixin, But I saw Lamutai/Chenhaiyin.

160. Qi yangi tangxalawa? {Qi Yangi Keliba?} What did you talk about?

161. Budahi yahangi dundog tangxalawa. {Bi Khere Diger Keliba.} We talked about a lot of things.

162. Bu tendi yahangi dundog szaghawa. {Bi Gandu Yamage Erse Ba.} I asked him a lot of questions.

163. Qi tendi yangi szaghawa? {Qi Gandu Yang Erse Ba?} What did you ask him?

164. Bu tendi szaghawa Tiwari gule shdani. {Bi Gandu Tiegbe Keljii Naghulainu Guang Geji Ge Erse Ba.} I asked him if he spoke Tibetan.

165. Te kilena bu nijiji Tiwari gule shdani gina. {Gan Tiegbe Diger Keljii Naghulang Gelang.} He said he spoke a little Tibetan.

166. Dii bu szaghagun, Danmaaditannijin kun yiu gui. {Tinku Bi Gandu Laburangdu Tanku Kong Biugui Geji Ge Erse Ba.} Then I asked him if he knew anybody in Danma/Laburang.

167. Te kileguni, tindixi yahangi kun tanni gina. {Gan Tinku Kong Wulangge Tanilang Gelang.} He said he knew a lot of people there.

168. Zui huina, bu tendi szaghawa kidi nesilawa. {Tinsa Khuono Bi Gandu Kedu Berba Geji Ge Erse Ba.} Finally, I asked him how old he was.

169. Te kileguni bu nesina hansi lii kilesa saina. {Gan Dangda Nasinang Keliku Duruang Guang Gelang.} He said he would rather not tell his age.

170. Te muni yangi dundogni hariliji ghuwa. {Bi Gandu Ersesangni, Gan Yiqua Keliba.} He answered almost all of my questions.

171. Qi anji soji? {Qi Angji Saoser Bi?} Where do you live?


173. Qi ne bazarishdi soja, nimbani? {Qi Bazer Nindo Saola Gui Ma?} You live here in the city, don't you?

174. Bu bazar ghada soji. {Bi Bazer Ghadasa Riba.} I'm from out of the city.

175. Qi dirii soji amahgii sghuungi liwa? {Qi Nindo Kedu Sugho Saoba?} How long have you lived here?

176. Bu dirii soji tawun fan lija. {Bi Nindo Wuniai Saoba.} I've lived here for five years.

177. Te buda ghooirlingi tannijii haran fan laxja. {Gan Dangda Tannii Shiniang Berlang.} He's known me for over ten years.

178. Bu yiibiizi Qidari hgaqa guleja. {Bi Yiheiizi Qidaige Keliba.} I've spoken Chinese all my life.

179. Te Tiwari hgaqa suriji hudi daajani? {Gan Tiegbe Yaniyee Geji Hudu Wudajuu?} Has he studied Tibetan very long?

180. Qi nangsaana wuqidiwu? {Qi Shidekuni Yijin Dibu?} Have you had breakfast already?

181. Wuqiuwa, ghooi zhuntuu muxisa wuqidiwa. {Aolai Bi Shidekuni Liangge Zhongtousa Miehsi Di Ba.} Yes, I had breakfast two hours ago.
182. Quguduri xruudini qi anji yii?
\{CHUGUDUER DUERSUGHGHO QI ANGJI BI?\} Where were you yesterday afternoon?

183. Bu yiizhi kudina yii, xruudini.
\{BI YIGE DUERSUGHGERGUDUNANG BI.\} I was at home all afternoon.

184. Bu jina kidi zhoniidina xin kidi jiuriwa. \{BI NUKUERSIDUNANG XIN ZHURULA BI.\} I was writing some letters to friends of mine.

185. Bu Jinxuni rjeta xgu sghuudini, ganda Dunmin ghoorila tangxalana.
\{BI JINXUNI QIGERSANGDU, GAN ZHEN DONGMEN GHAEROLO WUGE KELISER BANG.\} When I saw Jinxu/Dongzhou, Jinxu he was talking with Dunmin/Dongmen.

186. Qi taji gharigha shdagunani niumogxiji bu amagina? \{BI NANGGHA YANG GESER BIKUNI QI TAJI BERKUNAINU?\} Can you guess what I was doing this morning?

\{CHUGUDUER DUERSUGHGO HUYIN YANG GEKUNI BI JILADALANG.\} I can't remember what Jinwun/Huyin was doing yesterday afternoon.

188. Bu marishidaxja gan nda kilesan sosan ghajariniini. \{BI GAN KELISANGNI GANNI DIZHINI MERSHIDA GEJIANG.\} I've forgotten what he said his address was.

189. Bu marishidaxja gan nda kilesan quguduri gan suani nangshizawa wuqisan sguuni. \{BI GAN KELISANGNI GAN KEJIE SUGHO YAMA DISANGNI MERSHIDA GEJIANG.\} I've forgotten what time he said he had dinner last night.

190. Qi jiihunlawu? \{QIMEIDU DAHULA BU?\} Are you married?

191. Gui, bu darang jiihunlaja gui, darang xghala yii. \{GUL BI BIERI HESANG GUL BI HAN KHEZHIGHERNANG BI.\} No, I'm not married, I'm still single.

192. Tehgi jiihunlaji amahgii sguhu liwaha? \{GAN GHAEROLO JIHEHUN GEJI JINNIAE BIRR\} How long have they been married?

193. Jaaxi kenla jiihunlawaha?
\{QIANYINDU KANNI JIUJI?\} Who did Jaaxi/Qianyi marry?

194. Tehgidi bulai yiiguanj?
\{GANSIDU KAOXUJUN BAINU?\} Do they have children?

195. Muxi nige saradi tengi mula bulaingi turuaja. \{MIESHIGE SARA GANSIDU KAOGE RIJIANG.\} They had a baby last month.

196. Muni kuu Jirighun Sara jiihunlagii gina. \{MUNI KAO LIUYUEDU BIERI HEKUNANG.\} My son wants to get married in the sixth month.

197. Tehgini sunzi kuu xjunhjini shgedaxja. \{GANSINI SONGZWERSI NIEBIE ZHENG WOSIER BANG.\} Their grandchildren are grown up now.

198. Te guafuungiwa, teni lohanni shdananggu fandi huguxja. \{GAN GUHUANGE BANG, GANNI KUREGAN DANIHUANG GUIDAJIANG.\} She's a widow, her husband died last year.
199. Qi anji shgediwa? {QI MULA SHIJIE ANJI WOSI BA?} *Where did you grow up?*
200. Bu jiu nedidog shgediwa. {BI JIU NINDU SHUGUOTU BA.} *I grew up right here in this neighborhood.*
201. Muni zhonii mulani sghuudini Sunduu shgedaja. {MUNI NUKUER MULA SHIJIE ZHONGCHUANDU SHUGUOTUJIANG.} *My friend spent his childhood in Sunduu/Zhongchuan.*
202. Te Sunduu sowa haran-duluun nesilija. {SHIQI BERTULAGE GAN YIZHI ZHONGCHUANDU SAOJIANG.} *He lived in Sunduu/Zhongchuan until he was seventeen.*
203. Dawaszan hurin kidi fanrni dindixi bnhua shgewa. {MIESHI ERSHINIAN NINDU WULANG BIANLUIJANG A.} *There have been a lot of changes here in the last twenty years.*
204. Niudurihgu tingere ni amahgiinga? {NIAODUER TIANGERE YAMER BANG?} *How is the weather today?*
205. Niudurihgu tingere hudingi saina. {NIAODUER TIANGERE GEZAI BANG.} *The weather is nice today.*
206. Qugudurihgu tingere ni amahgiinga? {CHUGUDUER TIANGERE YAMER BANG?} *What was the weather like yesterday?*
207. Quguduri niguuduri ruaja. {CHUGUDUER YITIAN KHIURA BAOJIANG.} *Yesterday it rained all day.*
208. Malang tingere amahgii yiiha? {MUGHASHI TIANGERE YAGEKUNI?} *What will the weather be like tomorrow?*
209. Malang qazi ruaguna. {MUGHASHI CHEGHI BAOJIANG.} *It's going to snow tomorrow.*
210. Niuduri hudi kuidenna. {NIAODUER HUDU KUITIAN BANG.} *It's quite cold today.*
211. Shdejini burun tingerewa. {YIGE MUGHU BUORUOTUJIANG.} *It's been cloudy all morning.*
212. Do tingere ruanani? {NIEBIE KHURA BAOLAINU?} *Is it raining now?*
213. Niuduri xruudini tingere jangjiuha arilikua. {NIAODUER DUERSUGHO TIANGERE ARUERNI A.} *It'll probably clear up this afternoon.*
214. Tingere jangna jangna halangda rwa. {TIANGERE MERMERDI KHALALANG.} *The days are getting hotter.*
215. Niusuani mula halang kii yiina. {NIAOUSHULIAN KAI BANG} *There's a cool breeze this evening.*
216. Niuduri amahgiingwa? {NIAODUER QI YAGE BA?} *Today how are you feeling?*
217. Niudurihgu mula halang kii yiina. {NIAODUER YAMER BANG!} *Today how are you feeling?*
218. Quguduri bu narilaxja, ko niuduriha luan saina. {CHUGUDUER BIEQIEREBBA, NIAODUER DGER GEZAIUJIANG.} *I was sick yesterday, but I'm better today.*
219. Muni saa buraxja, ko hanadi darang yiina. {MUNI SHAOKEKUNI GUIDAIJANG, KHANIAJI HAN KHANIALANG.} *My fever is gone, but I still have a cough.*
220. Ndani diuni tulighuini yidina. {MUNI GAGANI TERGHAI
221. Qini alingi qimuga yidina? {QINI ALIGE GHAR BIETUGHALA?} Which of your arms is sore?

222. Muni warang qimuga yidina, jiu diriini yidina. {MUNI BARANG GHAR NANWEILAJIANG, ZHENG NIKERDA.} My right arm hurts—it hurts right here.

223. Qi amagiwa? {QI YAGE BA?} What's the matter with you?

224. Muni nurixjii yidina. {MUNI NURU BIETUGHALANG.} I've got a pain in my back.

225. Alingi kol yidina? {ALIGE KHUER NANWEILAJI?} Which foot hurts? Sulighui kolwani? {SERGHAII KHUER MA?} Is it the left one?

226. Qi amaga gantiina hgualidiwa? {QI SHIGHAINANG YAJI KUGHURAGHABA?} How did you break your leg?

227. Qini warang ghari hiidija, yidighanani? {QINI BARANG GHER KHATUUJANG, WOKEBU?} Your right hand is swollen, does it hurt?

228. Qizi rusina, qi hansi smanba tada xba. {QINI SUDUERSANG RUANGDU CHUZI GHAHLANG, QI HANSHI MANBA KHERGHA GE XI.} It's bleeding, you'd better go see a doctor about that cut.

229. Bu qimu shdehan hanasa ginii. {BI ZHENG MULAJU DANGDA WUGE GE (OR: KAROU GE) HU.} We're trying to plan our future.

230. Malang qi amagain? {QI MUGHASHI YANG GENI?} What do you plan to do tomorrow?

231. Malang janiuha bu amada lii gugua. {BI MUGHASHI YANGBERSA DIGER GENI.} I doubt that I'll do anything tomorrow.

232. Qini diu malang amagain? gina? {QINI DIAO MUGHASHI YANG GEKUNI?} What's your brother planning to do tomorrow?

233. Gan muden gua yamagainiiha. {YANGGEKUNI GAN AIMIEDIELANG.} He can't decide what to do.

234. Yiigua dundogni lii mudes, nigeri tii adani. {YIGUA KHERENI AIMIEDIESA KELIJI XIDERAGHA DAKUNANG.} It's difficult to make a decision without knowing all the facts.

235. Budahgi huinaguna jiihualanii. {DASI NINSA KHUONO YANG GEKUNING GEEJIALA BI.} We're hoping to spend a few days in the mountains.

236. Te saighan zhuyiingiwa. {NIGE ZHUYI GEZAI BANG.} That's a good idea.

237. Bu muulasanni ghadadi kidiu duri soya ginii. {BI ZHENG MULAJI WULADI JITIAN SAONI XEJI.} I'm hoping to spend a few days in the mountains.

238. Nanggu yershdi qi muulasanni biimegogdi xgu niu? {NIEHUAU NAZHERDU QI MULAJU BEIJUJI XINU?} Would you consider going north this summer?

239. Qi xi shdagun giha, buda ghoorila handiladi yiu. {QIMEIDU XIKU JIA BISA, BI QIMEILA HANGTU XIKU DURUJALANG.} If there's a chance you'll go, I'd like to go with you.

240. Qi zhuyiina waradigu ndangi kile. {QI MULA JIULAKU DANGDA WUGE GE (OR: KAROU GE) HU.} After you think it over, please let me know what you decide.
241. Dierjian duerla xiku Kerilikunang. I'm going shopping because I need to buy some clothes.

242. Ne deel hushi guiha, bu huina harilisa ligunani? {Ni hanter Dangda Aiduisa, bi Khari Herighasa Berkainainu?} If this shirt doesn't fit, may I bring it back later?

243. Qi amahgii shge haingi musigunii? {Qi jiaoni hai Musila bi?} What size shoes do you wear?

244. Tengi deel qimu hudi hushiwa. {Tijian dier qiimeidu hudu duidian bang.} That suit looks very good on you.

245. Ne deelni leozila szasana, nibani? {Nijian dier tergho gijuero sasangni Bainu?} This dress is made of silk, isn't it?

246. Ganjang kidigha seeriwa? {Bi qiimeidu kedu qier hu?} How much do I owe you?

247. Haran-niman kuai tawun mog. {Shibakuai wumao bang.} That will be eighteen yuan and five jiao.¹¹

248. Qi yan rdegu duralani? {Qi yang diger dini?} What would you like to eat?

249. Bu muha kua wuqigu duralani. {Dangda mukha shuli yige gahriga.} I'd like (a bowl of) meat soup, please.

250. Ne qidigha zangna, qi nda arinhangi awuji raba? {Nige qidughu zangnangraiang, dangda arongherni yige hejiri ba?} This knife is dirty, would you bring me a clean one, please?

¹¹One yuan equals ten jiao or 100 fen. Jiao are also known as mao.

251. Bu sghuungi diinka Shdanchinningi rjela xgii. {Bi mulaji Shidanchininni qigeni gejige keliji geni.} I'd like to make an appointment to see Shdanchin/Shidanchin.

252. Quguduri bu smanbadi jinana nige jencalaghawa. {Chuguder bi daihu khergha shengtinangge yianlila xi ba.} I went to see my doctor for a check-up yesterday.

253. Smanba rjeji bu nijiji tarighuanna gina. {Daihu keliji bi diger hendrajiang gelang.} The doctor discovered that I'm a little overweight.

254. Qi mulasne ne narini hanagha shdagunani? {Qi mulasa nige bieqitai kongni bieqin juji berku naunu?} Do you think the patient can be cured?

255. Ndani aaga shdanang jirihga nari kurija. {Muni auw daihuang xinzangbin lujiang.} My uncle had a heart attack last year.

256. Smanba yan kilena? {Daihu yang kelila?} What did the doctor say?

257. Smanba kilena muni niuri qighaanwa gina. {Daihu keliji muni dama shalajang gelang.} The doctor said I looked pale.

258. Yan lii qidasa, muni bai yixida saindiguna gina. {Bi gezaitusa, bi yannang aigesa aiberkunang.} If I want to be healthy, I have to stop smoking cigarettes.

259. Qi aagana muxigu xnniini hurawa kidii duri laxja? {Qi awunang tingsa chenlili rii kedu chegh berji?} How long has it been since you've heard from your uncle?
260. Gan zui huina qimu xn jiusanni ali sghuuwa? {GAN QIMEIDU ZUI KHUONO YIHUN XING ZHURUSANGDU KEJIE SUGHO BANG?} When was the last time he wrote you?

261. Bu mulaji gharigha adani amahgii sghuu laxjiija. {KEDU SUGHO BERBASHI BI MULAJI GHERGA DAKUNANG.} I can’t recall how long it’s been.

262. Niuduri qi amahgii deel musiguni? {QI NIAODUER YANG MUSINI?} What are you going to wear today?

263. Bu ne nughuun deelna musisa ligunani? {BI KUGUO DIERNANG MUSINI, QI JISA BERKU NAINU?} I’m going to wear my blue suit, is that all right?

264. Muni deelhgi zangdaxja. {MUNI YIGUA DIER ZANGNANGRAJIANG.} All my suits are dirty. Nda musigu deel gui. {DANGDA MUSIKU YANG DIER A GUL.} I don’t have anything to wear.

265. Ne deel nda hushi nigiijida gua. {NIGE DIER DAMEI DIGER A DUILLIAN GUANG.} This dress doesn’t fit me anymore.

266. Bu mulasas ne muladiili nda shgedaxja, musa adaguna. {BI TASA NIGE MUODUO DANGDA SHUGUODAKUNANG.} I guess I’ve outgrown this pair of trousers.

267. Ne haihgi quraxja. {NIHAISI KHAOQINRAJIANG.} These shoes are worn out. Gaghi musiji hudi daaja. {NIHAISINI MUSUJI WUDAJANG.} They’ve lasted a long time.

268. Bu ne jigha tirijini tirijila adani. {BI ZHAGHA TEGHJINANG TEGHJLADALANG.} I can’t fasten this collar button.

269. Qi amaga deelna darang lii musini? {QI HANTERNANG AIMUSIJI YALAB!} Why don’t you get dressed now? Larihga warijn deelna musi. {QINI GONGZUOHUNANG MUSI.} Put on your work clothes.

270. Muni diu ruaji ra, deelna raliya, yang ghara xja. {MUNI GAGA RUORI, DIERNANGGE ARUERJIDANANG GHER YAO BA.} My brother came in, changed his clothes, and went out again.

271. Bu qi xni malighaana juusanni mudeja gua. {BI QI SHINI MERGHANANG ZHUOSANGNI QIGESANG GIU.} I didn’t notice you were wearing your new hat.

272. Malang tingere li ruasa, bu dangxi awula xgunii. {MUGHASHI KHUDA AI BAOSA, BI DONGXI DUERLA XINI GEJ MULASER BI.} If it does not rain tomorrow, I think I’ll go shopping.

273. Budahgi xgu duralanida, tingereni rjegu gulaguna. {DASI YAOJI BERNUGUL, DU TANGEREDU XIJIANG.} There’s a possibility we’ll go, but it all depends on the weather.

274. Malang tingere ruasa, bu rawaana qirghala xgunii. {MUGHASHI DANGDA JIA BISA, BI SUZUNANGGE QIERGHALA XINI.} If I have time tomorrow, I think I’ll get a haircut.

275. Muni kuu xgaligu jinca danglagu duralana. {MUNI KAO SHUGUOTUGU JINCHAGE DANGLANI GELANG.} My son wants to be a policeman when he grows up.

276. Qi rgulini ali nigiijinini lii durulanii? {WUGUERDU QI YANGNI AI DURUALALA?} What is it you don’t like about winter weather?
277. Rgulidi tingere yixida kuidenni sghuudini lii duralani. \{TiNGERE HUHU KUTIANSII BI DURUATLALA GUANG.\} *I don’t like it when the weather gets real cold.*

278. Bu yerni tingereni shuugi adani. \{BI KHALEN NARANGDU BAIDALANG.\} *I can’t stand summer weather.*

279. Bu ayiguni qi amaga rdeguri lighaguni tigii zhishiwa. \{BI GESANGNI MA KELISANGNI, GAN YANG’A AIDURUALALANG.\} *I’m afraid you’re being too particular about your food.*

280. Gan bu gulesan warisannii duralan gua. \{BI GESANGNI MA KELISANGNI, GAN YANG’A AIDURUALALANG.\} *She doesn’t like anything I do or say.*

281. Bu ne smanni wuidogniini lii duralani, dansi wuquadiwa. \{BI NI YUENI HUNTUKU DURUANG GUANG, BI HANSHI WUKU KERLIKUNANG.\} *I didn’t like the medicine’s taste, but I took it anyway.*

282. Qi amaga ne sanba smansa tigii jilana? \{QI YAJI NIYUENI NINGGEJI AIDURUALALAI?\} *Why do you dislike the medicine so much?*

283. Qi muni hgaqani sunisa, qi Hanson bii xi. \{QI MUNI WUGENI CHENGLISA, BI MULASA QI AIXINI.\} *If you want my advice, I don’t think you should go.*

284. Bu rjesa qi ne xnni tasila sangdi jiuri. \{BI JUSA QI NIXINGNI TANGTERXIHAKU CUNGE ZHURU.\} *I suggest that you tear up the letter and start over again.*

285. Ne nige janyiiwa, qi hanshi jina muulagula banki. \{NI MUNIGE JANYI BANG, QI HANSHI YAJI DURUATLAKU YAJI GE.\} *It’s only a suggestion, and you can do what you please.*

286. Bu qimu aaba tiigii nige quangiya. \{BI QIMEIDU GEZAIHEIR ZHUYI DGER GHERGHAJI HUA.\} *Let me give you a little fatherly advice.*

287. Qi teni lii duralasa, hansi shhuana kileba. \{QI NINI AIDURUALASAI, BI JUSA QI NINGGEJI KELISA BERNI.\} *If you don’t like it, I wish you would say so.*

288. Qi bii qila, bu jang muulasanangi kilesannii. \{QI YAMA BAOMULAMA, BI ZHANG JIANNANG MULASANGNANGGE KELI BA.\} *Please don’t take offense, I only wanted to tell you what I think.*

289. Bu rjesa, ne ger higlesen tigii seeri lii xguna. \{BI NAOSA, NIGER GANSI KERLIKU SHENGHE TINTAI GEJIA QIER ADXIKUNANG.\} *In my opinion, the house isn’t worth the price they’re asking.*

290. Bu muulasai qi niusuani hansi kudi sodii. \{BI NAOSA, QI NIAOSHULIAN GERDU SAOSA DUILANG.\} *My feeling is that you ought to stay home tonight.*

291. Bu yiixin shgedaxja, yan dundogrida jina zhuzhangna wari shdaguna. \{BI XIDIERDANANG YANGBERSA MULASA WUDANG BANG.\} *I’m old enough to make up my own mind.*

292. Qida yiijan ghuwa, hgalgi giwa, bu darang jina muulagu gulaguna. \{QI ZHUYINI PUOHUANLABA, YOUDIKUNI BI JIENANG AIMULASA AIBERKUNANG.\} *Thanks for the advice, but this is something I have to figure out for myself.*

293. Gan kendi ugonida lii sunisiguna. \{GAN KANDU1A NUER AI
HULANG MA.} He won't pay attention to anybody. {QI BAI KUOLANG.} You’re just wasting your breath.

294. Bulaihgi tawun nesiri xuutangdi xna, ninbani? {MULA BULAI SI WUSUIDI XUEDU XILA GUAINU?} Children enter school at the age of five, don’t they?

295. Dirii tingere halangna, nara saina, buudi ghaxji hudi saina. {TIANGERE KHALONG, NARA GEZAISHI, BUDI WOSIJI HUDU GEZAI BANG.} Because of the warm and sunny weather, wheat grows very well here.

296. Ali fandida ne sghuudini laghaqi ghajarina fulina. {NIANNIAN NIKER SHIJIEDU, ZHUANGJIAQISI GHAZHERNANG HULULANG.} At this time of year, farmers plow their fields.

297. Dindiigu ne ghajari taashi luangghula, tarisa madaghula. {NINGKU GHAZHERDU SHAZITAIBANG GHAZHER TARISA GEZAI GUANG.} The ground around here is stony and not very good for farming.

298. Qi aasi qidiisa, jiu shdehan puзиwa suanini sagu gulaguna. {QIMEIDU HUGUER12 BISA, QI JIAODUER SHIDIE TAI BUOSIKU NAIZI SAKU KERLIKUNANG.} If you have cows, you have to get up early to do the milking.

299. Qi shgedigu amagigunii? {QI SHUGUOTUGU YANG GENI?} What do you want to be when you grow up?

300. Qi yiiqan muulawu smanba danglaguni? {QI NINGSA MIESHI DAIHU DANGLANI GEJI MULABU?} Have you ever thought about a career in the medical profession?

301. Qi nda udeningi nii ghusa, ligunani? {QI DANGDA DNIGE NII HUSA BERKU NAIRU?} Would you please hold the door open for me?

---

12Huguer is a dialectical variant of fuguer.
Part Four

MINHE MANGGHUER 900

1. Qi gezai biu? (or) Qi gezai bainu? Are you well?
2. Gezai bi. (or) Gezai bang. Fine.
3. Ninsa khuono qiga. See you later.
5. Ni qini ger mubainu? Is this your home?
6. Puzhang. Ni Renxiaoni ger bang. No. This is Renxiao’s home.
7. Muni ger taitingdu bang. My home is over there.
8. Qimei shizai pohuanlab. Thank you very much.
10. Renyi, ni muni xujundiao Xiouzheng bang. Renyi, this is my younger sister Xiouzheng.
11. Qimeidu tanisa bi hudi bayasilang. Meeting you I am very pleased.
12. Oh, Renyi, qini gerku niere...? Excuse me, Renyi, your surname is...?
13. Gezaibiu, Jingzi? How are you, Jingzi?
15. Bi puza wudajiang. I’m late again.
17. Zhuonima? Really?
18. Muni aba nindu bainu? Is my father here?
19. Aolai, bang. Yes, he is.
20. Yama baosana ma, bi wudajiang, nanggha... I’m sorry I’m late, sir, but this morning...
21. Qi jiaohui wudalang. You are always late.
22. Ningsa khuono jiudiandi ningdu ri. Please come here at nine o’clock in the future.
23. Nanggha tasini zhangguidi yageji? How was your boss this morning?
24. Gan werkuerjang. He was angry.
25. Gan mao (or) ha bang. He’s a monster.
26. Ti yang bang? What is that?
27. Ber bang. It’s fruit candy.
28. Kedu gela? How much is it?
29. Qimeidu bielian hua. For you--free.
30. Yinyu ban angji bang? Where’s the English class?
32. Tijige xuesheng dasini banni bainu? Are those students in our class?
33. Bisa chuang. Maybe they are.
34. Tasi Yinyu sanbandu biu? Are you in English Class three?
35. Aolai. Yes.
36. Nigerni haoma kedu bang? 
*What's the room number of this home?*

37. Taiti muni nukuer Renhua ma ganni kuerganbang. *There's my assistant, Renhua, and her husband.*


39. Qi a nindu Yinyu suerla ribu? *Are you here for learning English too?*

40. Sao. *Sit down.*

41. Ni tasini Shini Yinyu liubeiju shu bang. *Here are your New English 900 book.*

42. Du ni duihuani chenli. *Now, listen to this dialogue.*

43. Yabaji? *Why?*

44. Du, shunang zhekedanang diyizhangdu kuergha, damei dagha mushi. *Now, open your books to page one and repeat after me.*

45. Qi luosibu? *Are you hungry?*

46. Wugui, bi luosisang gui. *No, I'm not hungry.*

47. Xiangyin guang sha? *But is it cheap?*

48. Wuguang, xiangyin guang. *No, it isn't cheap.*

49. Ni yama yamer bang? *How's the food?*

50. Berkunang. *It's not bad.*

51. Dasi dianyinuandu yaowa ba. *Let’s go to the cinema.*

52. Jihua ma Erzihua ghuero dianyinyuan diangangdu paidui geser bang. *Jihua and Erzihua are in line in the cinema.*

53. Tini Yinyula yageji kelila? *What's that in English?*

54. Qige pingke. *You spell it.*

55. Puzage kan bang? *Who’s next?*

56. Uh, bi han zhunbigesang gui, pohuanlaba. *Uh, I'm not ready yet, thank you.*

57. Shijiannang zhuajing ge. Take your time.

58. Taitisi yang bang? *What are those?*

59. Cha ma cai diger righa. *Tea and a meat dish, please.*

60. Qi puza xing zhurunu? *Are you writing letters again?*

61. Qi yala bi? *What are you doing?*

62. Bi anadunang xing zhurula bi. *I'm writing to my mother.*


64. Qi angji xini a? *Where are you going?*

65. Muni cher Renxi ghuolo dianyin naola xini. *I'm going to the movies with Renxi, my nephew.*

66. Tasini bangongshiku tige shinagu yageji? *What about the woman in your office?*

67. Gan yamer bang? *What about her?*

68. Niaoshulian qi ganni qige mu? *Aren't you seeing her tonight?*

69. Xinqiwudu bi ganni qigeni. *I’m seeing her on Friday.*

70. Puzage xinquitan ganni shenri bang. *It's her birthday next Sunday.*

71. Bi miedielang. *I know.*

72. Siyue ershierhao bang. *April twenty-second.*

73. Dasi ge hangtulani. *We are going to a party.*

74. Puzage xinqudu, Renxini shenridu, dasi ge hangtulani. *Next week, on Renxi's birthday, we are going to a party.*

75. Qi shidietai gerdu rijiang bai. *You’re home early.*

76. Qi angji bi? *Where were you?*

77. Bi maozengdu bi. *I was in the toilet.*
78. Jifengzhongsa mieshi gan ningdu bang. *She was here a few minutes ago.*
79. Niaoduer yamer bang? *How was your day?*
80. Renhua, dasi tingtai gezai guang, qi miedielang bai. *Renhua, we weren’t great and you know it.*
81. Qi aimiediesa chuang. *Maybe you weren’t.*
82. Oh, bi miedie ba. *Oh, I see.*
83. Tasi peghsangni gezai bang, tasini dui gezai guang. *You were great, but the team wasn’t.*
84. Du, tasi xiegereba sha. *Now, you understand.*
85. Yama yige teghershi berkunang. *Dinner will be ready in five minutes.*
86. Yama berji xijiang. *Dinner’s almost ready.*
87. Shuguo bisai angji bang? *Where’s the big game?*
88. Ni dasi bisai gekusa mieshi zuikhuono yihui xunlianbang. *This was our last practice before the game.*
89. Dasi xunliangedanang yama berku shijie kuergha wa. *Let’s practice until dinner’s ready.*
90. Dasini yimeghdu Nadun kejie diaolikuni? *When will the after-harvest festival be held this year in our village?*
91. Bi chuma kerli ni. *I want some sausage.*
93. Ditu diere kelisa Xiningdu sanjia huanguer banggelang. *On this map there are three restaurants in Xining.*
94. Duerberku Tiebie yama disa yamer bang? *How about Tibetan food for lunch?*
95. Aya, bulachuer zhang liusui berjiang. *Dear, he’s only six.*
96. Dangda binguerge duerghasa berku nainu? *May I have an ice cream, please?*
97. Bi chuma duralalang. *I love sausage.*
98. Shangwu di hangburaku amulanang di. *You may have your fruit after lunch.*
99. Dangda nukuer ge bersa berku nainu? *Can you help me?*
100. Yige tegher berku bi amula ge disa, berkunang sha? *I can have fruit later, can’t I?*
101. Dangran berni ba. *Of course you can.*
103. Qi angjisa riba, Renxi? *Where are you from, Renxi?*
104. Bi liangyangzi wuge keliji naghulang. *I can speak two languages.*
105. Qimei pohuanlaba. *Thank you for your help.*
106. Bi aisuersa aiberkunang. *I have to study.*
107. Ninsa khuono suersa berkunang bai. *But you can study later. Qi xiku duruang guainu? Don’t you want to go?*
108. Bi khurong diku dura guang. *I don’t like wedding banquets.*
110. Bi ghuder keliku duruang guang. *I don’t like to lie.*
111. Muni Tiebie wuge keliji nintai maobang. *My Tibetan is so bad and they don’t speak Mangghuer.*
112. Qi zhuoni ningeji mulala biu?  
Do you really think so?

113. Aolai. Yes I do.

114. Dangda nukuerge berji husha.  
Do it for me.

115. Qi muni xujundiao Renhuani miedielainu?  
Do you know my sister, Renhua?


117. Renhua, bi nao sa qi Xiouzhengnige naolaxi. Renhua, I want you to meet Xiouzheng.

118. Gan dasini duerdanang ganni abanani gerdu xilang. He’s driving us to his parents’ party.


120. Yama bao sanama qimei xigeghaba. Sorry to keep you waiting.

121. Bi qier jiari kunang. But I need the money.

122. Qi shini gongzuo ge ai yerriji yalabi? Why don’t you look for a new job?

123. Qi Xinjingdu huniego yieriji ludaku naimu? Can’t you find construction work in Xining?

124. Bi Xinjingdu yaji yaokuni miediedalang. Dangda sanggha geni. I don’t know my way around Xining. I’d feel lost.

125. Qini gongzuo yageji. Renhua?  
What’s wrong with the job, Renhua?

126. Qi gongzuodiang yangni aidurualala? What don’t you like about it?

127. Bi ganni ailije gelang. I don’t understand him.

128. Qi yang yisi bi?  
What do you mean?

129. Gandu keliila xiku maimaisa guori yang’a guang. For him, business is everything.

130. Gezai her wuge guang, shiniker guang. No friendly words, no smile.


132. Qini gongzuoi yage ba?  
What about your work?

133. Qi durualala guainu?  
You like it, don’t you?

134. Gandu keliila xiku bi yang’a sanala guang. To him, I am nothing.

135. Gan aigailaini ma. Because he’s impossible.

136. Bi qimeidu nukuer berwa. Let me help you.

137. Qimeidu gedacai biu?  
Do you have any cabbage?

138. Yijin qimaowu gelang. Seven mao five fen a half-kilogram.

139. Niker qiezi kedu gela?  
How much are the eggplant?

140. Yijin jiumaqiu gelang.  
Ninety-nine fen a half-kilogram.

141. Niaoduer gedacai wulang guang. We don’t have a lot of cabbage today.

142. Qi kedu kerlini a?  
How much do you need?


144. Qi kedu kerli ni?  
How many do you need?

145. Sijin biu wujin shi berni. Four or five half-kilograms.

146. Yageji? Is anything wrong?

147. Tikerni gandu simaola hu. Give it to him for four mao.

148. Niehuang yijin bidi kedu gela?  
How much is a half-kilogram (one jin = 0.5 kg) of wheat selling for this year?
149. Niker pinguo kanni bang?   
Whose apples are these?
150. Muni bang. They’re mine.
151. Alige? Which one?
152. Qi kanla hangtu bi? Were you with someone?
153. Qishi, bi ma... As a matter of fact, I was with...
155. Tige kongni bi miedie lainu?   
Was it anyone I know?
156. Daixiaoku tige shina gu
mubainu? Was it the woman in the store?
157. Qi miedieku suzuni shuduer tige shina gu mubainu? You know, the one with the long hair?
158. Gan jiaohui qimeidu jidanang shinilang. She’s always smiling at you.
159. Hmm, ningdadu bi berla bi.   
Hmm, I’m usually good at these games.
160. Bi sanagha ba. I give up.
161. Qi dangda kelisangni puohuanlaba. Thanks for telling me.
162. Qi yageni geji? What can you do?
163. Gan yigeteghershi dangdala nudu, puza yigeteghershi gan qimeila nuduku kong bang ma. One minute she’s crazy about me and the next minute she’s going out with you.
164. Bi gherlo jianjian bang. We really love each other.
165. Qi nadun laikelisa laiberkunainu? Aren’t you ever serious?
166. Gan dianshi naola guang. He doesn’t watch television.
167. Gan jiaoduer shangdiandu xilang. He goes to the store everyday.
183. Qishishang ger tuduoroku zui shuguo wojian hegang bang. In fact, the only large thing in the room is the kang.

184. Han guorida wojian ye bang, yige shugui, yige kangzhuo, yige bandin, yige shri ma diersi bang. There are other things there too, a bookcase, a kang table, a chair and a desk, and clothes.

185. Hai ma wazisi chuang duoro bang, hanter, muoduosi bandin diere bang, kasha chenkusi kujierdu kerlaser bang. There are shoes and socks under the bed; shirts and trousers on the chair; dirty underwear on the floor.

186. Wuge biu liuge zhaoxiangji bang, shiridi gesangni ma berghasidi nierghasangni change shinaguni zhaoxiang bang. There are several cameras, five maybe six, and photographs in the women on the desk and on the wall.

187. Zhaoxiangdiku shinagu shinikuni, yilakuni, baikuni ma saokuni yamertani a bang. The women on photographs are laughing, crying, standing, and sitting.

188. Nila naosa, Renhai shinaguni hudu durualalang bai. One thing is very clear, Renhai likes women very much.

189. Ger tuduoro zangnangni, Renhaini ana ruoji xiku duruang a guang. Because the room is dirtiness, Renhai’s mother doesn’t like to go into his room.

190. Ger tuduoro shinagu duer saoser bang. The room is full of women.

191. Gan dagai qishi bu, qinshiwu berjiang. He’s around seventy, maybe seventy-five.


193. Gandu nianjinzi guisa qigedalang, dameiher wojian ye dianfidalang. He doesn’t see without his glasses and he can’t lift heavy things.

194. Ganni suzusi chuangtujiang ye yigua chighairajiang. His hair is thin and almost all white.

195. Didi ganni daixianlang naixilalang, gandu daixiao guisa berdakunang. Grandfather loves his store, he needs the store.

196. Gandu nukuer bang, nukuersi yigua xidier jiang. He has friends but they are all old.

197. Oh, duijiang, han dasi ma ger bangbai, bi tasa gan dasini bietulang, buguo gan dasidu laimiedieghalang ma. Oh, yes, he has us, the family, and I guess he loves us but he doesn’t show it.

198. Ganni nukuersi yigua tiedongku kong bang. All of his friends are living the past.

199. Gansi tiker zaihang sanerni qini tuduruo sa hegji yaodani. They can’t take away those beautiful memories from your mind.

200. Xiangyin wosiji zaihang bang, nini zai yangkelider a guang. Xiangyin is handsome, there’s no doubt about it.

201. Nianani zhuerge gezai bang, gan wuguisa didini tuduruo nintai gezai gui’a. Grandmother’s heart was kind,
without her grandfather's world is not so good.
202. Wugedinang aisaosa duila guang. It's not right to break a date.
203. Bi gan’ghuerlo mieran chebie yala xini? Why did I want to go to the riverside with him?
204. Bi kelisang wugenang yala bianli ni? Why did I change my mind?
205. Bi gan’ghuerlo shizai gherjixiku duruang guang. I didn't really want to go out with him.
206. Gan shizai damei berji mulala guang. He didn't really think about me.
207. Niger gezai guang, gan han maotuji hugudani. This house wasn't nice, but he certainly didn't die of a broken heart.
208. Gan mieran chebie daige xisang gui biu? Didn't he go to the riverside anyway?
209. En, bi mulasa xiji bi. Yes, I think he did.
210. Gan nasi mula bang, yangshi yamertage bikuni aimiedielang. But he's young and he doesn't know the ways of the world.
211. Gan Renyini jiaowang puzhainu? Isn't he one of Renyi's business acquaintances?
212. Kedu kong xikuni? How many people are there going to be?
213. Yigua liugejian bang. Six in all.
214. Qi yageji daichenggeni geji? What are you going to serve?
215. Dasi tuotuer kangla wa. Let us make tuotler.\(^{14}\)
216. Dajia durualalang. Everyone likes that.

\(^{14}\)Baked oily bread.

217. Bi jusa ningesa berkunang. I suppose so.
218. Ganni nuduni khara, suzuni shuduerdage bang. He has big black eyes and long hair.
219. Oh. Yamer shuduer bang? Oh. How long?
220. Ganni daludi baolang. Down to his shoulders.
221. Gan yang gela? What does he do?
222. Gan weilie wulang gelang. He does many things.
223. Gan ganni linjiersidunang Yinyu ye suerghalang. He also gives free English lessons to the people in his neighborhood.
224. Gan angji saola? Where does he live?
225. Gandu Meierdu mula ger yijian bang. He has a small room in Meier Village.
226. Bi muni nukuerdunang qijiegh yibazi yierrila bi. I'm looking for a bunch of flowers for my friend.
227. Gansi yamerdani durualala? What kinds do they like?
228. Qijiegh yamer wenduer bang? How tall are they?
229. Bi mulaji boghuolin biku shenge, wenduerdunang dagai taitingheidaku boghuolin qijiegh shenge bang. They're short I think, about the same height as those short flowers over there.
230. Jusa meiguini xideraliu? Do they look like roses?
231. Duer buradanang niebie guang. We're out of them at the moment because of selling out.
233. Qi kelisa kedushi berkuni? How many do you suggest?
234. Qi kedu kelisa berkunang. As many as you like.
235. Dasi xuesa gerji xiku merdi bi. We’re on our way home from school.
236. Renxi, qi nige kongni gezaiher zhiyinglasa berkun bi? Renxi, can you take care of this gentleman?
237. Jiaoduercula xidera. The same as always.
238. Renxi ma xiangyin ghuero yaji aixerala? Why are Renxi and Xiangyin so different from each other?
239. Ana, qi aba ghuero xidera buralang. Mom, you’re as bad as dad.
240. Qi a daige ger aikharilang. You’re never home either.
241. Gansi puza huanguerdu yama diser bang. They are eating in the restaurant again.
242. Dangdadu kheghai mukhasa hguer mukha gezi bang. Yangshidi dangda bingguer zui angtudong bang. I like beef more than pork. And ice cream is the most delicious thing in the world.
243. Bi hguer mukha ma bingguer kedu dini gesa didalang. But I can’t eat as much beef and ice cream as I want.
244. Dangda hguer kao ma ghuer xujung bi, gansi yigua qimeisa shuguo bang. I have two boys and two girls, but they are older than you.
245. Qini kaosi nasi kedu berji? How old are the boys?
246. Minglong zui shuguoni bang, shiqi berjiang. Minglong, the oldest, is seventeen.
247. Yama khama gui. Not at all.
248. Bi a suerku duruang bang, damei suerghaku kong guang. I want to learn too, but nobody wants to teach me.
249. Qi han mula bang, Mingzhan. You’re too young, Mingzhan.
250. Muni Nasila kelila xiku bi shuguo bang. I’m pretty big for my age.
252. Gan zhuangkelang. He’s just pretending.
253. Qini saner yamer shuguoni, Mingzhan. What an imagination you have, Mingzhan.
254. Qi mulakuni miediekusa han wulang bang. More imagination than sense.
255. Mula shijie yibeizidu zui bayer shijie bang. Childhood is the happiest time of life.
256. Wujinbao, muni bangunshidu ri. Wujinbao, step into my office please.
257. Qini bijibennang heghri. Bring your notebook.
258. Qi benzidi gansini angji saoku ruangni ge yerri. You can look up the address in the files.
259. Qini niereni nikerda zhuru. Sign your name here.
260. Nanggha nini kuerge xigha. Send that out this morning.
262. Qini shangdiandu xiku muni abadu duruasi yige lang’huo heghji ri. Go to
the shop and get my father a bottle of liquor.

263. Diger xiangxiher, Wujinbao.  
*Please be more careful, Wujinbao.*

264. Qi kejie sugho shini mishuge yerri ni?  
*When do you want to look for a new secretary?*

265. Dasi guorida mishu aikerliang.  
*We don't need another secretary.*

266. Bi qimeidu liangge xingqi jia hua.  
*I'm giving you two weeks notice.*

267. Qi xuedu laixiang geji rna?  
*Are you resigning from the school?*

268. Bi jusu qi dangdasa han gezaida mishu ge yerriji luni.  
*I'm sure you can find someone better than I.*

269. Qi mughashi hunie geku kongsidu bugaoge ghergha.  
*Put up a notice for construction workers tomorrow.*

270. Ni hudu mahuan bang.  
*This is very inconvenient.*

271. Bi ganni bieri berji bernu?  
*Could I be his wife?*

272. Nige mula gerdu bi kedu saoni ang?  
*How long could I live in just one small room?*

273. Dangda duer nuoqiji diger gezai bisa berkunang.  
*I like life's little luxuries.*

274. Dangda gansi guisa nuoqiji berlang.  
*I could live without them.*

275. Bi mulasa bi gongzuoge yerji berkunang.  
*I guess I could find a job.*

276. Aimiedie bi Laozhuangdu saodasa chuang.  
*Maybe I couldn't live in Laozhuang.*

277. Gan aba ma tingdu nuoisang duernang sanalang.  
*She misses papa and her life there.*

278. Dasi bannian ningdu bannian tingdu saoji berkunang.  
*We could live six months here and six months there.*

279. Kan miediela.  
*Who knows.*

280. Yang shiqin risa ya chuang.  
*Anything could happen.*

281. Sige bulaini ana danglasa chiber guang, han gersini guanlini, ghazherdu xini.  
*It's not easy to be the mother of four children, take care of a house, and go to the fields.*

282. Dangda yama kelider gui.  
*I'm not complaining.*

283. Matongdu gongzuoge bang, gan weili xiacha geji qier zhenglalang.  
*Matong has a job and he always works overtime to make as much as he can.*

284. Dasi jiaohui guorida qier diger jiariji berlang.  
*We can always use some extra money.*

285. Bi shu mushila gui, du yang geni?  
*I don't go to school, what can I do?*

286. Bi shijiudisa ana dangla ba.  
*I was a mother at nineteen.*

287. Bi shimian ye wulang qigesang gui.  
*I didn't see much of the world then.*

288. Bi han xidiersang gui.  
*I'm not old yet.*

289. Bi han wulangher suerni.  
*I want to learn more.*

290. Ni muni shibanian duerdu diyige gongzuobang, bi hudu durualalang.  
*This is my first job in eighteen years and I love it.*

291. Muni laoshisi yigua ningeji kelilang.  
*All my teachers say so.*

292. Bi jiating zuoyenang zuokela bi, laoshisinang gezai zhuyi gela bi.  
*I do
my homework and I pay attention to my teachers.

293. Bi Yinyu ma Tiebieg miendielang. bi han dasini guojiani yinxiongshi yigua miendielang. I can read and write English and Tibetan and I know all about the heroes of my country.

294. Bi shuguotuku bazer, mar ma qiao sani. I'm going to build cities and roads and bridges.

295. Gan daige wendang saola guang. He never could sit still.

296. Guonian gan Zhongchuandu yang gela xikuni? What is he going to do next year in Zhongchuan?

297. Ti muni erdasangni puzhang. It's not my fault.

298. Bi abang baobei dander bi. I'm father's favorite.

299. Muni aba tinggeji dangran kelila guang ma, bi miendielang. Of course I know that father doesn't say that.

300. Duilang, youshijie gan diandun khere diger gelang ma, gan mao bulai puzhang. Sure, sometimes he does crazy things but he's not a bad kid.

301. Bi sanagha ba. I resigned.

302. Qi nige weilieni duruala guainu? You liked the job, didn't you?

303. Ni gezai weilie ge lusa jieshaoxing kerlikunang bai. You need recommendations to get a good job.

304. Dasi dani nadunnang kandu a keli ba. We told everybody about the afterharvest festival.

305. Bi yifenzhongdu Iiushige pujiegh zhuruji berlang. I write sixty words a minute.

306. Puzhang, niaoduer puzhang. No, not today.

307. Tinsa qi baozhini nao bu? But did you look in the newspapers?

308. Qi gansidu nini keli bu? Did you talk to them about it?

309. Gui, bi kelisang gui. No, I did not.

310. Yala gui? Why not?

311. Qi gezai weilie ge lusa jieshaoxing kerlikunang bai. You need recommendations to get a good job.

312. Liwengdu weilie gesa madabang, duilangsha? Liweng is difficult to work for, right?

313. Tingeji riji berku nainu? Is that possible?

314. Aimiedie liangxian tuduruo qi ganni mishu danglaji berni. Maybe you'll be his secretary in two years.

315. Tini bao tila. Don't mention it.

316. Ni tuduruku youdiku zhaoxiangzi zaxhidii gherghaji berkununang. Some of these pictures could be in magazines.

317. Qimeidu sighertai bang. You had a mustache.

318. Qi ma shuduer shasuzu bulai ge gherlo baiser bang. You're standing with a guy with long blond hair.

319. Gan waiguo kongni xideralang. He looks like a foreigner.

320. Bi ganni yishu xuexiaodu tani ba. I met him at the art school.

321. Gan nige shinagum juji geser hang. He was in love with this woman.

322. Gan Damei diger a bietula guang. She didn't love Renxiao anymore.

323. Gan damei bietu lang. She fell in love with me.

324. Zhuoni ma? Just like that?

325. Aolai, zhuoni, bi ganla nadula bi, bi kanlaya nadula bi. Well, sure, I flirted with her, but I flirt with everyone.
326. Qi miedielang, bi zaihang shinagusini qigesa natuku durualalang. You know I can’t resist a pretty face.
327. Gan dangdala zai daige kelisang gui. He never spoke to me again.
328. Danhuangsa mieshi bi gandu dianhua peghwa geba, gan dianhuani gual a gedanang aichenlilang. About a year ago, I tried to call him, but he hung up on me.
329. Bi ghuerluo jihui qige ba. We saw each other a few times.
330. Ninda khere wudadalang. Things like that don’t last long.
331. Qimeidu bi keliku wuge wulang bang, ana. There is so much to tell you, mother.
332. Qidiandi dianzhong daogherku dani xierrighabba. At 7:00, the alarm clock rang and woke us up.
333. Suzuni weidao ye xiderala guang. Even the water tastes different.
334. Jiudiandi bi gersa gher ba. At 9:00, I left the house.
335. Shuliandu, yama diku dasi xuankeser dianshi nao ba. At night, after dinner, we talked and watched television.
336. Jiudiandi Renxini nukuerge ruoridanang gezai bainu geji ge ersegh ba. At about 9:00 one of Renxi friends stopped in to say hello.
337. Dagai shiyidiandi Renxi ershige aguer nukuerсидунang dianhua peghji gansidu jianjiangdu aixideraku wuge kellang. At about 11:00, Renxi called each one of his twenty girlfriends to say good night and told each one a different story.
338. Bi Renxini yuelai yue durualalang (or) nailalang. I like Renxi more and more.
339. Chugduer bi “embarrassed” geji nikuer pujieghni suer ba. Yesterday, I learned the word “embarrassed.”
340. Gan lou diere saolang. She lives upstairs.
341. Muni aba damei tuersang tiehuang guidajiang. My father died the year I was born.
342. Muni ana yaoni gesa nanguoruolang, saoni gesa ye nanguoruolang. It would have broken my mother’s heart to leave, but it would also have broken her heart to stay.
343. Gan zhang yikuer gaizhernang duerhudanang Chuankoudu xiku banche piao liangzhang duerjiang. She sold her ring, the only thing she had, and bought two tickets to Chuankou.
344. Bijin, bi mula bulaige bang. After all, I was only a child.
345. Dasini shini dier muni ana jiaodonglisang zaihang jiaodong shengge tingtai gezai guang. But our new life was not like my mother’s golden dreams.
346. Bi shuguotudanang weilie gela xiku kerlilang. I grew up and had to go to work.
347. Gandu qier diger bang, bi gan ghuero gezai duer jinian nuoqi ba. He had a little money and I spent a few happy years with him.
348. Bi shini dier lu ba. zaihang gerdu ye sao ba. I got new clothes and lived in a fine house.
349. Bi ganni bietula guang, bi mulasa gan a miedielang. But I didn’t love him and I think he knew it too.
350. Bi guerlo ni shiqindi zhang peghba, tingeku jianjannang mao ber ba. We fought about it and made each other miserable.
351. Gan qimeidu xideralang, hudu mingan bang, laimaidie tai mingan bang. He’s just like you, so sensible, maybe too sensible.
352. Xiouhuani bi nao shuguotujiang. I saw Xiouhua growing up.
354. Gan zhenxian yaji gela geji naojianralang, tinge gan lingjierni xidiersang ninggersini jula xijiang, gesini erseghji gandu suerghasa geji. She’s getting serious about learning embroidery again, so she’s going to visit some old ladies in the neighborhood and ask them to teach her what they know.
355. Gan congming bang ma, lihu naixin guang. She’s talented, but not very patient.
356. bi nadundu naduku duralalang, mula bulaisila ya naduku duralalang. I’m enjoying the afterharvest festival but most of all, I’m enjoying the children.
357. Zuimieshi, Xiouhua Yinyusanang ayilang, niebie gan Yinyu keliji hudu gezai bang. At first, Xiouhua was nervous about her English but now she is almost fluent.
358. Niebie, qi gezai bainu? Now, how are you?
359. Gerku kheresi yamer bang? How are things at home?
360. Qini yigua xingni bi yibian yibiandi ju ba. I read and reread all your letters.
361. Dasi Xioyinni yageni a? What are we going to do with Xioyin?
362. Zai jige xinqishi gan qisuidu ruokunang. He’ll be seven in a few weeks.
363. Niebie ganni jianglaini mulaku shijie berjiang. It’s time to think about his future.
365. Xioyin yala Hushanni laixidarala? Why can’t Xioyin be more like Hushan?
366. Gan ghuero daige xideraji rila guang. They’ll never behave the same way.
367. Dasi ganni duerdanang nadundu xisa gan yang geni? We take him to the afterharvest festival and what does he do?
368. Qi jiaohui gandu kharou yierriji berdani. You can’t make excuses for him forever.
369. Danihuang gan Yinyu laimaidielang. Last year he didn’t understand English.
370. Niehuang qi tinda karou yerriji luda ni. This year you won’t be able to use that excuse.
371. Gan kanni wugeni a aichenglini. He won’t listen to anybody.
373. Qi dangda aixinghuoluo nu? Won’t you ever believe me?
374. Guonianni Xiaokou niebiekula aixiderani. But next year, back in Xiaokou, things will be different.
375. Renxi kejie ma qimeidu zhangjiqing gegha ni. Renxi will make you proud one day.
376. Qi niaduer nadun tangzidu hergela xiku duruang guainu? Wouldn't you like to take a walk to the afterharvest festival today?
377. Niker shijiedu tingdu kong wulang gui. There won't be many people there at this hour.
379. Jia yitian qin ke. Take a one-day vacation.
380. Sanchuanku kongsi nadun naokunang. People come from around Sanchuan to see the afterharvest festival.
381. Qi zhenghao guolerdu saoser bang. You live right around the corner.
382. Niaoduer tiangere yamer bang? What's the weather like today?
383. Niaoduer tiangere gansan bang. It's a beautiful day.
384. Qimeidu nara tuduoruo yitian nuoqisa gezai bi. It would be good for you to spend a day in the sun.
385. Bi nadun du banche saoji xisa berku nainu? Can I get to the afterharvest festival by bus?
386. Banche zhenghao nadun tangzi du xilang. It goes right to the afterharvest festival.
387. Muni gezai dier angji bang? Where is my good coat?
388. Nara gherjiang, tiangere khalakunang. The sun is shining and it's going to get warm.
389. Khura aibaokuni qi miedielainu? Are you sure it's not going to rain?
390. Bi ninji mulala gui, yamerda shiqing a gherji berkunang. I don't think so, but anything is possible.
391. Qi dasini kaoni khrunni wuruosiduge keli. We'd like you to tell all our relatives about our son's marriage.
392. Guanting jihualaji nasimula huajiangsidu bisaige gekunang. Guanting is planning a competition for young painters.
393. Zui khouuo yige saradu Guantingdu bisaigesang huajiangsi hualasangni dajiadu naoghakunang. Guanting will display many of the entries during the final month of competition.
394. Du yigua hualasangni puzage xingqidu buraghaku kerlikunang sha? Now, the sketches must all be finished by next week, correct?
395. Canjia geku kongsini nasini guanllainu? Is there any age limit for the participants?
396. Da mulakuni sanshi biu sanshiwu bersangni. We were thinking of thirty or thirty-five.
397. Nindadu qi kengding dangdasa mediekuni wulang bang. But you must know more about this than I do.
398. Dasi angji bang? Where were we?
399. Qi yamerta jiangli mulalaibi? What kind of grant were you thinking of?
400. Dasi jiangxuejing shenhuofei ma Chuankousa riku ma xiku bancheapiaoni huni. We were going to offer a scholarship, a living allowance and tickets to and from Chuankou.
401. Baomin geji kejie burakuni?  
*What about the deadline for the entries?*

402. Niaoduersa sanaji liuge sara bang.  
*Six months from today.*

403. Shiyiuye yihaoza yigua ruoku kerlikunang.  
*They have to enter by the first of the eleventh month.*

404. Puzage saradu kan jiang lusangni gongbu geni.  
*We’ll announce the winner the following month.*

405. Yige xinqidu bi qimeidu huala jiulaku hua.  
*I can have the photographs ready for you in a week.*

406. Qi qi'gebasha Xiouhua, nige bangongshi hudu arunbang.  
*As you see, Xiaohua, the office is very neat.*

407. Aolai, Rendei dangda jieliekudu muni sanerdu riba.  
*Yes, I realized that when Rendei interviewed me.*

408. Dasi dangansinang pinyin zimu shunla geser bi.  
*We keep our files in alphabetical order.*

409. Dasidu kuaijige bi, gan yige sara yihui riku zhangni ge chalalang.  
*We have an accountant, he comes in once a month and examines the accounts.*

410. Bi qimei yala yaoni gejige erseghsa berkunainu?  
*May I ask why you’re leaving?*

411. Bi keliku duruang guang.  
*I’d rather not say.*

412. Ao, bangongshidu jiariku shuibi, qianbi, chersisi nige guizidu bang.  
*We keep the office supplies in this cabinet--paper, pencils, pens.*

413. Qimeidu yang erseghkuni biu?  
*Do you have any questions?*

414. Qi jinchang weilie geji wudala biu?  
*How often do you work late?*

415. Ningda shiji chuang bang.  
*Hardly ever.*

416. Shuliandu bi xuedu xila bi.  
*I go to school at night.*

417. Bi mula shijiedu lushige danglani geba.  
*When I was a girl, I wanted to be a lawyer.*

418. Qi xuedu xiser gongzuo gesa mada bi a.  
*It must be difficult to work while you’re going to school.*

419. Ganni bangongshi khuoruangni timian bang.  
*His office is across the yard.*

420. Qi wudaku gan werkuerlang.  
*He gets angry when you are late.*

421. Qi hansi shunang gezaixer mushi, puzhisa gezi gongzuou daige ludani.  
*You have to continue your studies or you’ll never find a good job.*

422. Gan kanbikuni dasi han aimiedielang.  
*We don’t even know who she is.*

423. Gan gezai gergesa rijiu?  
*Is she from a good family?*

424. Ganni aba yala?  
*What does her father do?*

425. Qi dadu kelila xiku yamer guizhongni qi jienang aimiedieni.  
*You don’t know how important you are to us.*

426. Gansidu hudu zaihang xujunge bang.  
*They have a very pretty daughter.*

427. Gan qimeila zhuertian bang.  
*She’s just about your age.*

428. Dangran gansi qimeidu tanidani, gansi dasini jilasaoni, qimeidu qigesu hudu bayasini.  
*They won’t recognize you, of course, but they’ll remember us and they’ll be very happy to see you.*
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>429</td>
<td>Bi qimeidu huangxin aiberlang, yizhi huangxin aiberni. I worry about you, and I suppose I always will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Malither xing zhuruji righa. Write soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>431</td>
<td>Tiaoduer khura wulang baojiang. It was a rainy day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>432</td>
<td>Kongsi nadun tangzidu langlaser bang. People were walking around the afterharvest festival.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>433</td>
<td>Nara gherser bang, tiangeredu chighang wolian diger bang. The sun was bright and there were little white clouds in the blue sky.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>434</td>
<td>Maimaqtisi binguer, qishui duerser bang. Vendors were selling ice cream and soda.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>435</td>
<td>Tiaoduer gezaida nazher duer bang. It was a beautiful spring day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436</td>
<td>Duer berdanang, nara lihu khalen guang, tiangere lihu kuguo guang. Later in the afternoon, the sun was not so bright, the sky not so blue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>437</td>
<td>Mula wolian niebie shguotu ma kharala rjiang. The little white clouds were now large and gray.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>438</td>
<td>Khura nindu yidian tindu yidian... yige tegher shi shguotu rjiang. There was a drop here, a drop there... then ten thousand noisy drops.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>439</td>
<td>Kongsi khailaser niuji tiujji puderalang. People shouted and ran in every direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440</td>
<td>Yige teghershi yigua xiexingra saojiang tiangere aruerjiang, nara gherjiang, gang a gherjiang. Then everything became silent, the sky cleared, the sun and then a rainbow appeared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441</td>
<td>Gan yang kerlikunang miedielang. She knows what she wants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442</td>
<td>Bi kuergan ghuerlo jiehungenadan, bi zai gesang gui. When I married my husband, I quit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Bi ganni kherghasa bosì yaoku, yan dageliuku bangongshidunang xiba. After I left him, I went back to the same office.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444</td>
<td>Bi nindu zhang ridanang, daiguo weileige luba. When I came here, I got a job right away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>445</td>
<td>Bi yangsa ya bayasilang. I was happy with everything.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446</td>
<td>Xian yangni gesa duila? What should be done first?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>447</td>
<td>Bi bangongshini guanliji berlang. I can run an office.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>448</td>
<td>Uh... kengding nisa han wulan bang. Uh... there must be more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>449</td>
<td>Ao, tinsa, qi yiguani geji bersa, yibeizi zhuangjaqi aidanglani. Well, then, if you can do all that, you don’t have to be a farmer all your life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>Qi yamerda weilie durualala? What kind of job would you like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451</td>
<td>Dasi yigetegher saowa. Let’s sit down for a few minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452</td>
<td>Bi yigetegher shi gerni shoushilia. I can clean the room later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453</td>
<td>Shidiedu tini bi jienang geji berni. I can do it by myself in the morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>454</td>
<td>Ni mada bang bai, Chenwei weilie geji wudakunang. It’s too bad Chenwei had to work late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455</td>
<td>Bi keliji berni. I could tell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>456</td>
<td>Shijishang, qi dajiani gezaitughajiang. As a matter of fact, you made everybody feel comfortable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
457. Bi ping’huodu xi khezhaba. I was tired of going to mutton feasts.
458. Qi miedielang bai, bi shiji bersangdu, bi yilao pin’huo dila xila bi. You know, when I was a teenager, I used to go to parties all the time.
459. Bi ping’huo di, wu diaoli, bulaisila nadu ninge yangdi a bayasiji berlang. I enjoyed myself every minute—parties, dances, boys.
460. Tishijie, jiaoduer bi nukuersilanang yaji duruasi wukuni mulala bi. I used to think only about drinking with my friends everyday.
461. Zhoumuo kuerku, Chenwei ma bi ghuero daige ger kharila gui. On the weekends, Chenwei and I never used to be home.
462. Tini kelila xisa shuduer bang. It’s a long story.
463. Tinsa bi jienang qimei kelia. Then I’ll tell you about myself.
464. Nige zaohager mulani ghuerjian puta dakunang. This kitchen is too small for two.
466. Gansi tini yagi durualala? How did they like it?
468. Dasi niegongzuoni mali ge kaikeni. We’re starting the project immediately.
469. Qige ta kan guanli? And guess who’s in charge?
470. Qi nintai cheber taibinu. You give up too easily.
471. Qi bangongshini kansa ya gongzuo geji gezai bang. You work harder than anyone else in that office.

472. Qi diji mieshikusa han wulang mali bang. You even eat more quickly than you used to.
473. Gan bi miedieku kong tuduoro kansa ya hualaji gezai bang. He paints better than anyone I know.
474. Rendei bugaoni zhuruji aigherghasa dasi ni bisaini ai gongbu gang. We won’t announce the contest until Rendei finishes the notice.
475. Ganni bangongshi shuguodunang kuiqijiang. shughula duerjiang. It’s large enough and full of books.
476. Han hudu arong bang, buguo taixian arongdalang. And very tidy too—too tidy.
477. Gan buliao niehuang gezaiher geni, berdasa hualakunang gedanang abanang dagha mainai gela xikunang. Either he does well this year or he gives up art and goes into business with his father.
478. Yamerta ge gezai shi “gezai” sanaji berkuni? How well is “well”?
479. Gan chenggong gesangni yageji sanala? How is he going to measure success?
480. Gan dao daolaji ganni adishige gezai kerlikunainu? Does he have to sing wedding songs as well as his father?
481. Ganni wujisa dangdala xidera buralang. He looks just like me.
482. Zhishao ningsa mieshi xideralang. At least he used to.
483. Gan dameisa shibage sara shuguo bang, nula shijie bi ghuero xideraku dierni musi shuangshuang bi gela bi. He’s eighteen months older than I am, but as kids we used to wear the same clothes and pretend we were twins.
484. Gan hudu huanglalang. He was too busy.
485. Xiaozheng ma bi guerlo yige daxuedu xiba, bi guerlo suerku erdian xiderala guang. **Xiaozheng and I went to the same college but we were in different departments.**
486. Muni aba ganni tingeji geghakunang. **Because my father wanted him to.**
487. Xiaozheng ma bi guerlo hudu chuang qigelang. **Xiaozheng and I saw each other less and less.**
488. Xiaozheng biniegedanang, gan muni abadu gongzuou gela xijiang. **When Xiaozheng graduated, he went to work for my father.**
489. Xiaozheng muni abani shenge yilao huanglalang. **Like my father, Xiaozheng was always busy.**
490. Gan mianzinang daige mershidala guang. **He never forgets a face.**
491. Bi nunkongge ma shinagugeni shiqingnige zhuruku duruang bang. **I would like to write about two people, a man and a woman.**
492. Gansi wendangda duer nuqilang. **They live quiet lives.**
493. Gansi ghada gherji xisa. kan a gansini miedielang ye hudu zongzhong gelang. **When they go out everyone knows and respects them.**
494. Gansi hangtu gongzuou gelang. **They work as a team.**
495. Gan guerlo zhang gongzuou gedanang penkejiang. **They met on their first job.**
496. Nige zazhishe gansini pailaji quanguodu guanjin shiqingni boadao geghala xijiang. **The magazine sent them all over the country to cover important events.**

497. Yitiandu nige zazhishe gandan berdanang dinang khajiang. **One day the magazine went bankrupt.**
498. Hao jijiazi zazhishe ma baoshesi gansini kerlilang, nige nunkong ma xujunkong guerlo niker shijiedu puza jienang gongzuou geni gelang. **Many other magazines and newspapers offered them positions, but at this point, the man and the woman decided to work independently.**
499. Gan zazhisheku jinlinang shu yiben zhurun gelang. **She wanted to write a book about her experiences at the magazine.**
500. Ningsa mieshi, gansi yangsa ya aiayilang. **For once, they did not worry about anything.**
501. Jienang taixian baomaotu. **Don't feel so sorry for yourself.**
502. Ghada xiji gongzuou yerriku durualaku kong gui. **Nobody likes to get out and look for a job.**
503. Bi puza bayasila guang. I'm getting unhappy again. **I don't hate work, but I don't like to sit in offices.**
504. Du bianliku shijie kuerjiang. It's time for change. **I'd rather work with people than with files and typewriters.**
505. Bi gongzuoua khezhala guang, bi bangongshidu saoku duruang guang. **I could be a doctor, a policeman, anything as long as it isn't boring.**
508. Bi mulaji jienang zhangguidi danglaku durang bang. *I think I'd like to be my own boss.*
509. Bi kending luosiji bi. *I must be getting hungry.*
510. Bi daraji bisa chuang. *Maybe I'm getting a cold.*
511. Qi damei Renmin Gongyuan angji bikuni ge keli ji husa berkunainu? *Can you tell me where People's Park is?*
512. Ningesa yaosa gezai yigejier bang. *It's quite a long walk from here.*
513. Gonggongche dan tikerda bailang, zheng ti diamangni mieshi. *The bus stops right over there, just outside of the front gate.*
514. Tige mula qiao ma Xining Yuchi jiura bang. *Between the little bridge and the Xining Bath House.*
515. Qi damei nukuer ge bersa berkunainu? *Would you do me a favor?*
516. Qi nige kongni taiti gonggong qiche zhandu ge xisa berkunainu? *Would you like to take this gentleman to the bus stop over there?*
517. Muni aba kelilang, bi kongsidu yangbersani wulan baoersegh gelang. *My father says I shouldn't ask so many questions from other people.*
518. Ningesa yama baosana. *So I'm sorry.*
519. Bi hanshi miedieku durualalang. *But I still want to know.*
520. Liping, puzage gonggong qiche suishi rini. *Liping, the next bus will be here any minute.*
521. Bi mulasa tindu hudu xiexing bi, qi damei duersa, bi qimeila hangtu yaoni. *I think it's too quiet there, but I'll go with you if you want.*
522. Qi bi ghuolo hangtu yaosa, qini aba ana qi angji bikuni laimiedie ni. *But if you come with me, your parents won't know where you are.*
523. Qi xigesa, bi aba ma anadunang angji xikunang kelila xia. *If you wait, I'll tell my parents where I'm going.*
524. Ninsa khuono kejie bersaher duerji yaowa. *Maybe some other time.*
525. Qi ningdu jinchang rila biu? Do you come here a lot?
526. Yitiandu, bi Tongrenlusa baoji rikongdu, sanserdanang banlaba. *One day while I was coming down Tongren Road, I slipped and fell.*
527. Kuabaoku dongxisi mer chebie sigha burajiang. My packages spilled all over the sidewalk.
528. Bi kuerzhoujianang woke gedanang buosidaba. *I twisted my ankle and I couldn't stand.*
529. Merdisa nuoqiku nongkongge nukuer berji caisini tiuji huba. *A man was passing by and helped me pick up my groceries.*
530. Dasi gerjuji yaokundu, gan keli ji gan dasini ger khergha saola bi gelang. *As we were walking home, he mentioned he lived in the neighborhood.*
531. Tingedanang, bi ghuolo nukuer pudu ba. *So I made a friend.*
532. Bi zhang zhuoni yagesangni ge miedieni gela bi. *I'm just trying to understand what really happened.*
533. Bi'a wugui a. *Neither did I.*
534. Gansi naosa lihu putong guang. *They don't seem to have much in common.*
535. Mingzhannini miezhiku aguer nukuer Xiangyin ghuero gezaitujiang, Mingzhans old girlfriend fell in love with Xiangyin.
536. Ti aiberkuni puzhang. That's understandable.
537. Niebie Minzhann zheng Xiouhua ghula gezai bang, bi mulasa gan Xiangyinni liangjie geni. But now that Mingzhans is seeing Xiouhua, I hope he'll forgive Xiangyin.
538. Bi miedielang, bi mulasa yige gezai nukuer ghula puza gezaitusa duilang. I know, but I think a good friendship deserves a second chance.
539. Bi bisa ya ningeni. So do I.
540. Jiaohebi bi ganni qigeji gan ma guorida shinaugugela hangtu bang. Everytime I saw him he was with a different friend.
541. Bi qimeidu kelia, gan kanbikuni qi kandu a baokeli. But I must ask you not to tell anyone who he is.
542. Gan Yongliji daige kelili hangburala guang. He never stops talking about Yongli.
543. Huling hudu... Qidaila yaji kelila?... oh jiliu a. Huling is very...what is the word in Chinese?...clever.
544. Yongli, gan qimeidu xideraji zhuangbanlaku durualalang. He enjoys pretending to be you, Yongli.
545. Gan han qimeila lanquni keliku durualalang. And he loves talking to you about basketball.
546. Gan yaji nadukuni ge suerni gelang, bi yaji nadukuni aimiedielang, tingku bi gandu suerghadalang. He keeps trying to learn but I don't know how to play, so I can't teach him.
547. Yongli qi dameidu ge keli, tikongsi khuerghaiqi bikuni qi yaji miedie ba? But tell me Yongli, how did you know those men were thieves?
548. Gansi yinhang diamangdu guolai guoqi hergeji hangburala guang. They kept walking back and forth in front of the bank.
549. Gansini bi santian najoji bisa, bi mulaji jujuula yangbersa khere diger ghermi. After watching them for three days, I knew something was going to happen soon.
550. Qi gansini barikusa miehsi santianjia xigeji yala bi? Why did you wait three days before acting?
551. Dasi zhengjiu wultanher kerlikunang, tingku bi gansi yagekuni kaishi xiangxi zhuyi geba. We needed more proof, so I started noting their movements carefully.
552. Bi zheng gansini khaber duoro binguer duerser bi. I sold ice cream right under their noses.
553. Yongli, qimeidu shizai puohuanla ba. Thank you very much, Yongli.
554. Bi tasa kendin Yongli bariji bi. I bet Yongli did it.
555. Shuguotuku, bi ye Yongli shenge bianyi ge danglani. When I grow up, I want to be a secret agent like Yongli.
556. Shijie wudaba. It's been a long time.
557. Aolai, wudaba. Yes, it has.
558. Qi yamer bang? How have you been?
559. Mieszihui qimeila kelidanang wulan gezaitu ba. Much better since I spoke to you last.
560. Bi ganni saiqigeji sannian berkunang. *I have not seen her for almost three years.*
561. Qi gan ghuero lianxi gesang gui ma? *Have you kept in touch with him?*
562. Yama kharou guizhe. *There was no reason to say.*
563. Du buraijiang. *It's over.*
564. Ninsa guori bi han yang kelin? *What more can I say?*
565. Dasi pijiu diger wula yaowa. nishiwangni yigua mershidaga. *Let's have a beer and forget the whole thing.*
566. Qi zhaoxiangdianang han duruatai biu? *Are you still interested in photography?*
567. Aoalai, bi shinida zhangxiang wulang heghba. Yes, and I've done a lot of new things.
568. Qini ana gezai bainu? *How's your mother?*
569. Gan qime sanalang. *She's missed you.*
570. Muni gerku guorikong a qime sanalang. *So has the rest of my family.*
571. Guchengtaidu jiaoduer kong wulang bang, nazherdu yueha wulan bang. *Guchengtai Street is usually a busy street, especially during summer.*
572. Youshijie ganza ma duersugho nara khalaku, tingdu diger xiexing bang. *But sometimes, early in the morning and in the heat of the afternoon, it is a little bit quiet.*
573. Gansi khalun, kharunghi ma merdiku tiergesini guanilia guiku shenge. *They don't seem to notice the heat, the darkness, or the passing cars.*
574. Nige gaidao guori gaidaosila xideralang. *It's a street like many others.*
575. Nasi mula nongkong ma xujunkongsii gherang gavidanang xiaotin hergeser bang. *Young men and women walk slowly hand in hand.*
576. Nukuersi hangtulaku gansi baidanang yige tegher xuankelang. *When friends meet, they stop and say a word or two.*
577. Ghuero shinagu, jianjianganji mulaji yaoser bang. *Two women, both lost in thought, walk toward each other.*
578. Gan ghuero yao nuoqikundu terghainang dianliji ge naojiang. *As they pass, they look up.*
579. Yige tegher berdanang. *yigejian tergainang hergedanang hangejia naolang. After a minute or two, one turns around and looks at the other one.*
580. Tinge gan ghuero yijier yaoku terghnang hergedanang zajijian gelang. *Then each one takes a few steps, turns, and waves good-bye.*
581. Gansi naoji langlako kong shenge zhuangkelang, danshi saji sideradhalang. *They were trying to look and act like tourists but they obviously were not.*
582. Gansi bi keje mai anggi binguer tiergenang tuerkjei xisangri a jilaser bang. *They even noted when and where I moved my ice cream cart.*
583. Liuyue wuhao. *zheng liangdiandi, sige bamengeku kong dongda, tuduruku ghuerjan shangwu dila xijiang. ti sangejian kong yinhang diamang juji yaoji xijiang. On June 5th, at exactly 2:00,*
when two of the four guards were out to lunch, the three suspects moved towards the bank entrance.

584. Bi mali dianhua peghba. I immediately called for help.

585. Bi gansini niruangsa baopuderaghawa geba. I wanted to be able to stop them from leaving the area.

586. Yinhangku wulangqi kong yagesangni aimiedielang. Most of the people in the bank didn't know what was happening.

587. Niker shijie, jinchasi kuerrijiang. Meanwhile, the policemen arrived.

588. Yiu dikong yinhangdu ruojiang, yiu dikong diamang khergha baisaojiang. Some went into the bank, some stood near the front.

589. Tinku dasi gansini bari geba. Then we got them.

590. Bi binguer duerji daige hangburasang gui. I never stopped selling ice cream.

591. Ti laoqi bikuni bi miedielang, buguo bi hanshi durualalang. I know it's old-fashioned, but that's what I like about it.

592. Ti gezai bang, youdiku dongxi kharunghudu naoji gezi bang. But that's all right, some things look better in the dark.

593. Qi huanguerdu shujila baoxi. You don't go to a restaurant to read.

594. Qi shangban ge hangbera gerjinang xikundu, pijiu yigama wu bai, nukuer jige yierriku xuanke bai, kaxuxujun, gongzu ma zhangmuniang mershida ge bai. You can get a beer on your way home from work, find some friends, chat, and forget about your kids, your job, and your mother-in-law.

595. Sangbura wulangbianlijiang, khorung bianlisang guang. Though many things are changing in Sangbura, weddings don't change.

596. Ni ruang nongkongsi xikuda ruangbang. This kind of place used to be only for men.


598. Qimei qier wulang bisa, nindu risa dasi bayasilang. If your money's good, we're glad to have you.

599. Bi ninku puzigedu wunian geba, bi hanshi nindu gongzuo geku durualalang. I've worked in a shop here for five years and I'm still happy to come to work.

600. Bi laoguji juur kherghaku duruasi lang'huoni qigesa hanshi bayasilang. It still makes me happy to see the liquor bottles beside the old mirror.

601. Qi Renmin Gongyandu xikundu bi qimei penkeba. I met you when you were going to People's Park.

602. Muni wulangqi nukuersi damei gan ma ganni gezai daixiaoni keliba. Many of my friends have told me about him and his excellent shop.

603. Qi niere gherni gesa yangbersa laixideraku khere diger geku
You have to do something special to be famous.

I've never done that.

I've seen many.

But to my knowledge, I haven't killed any yet.

Wow, have you ever...

I've already taken two much of his time.

I'll be with you in a moment.

If I don't have enough time, it is because I am old, not because I'm busy.

When you have lived a little longer, you will understand.

As a matter of fact, I'm not feeling very well today.

No one else has a chance.

Name one modern artist whose paintings are better than yours.

Name one artist whose paintings the judges could possibly like more than yours.

It's nice to have someone who believes in you.

I have to paint something new—something totally different.

This has been the greatest vacation I've ever had.

I've made many new friends and learned lots of new things.
634. Gansi weilie gekusa guori dianshi wulang naolang. They spend more hours watching TV than working at their jobs.

635. Gansidu dameila zhuertian aguerge bang. They have a daughter my age.

636. Ganni dahulajiang, kao liangkuer rijiang, gan tasini gezai bangsha geji erseghji righaba. She is happily married, has two children and sends her best wishes.

637. Gan Wang ayidu nijinian sai qigesang kongsini kelisa, Wang ayi yila kaikejiang. Aunt Wang cried when we talked about the people she hasn’t seen in years.

638. Bi gansa diger nanchangralang. I felt a little sorry for her.

639. Gan Xiningdu ge langlaji xini gelang, bi mulasa gansidu qier guang. She wants to go to Xining for a trip, but I don’t think they have the money.

640. Huangxing sao, bi chunben khere aigeni, bi qimeidu gannige tanighani. Don’t worry, I’m not going to do anything foolish but I want you to be able to recognize her.

641. Qi damini khalagha, budani china. You can heat up the rice and make the noodles.

642. Renxi, qi shirini taibi jiula. Renxi, you can set the table.

643. Renyi, qi shirini erke, ghani ghua, shirdiku yiguani he yaogha. Renyi, I want you to clear the table, wash the dishes, and put them away.

644. Tingku tasi gerni zhengzherli kaike (or: shoushili kaike). And you can get started cleaning the room.

645. Rendei, qi zaohani ge shou. Rendei, please clean the kitchen.

646. Renyi, qi khuoruangku zangnang wojiansini ge shoushili. Renyi, please clean up the mess in the courtyard.

647. Dasi jiaoku khaoqin shanye ma alimani aruerghaku shijie berjiang. It’s time we cleaned out the old potatoes and apples from the cellar.

648. Qi ruangruangku jiashisini hegh yaogha. You left tools all over the place.

649. Renxi qi Renyidu nukuer berji shou. Renxi, you can help Renyi sweep up.

650. Qi anadunang yiqier huligha. But please leave a little piece for your mother.

651. Chuguduer Banchan dasini nadundu rijiang. Yesterday the Panchen Lama came to our afterharvest festival.

652. Dasini nadundu maimaiqi wulang bang. There are many salesmen at our afterharvest festival.

653. Nadun tangzidu zaihang louge bang. There was a nice building on the afterharvest festival grounds.


655. Yibangzi kong Banchanni Ianni chenlilang. A large crowd listened to Panchen’s scripture reading.

656. Lan chenliku kong tuduoro mula bulaige bang. Among the listeners was a little boy.

657. Nige bulai qisui berjiang, suzu kharani juankeser bang, gan saoji binguer disen bang. He was almost seven years old, had curly black hair, and was eating an ice cream.

658. Qi lan chenliku duruang bainu? Are you enjoying the speeches?
659. Guang, bi durualala guang. No, I don’t like them.
660. Qi mughashi nindu risa berni. You can come here tomorrow.
661. Niaoduer xinqiyi bang. It’s a Monday.
662. Dasi qini abadu keliku kerlikunang. We’ll have to talk to your father.
663. Gan yang kelisa ya bi geni. I’ll do whatever he says.
664. Dasi ganni daodasa berkunainu? Can we call him?
665. Gan gerdu suishi rini. He’ll be home any minute.
666. Qi miedielang sha, zou tige yibe yangzi diedier bikuni. You know, the one that has 100 kinds of dishes.
667. Qi kelikuni qini abani yinhang kherghaku tige ma? Do you mean the one which is near your father’s bank?
668. Xiaozhengdu shenri tingdu nuoqighajiang. Xiaozheng’s birthday party was there.
669. Muni tuduruo gezai bang. I’m in such a good mood.
670. Niaoshulian dasi ghada yama dila yaowa. Let’s go out to dinner tonight.
671. Xiaozhen qimeidu yangbersa diger erseghkunang. Xiaozheng has something to ask you.
672. Qi maodan peghkuni naola xiku duruang guainu? Wouldn’t you like to go to a basketball game?
673. Qi yagesa wulang diku kerlikunang. You must eat more anyway.
674. Bi tasa ni mula bulaisidu gezai bang. I guess it’s wonderful to kids.
675. Tingu daghuerlo tongyi geba. Then we both agree.

676. Xingli peghsa hudu mada bang. Packing is very upsetting.
677. Bi zhuangwanglaji kanbersa dangdu nukuer berji husa. I wish someone would do it for me.
678. Qishi bi zhuangwanglaji niebie bi gerdu bisi. In fact, I wish I were home now.
679. Youshijie bi qimeila hangtu yaoku geji mulalang. Sometimes I wish I were going with you.
680. Jingdei dangdu angjibersaher aixighani. Jingdei doesn’t let me out of his sight.
681. Ta ma Jindei ghuerlo guisa niger naoji kuantai qigeni. The house will seem so empty without you and Jindei.
682. Qi ningdu sao sa yang geni? And what are you going to do when you stay here?
683. Yagesa, qi yang lidang duerkunang kelini gelang. Anyway, you were about to mention the gifts you want to buy.
684. Qi jisa bi qini abadu yang lidang duersa berkuni? What do you think I should buy for your father?
685. Ni mahuanbang. That’s the trouble.
686. Tige dier xiangzitiku cherghuoru yaji sakuni qi miedielang. Xiaozheng has something to ask you.
687. Bi qini abadu yang heghji xikuni aimiedielang. I don’t know what to get for your father.
688. Duruasi bi angji yerrila xi? Where should I look for liquor?
689. Bi angji duerkun wangguangge miedielang. I know a place where I can get some.
690. Mughashi bi tingdu xiku duruasini heghra. I am going back there to get the liquor tomorrow.
691. Qi gezai bainu? How are you doing?
692. Bi ghada gherji yangbersa diger duerla xini. I just want to go outside for shopping.
693. Cha wunu? How about some tea?
694. Yige gha daokeji hu. Give me a cup.
697. Gan ghuero niadanang mughashi guikuni xideralang. They cling to each other as if there were no tomorrow.
698. Berni, wukuai qierni du. OK, a five yuan bet.
699. Qini chanang wu. Drink your tea please.
700. Bi qimei yamage erseghni. I have a question to ask.
701. Bi Chuankoudu gongzuoge yerrisa qimei taniku kong biu? dangda nukuerge berjihusa? I’m trying to get a job in Chuankou and I wonder if you know anyone who might help me?
702. Bi huajiang hualakuni naoku durualalang. I love to see a painter painting.
703. Gansi nini “Nasi Mula Huajiang Bisai” daoda lang. They call the contest the “Young Artists Competition.”
704. Bi ghazherni hulu ma tari buraghaba. I’ve finished plowing and sowing the fields.
705. Qi gaishang xinu? Do you want to go downtown?
706. Chugushulian bi sandian berba, bi yada tingesa daigai ainerrilang. Last night I was up till 3:30 and even though I’m exhausted, I can’t sleep.
707. Bi gezai ner sairiji yige xinqi berjiang. I haven’t been sleeping well for a week.
708. Gezai tuhuani yige shuliandu hualaji ghergha dalang. Great paintings aren’t created overnight.
709. Kelikuni gekusa chiber bang. That’s easier said than done.
710. Bi kongge hualani. I want to do a portrait.
711. Bi yige xingqi hualabama, bi hualasangnang yige a durualala guang. I’ve been drawing all week, but I don’t like anything I’ve done.
712. Bi daxue kaokeku zhengshi gongzuoge luni, puzhisa bi wanghoudu zhuangjiaqi dangla saoku nang. I want to pass the university entrance exam and get a government job, otherwise, the rest of my life will be spent as a farmer.
713. Bi shinian huajiang danglajiang. I’ve been painting for ten years.
714. Shuliandu qi chuanger nerrisa berni. It will be all right if you sleep a little at night.
715. Qi jisa bi yang gesa berkuni? What do you think I should do?
716. Qi yangni durualaku yang ge. You do whatever you want to do.
717. Nige juexingni qi mieshi jiniansa xiakesang gui ma? That decision was made years ago wasn’t it?
718. Qimeidu maotughani jeji mulasang gui. I didn’t mean to upset you.
719. Muni yisi shi, qi yanggesa bi tongyi gelang. All I mean, I agree with what you're doing.

720. Ghazherni khuba hudanang, gerku kongsi dajiala hangtu weilie gelang. After land was given to individual families, family members farmed together as a team.

721. Nige Mangghuer lishishuni Qinghai Minzu Chubanshe Shengzhengfu husang qier ghula chuban gherghajiang. This book about Mongzlor history was published by Qinghai Nationalities Press using money given by the provincial government.

722. Qi dan nadundu daige xisang guisa, bi qimeidu duerji yaowa. In case you’ve never been to the afterharvest festival, let me take you.

723. Dasini nadun Sanchuandu zui shuguo bang. Our afterharvest festival is the largest one in Sanchuan.

724. Shijishang, nadun balinnian gaige kaifang gedanang diaoli kaikejiang. In fact, the afterharvest festivals just started again in 1980 after the period of the “reform and open” policy.

725. Xiangxher zhihusi qimei zhaodai gedanang gerdunang kuersangni xideralang. The careful manners of the staff were designed to make you the customers feel at home.

726. Gansi damei keliji zhengbin yijieuwuniansa bang gelang. They tell me that big bread have been made since 1925.

727. Gansidu qi daige sai qigesisang shuguo zhenbin bang. They have bread that is bigger than any you have seen?

728. Yigua disa angtudun bang. All of them are delicious.

729. Zui shuguo nige shiercun kuanzhan, shibacun shuduer, bacun zhuzhuang bang. The largest one is about twelve cun (.03 m) wide, eight cun long, and about eight cun thick.

730. Niker zhengbinni diangelaiduni yigua qijieg chakeser bang. There are many flowers on top of all the large bread.

731. Bi tasidu kelia bi nindu pinnan kuerba. I just wanted to tell you that I arrived here safe.

732. Bi yodaanang gan diger jilajiang. He was a bit lonely while I was away.

733. Bi tasi khergha xidanang gan bieqirejiang, dasi huanglakusa ayiji, gan daige dasidu kelisang gui. He was sick while I was visiting you but he never told us because he didn’t want us to worry.

734. Gan bi yaji huanglakuni miedielang. He knows how I worry.

735. Niebie gan gezaitujiang. He’s better now.

736. Bi qi wuge suerkuni nianheira tingelang. How I admire your ability to learn languages.

737. Sanchuanku gerdu risa gezai bang, yimeghku kongsi danige kelisa chenlijii shouhuo bang. How nice it was to come home to Sanchuan where everyone in the village speaks our language.

738. Bi Qidaige keliji gezai naghudalang. I can’t speak Chinese well.

739. Bi zhuangwanglaji qini aba Xiouhuanige qigela xisa. I wish your father could meet Xiouhua.
740. Tasidu mahuan aireliesa, tasi ganni gezaiher diger zhaodai ge. If it is not too troublesome, I'd like you to make his stay more pleasant.
741. Qi dasidu zhengyuedu baiiangelga airinu? You will come and visit us during Spring Festival, won't you?
742. Sange xinqidu kongsi weilie aigerdu saodenang daolaser, xuankeser, nongkongsi durusi wulan. On Spring Festival Eve the whole family stays together in one room singing songs, talking, and the men drink liquor.
743. Layue sanshidu, gerku kongsi yige gerdu hangtu saodenang daolaser, xuankeser, nongkongsi durasi wulan. For more than three weeks people don't do any work, they just eat, drink, and visit friends and relatives.
744. Banye nuoqiku, dajiala keghai terghai dilang. After midnight, the family eats a delicious pig head.
745. Ganzaosheng nongkongsi huerdu xianrensidunang chersi ma shangkuo xidala xilang. Very early in the morning, men go to family graves to burn paper money and bread for the ancestors.
746. Nongkongsi tuosi diger barisang miaoju pughangtu terghai mergula xilang. Men also go to the village temple where they take oil and kowtow to the gods.
747. Duer chaiji xiku, bulaisi yimeghku nasishuguo kongsini gerdu terghai mergu ma zher barila xilang. At dawn, children visit each village home where they kowtow to elders and offer them liquor.
748. Shuguo kong mula bulaisidu qier ma ber hulang. The old people give the children a small amount of money and some candies.
749. Zhengyue shiwudu, kongsinai huoba diaoliila xilang. On the fifteenth day of the new year, people observe the Torch Leaping Festival.
750. Huopani shuakeser keghakwu wula diere xilang. Lighted torches are taken to nearby mountain tops and waved.
751. Zhouweiku wulasidu yigua huopa diaolianga. All around the area, the top of the mountains are lit up with torches.
752. Bihuanggedi zhengyue shiwu yaji risangni kelilang. An interesting folktale explains the origin of the fifteenth day of the first month festival.
753. Yuhuangdadi kongsisa hudu werkuerlang, tingku jianglingenang pailaji ghazherhni xidaghalaxijiang. The Jade Emperor was very angry with people and sent one of his generals to burn everything on earth in punishment.
754. Nige jianglin gezaida kongge bang, ghazherdiku kongni yigeni a alaku duruang guang. But the general was a kind man and did not want to kill everyone on earth.
755. Gan ghazherdiku kongsini chuolaghaku wula diangehaidu huoba diaolila xigelang, tingku Yuhuangdadi duoruoji naokundu, gan mulaji ni jianglin gannu wugeni chenliljiang. He assembled all the people on earth together and told them to go to the mountain tops and wave torches and that way, when the Jade Emperor looked down, he would think the general had carried out his order.
756. Tingedanang kongsi zhengyue shiwudu huopa diaoliji nige gezai jianglinni jiniang gelang. Afterwards, people held the Torch Leaping Festival on the fifteenth day of the new year to remember the kind general and the time he saved all humanity.

757. Aimiedie guonian nazherdu bi Xiakoudu kharji rini. I might even be able to return to Xiakou next summer.

758. Qini ana qimeidu zaihangda bierge yerriji huku, tinsa khuono qi gezaiher duer nuoqini. Your mother will find you a nice wife, and live happily ever after.


760. Dasi tasini jiaodalasang guang ba. I hope we’re not interrupting anything.

761. Bi qimeidu panchan diger hua. Let me give you some money.

762. Qini ana ma aba kherghanang damei baimershida. Remember me to your mother and father.

763. Bi gansini puzahui qigesa geji zhuangwanglalang. I hope to see them again.

764. Qi zuihao maliher. You’d better hurry.

765. Bi banche piao zhangjia gesangni suonuosiba, niebie yijin nintai gui bang ma, puza jitian shi han zhangjia gekunang. I heard that bus fares, even though they are already so expensive, are going to increase again in the next few days.

766. Dasi ganni gezai aitanilang, gan a huanglaji airini. We don’t know him very well, and he might be too busy to come.

767. Bi naosa puzage xinqidu gan daixionang huanxiou gekunang. I understand his store is being renovated next week.

768. Ganni qinlaji ge ba. He’s been invited.

769. Bi mulasa gan jinkeneng rini. I’m sure he’ll try his best.

770. Mughashi gan qinqisidu khurongni xiangxi duerni kelila xikunang. He will go tomorrow to visit all our relatives to tell them the exact time of the wedding.

771. Bi ghada xini. I’m going outside.

772. Jinbang (or Lihu) bao wuda. Don’t take too long.

773. Gan nadun tangzidu xiji bi. He might have gone to the afterharvest festival.

774. Bi mantianxia yerriba. I’ve looked all over.

775. Gan yige zhongtousa mieshi risa duilang bai. He should have been back an hour ago.

776. Merdi yangbersa khere gherji bisa chuang. He could have had an accident.

777. Aolai, tingeji bi, aimiedie gan yama gesang gui. Yes, he could have, but he probably didn’t.

778. Bi kendin bi. I must have.

779. Bi mulaji qimeidu shidieher ge kelia. I suppose I should have called you earlier.

780. Gan kendin WangLaoshi khergha xijiang. He must have gone to Teacher Wang.

781. Qi angji xikunang damei aikeliji yalabi? Why didn’t you tell me where you were going?
782. Qi Wanglaoshini duerji riji bisa bi hudu bayasilang, I'm very pleased that you brought Teacher Wang back.

783. Xin ghuluu kongni qinlasa taixian wudani, It takes too long to invite people by mail.

784. Bi yaoser angji bikunang miediedaba, I started walking, and then I didn't know where I was.

785. Tiangere hudu kharunghu bang, bi nukuernang ger durusi wulang wudanang gherji risa hudura saojiang, It was a very dark night and I had been drinking a lot at a friend's home so I was very confused.

786. Bi yaoser yaoser yadadanang yang gekunang laimiedie, shu guo beghge duoro sao sao bar I walked and walked and then felt so tired and didn't know what to do, so I sat down under a big tree.

787. Bi xierrisa nara gherjiang, muni gersanang zhang yijier bang, bi mulaji bi nerri xiji bi, When I woke up, the sun was shining, I was only a short distance from my home, I guess I must have fallen asleep.

788. Xinkui bi tuduerdu deghla yanke hugusang guang, I was lucky that I didn't fall into an irrigation canal and drown.

789. Bi yige shulian ger saikhariji bisa, muni bieri hudu werkuerlang, gan damei yige nudu qildanang, yama kelisang gui, Because I'd been out all night, my wife was very angry, and glared at me, but she didn't say anything.

790. Ninsa khuono bi chuoghuoher wuni, youqishi shuliandu gersa khuoluoshi, In the future I'll try to drink less, especially at night when I'm far from home.

791. Bi ningdu khariji riji yige xingqi nuoqijiang, It's been over a week since I came back here.

792. Bi Chuankoudu mada shiqin wulang penkeba, I met many difficulties in Chuankou.

793. Bi niker kheresa werkuerji, I get angry at these things.

794. Bi airenkesa, bi puza nukuersinang relieji gekunang, Unless I calm down, I'm going to make my friends angry too.

795. Bi kendin bianlijiang, I must have changed.

796. Bi Xiouhuani jiaoduer sanaling, bi qimei a sanaling, I miss Xiouhua everyday and I also miss you.

797.Niehuang qi angji caifang gel a xini? Where are you going for your interview this year?

798. Qi bangongshi zhurenni weidi saobu? Did you get the office leader's position?

799. Qi xin aizhurukuni bi miedielang, kejiebersa jia biku minxinpiege righa bai, I know you don't write letters but you could send a postcard every now and then.

800. Bi Chuankousa yaokundu kengding huduraji bi, I must have been in a daze when I left Chuankou.

801. Nianqinrensi xiaoxinli, Attention young people.

802. Bisaidu jianglusang kongdu jiangjin hukunang, tinku xiabierdu nieretai ruangdu han langlaghala xikunang, The contest winner will receive a big prize and a trip to famous south China scenic spots.

803. Minhe Mangghuer khurong gekuni Qinghaini guori ruangkula
Weddings among Minhe Mangghuer are different from those of other places in Qinghai.

When a boy is around twenty-years-old, his parents contact a matchmaker and ask her help in finding a suitable girl for their boy.

Usually the boy’s father, or maybe an uncle, visits the matchmaker.

The matchmaker is usually someone the boy’s family knows very well, trusts, and respects.

Once a girl has been found, the matchmaker makes many trips back and forth between the girl’s and boy’s homes to be sure both sides agree.

The entire process from the time the matchmaker begins until the boy and girl are actually married takes about one year.

Because the matchmaker is so important in arranging a marriage, he is treated with much respect at the wedding and afterwards (by the young couple.)

Khurong hangburaku xinren gandu han khezhe taibilang. He is also given some gifts soon after the wedding by the young couple.

Yesterday, my grandfather celebrated his eightieth birthday.

Many relatives and villagers came to extend good wishes and the hope that he would live for many more years.

Visitors offered my grandfather liquor and they all brought some gifts.

Many more people came than we had expected.

A reporter from the Qinghai Daily also came because my grandfather is rather well-known as a traditional bone-setter and despite his age, still sees patients every day.

I wish I hadn’t eaten dinner last night.

I hope you don’t get sick.
819. Bi dan bieqin kuersa ya, bi aikuqianrani. But even if I do, I won't be sorry.

820. Muni niana nasi mula shijie shuguo ximieszidu langlaji xijiang. When my grandmother was younger she visited some important local religious sites.

821. Niebie, gan bashi nuoqijiang, tinda ruangdu zai xisang guang. When my grandmother was younger she visited some important local religious sites.

822. Aguer shijie ganni khueri guojia huorodanang gaigong guisa mer yaoqi chili bang. Her feet were bound when she was a young girl so she finds walking rather difficult and she uses a walking stick.

823. Gan Xunhuani shengxian nerdu wulan xijiang, bihuangdi keliji, tiedundu Yindusa risang pughangge Yindudu khariji xikusa miesz. She visited Mengda in Xunhua County because there are many stories about a Buddha from India who lived there many years ago in a cave with his wife before he went back to India.

824. Gan Gansuni Laburang ximieyd a jihui xijiang. She also visited Labrang Temple in Gansu several times.

825. Muni nianadu mani kuerleghge bang, gan mani kuerleghnang hergeghaser ningersila hangtu mani tuoluolang. My grandmother has a prayer wheel and meets with other old ladies regularly to chant and spin her prayer wheel.

826. Bi nianang hudu bietulang, bi mula shijiedu gan damei tierberba, bi ma yimeghku guori bulaisidu gan bihuang keliji ma ge'er daoalaji huba. I have a very special feeling about my grandmother because when I was a little boy, she took care of me and told me many interesting stories and sang many songs to me and other village children.

827. Tinku yageji? So what?

828. Bi shijienang langhui gekusa ayilang. I'm afraid I'm wasting my time.

829. Qi ninsa khuonokunang miediesa zai duer nuoqijiqi yama yisi gui. If you knew what the future was going to be like, life would be boring.

830. Minhexianni nanbangbe beidaku zhuangjiasi bidi, shuguo bidi, baogu, shanyue, gagai, qiezi, jiaozi, suanpezegh, xigua, pinguo, dongguo ma realimasi bang. Crops in southern Minhe County include wheat, highland barley, corn, potatoes, rapeseed, eggplant, chili pepper, garlic, watermelons, apples, pears, and apricots.

831. Youdiku kongni ger tuolajitai bang, wulangqi kongni ger tuolajitai bang, wulangqi kongni ger tuolajitai bang, wulangqi kongni ger tuolajitai bang, wulangqi kongni ger tuolajitai bang, wulangqi kongni ger tuolajitai bang. A few families have tractors but most families still use mules and donkeys to plow, pull carts, and ride.

832. Niereni ge aruerjia. Let's change the subject.

833. Wulangqi kongni ger dikuni jienang tariang. Most families grow all their food.

834. Wulangqi kongni ger zhang dapuzi, cha, dier ma huahuige duerlang. The only things most
families buy are salt, tea, cloth, and fertilizer.

835. Qi Xiouhua shengeda aguerge yerriji lusa, qini yunqi gezai bang. If you could find a girl like Xiouhua, you’d be a lucky man.

836. Niaoduer nintai gezai musiji yalabi? Why are you so dressed up today?

837. Jiabiku gandu keli bi ganni pohnanalang ge. Thank him for me if you get a chance.


839. Ni shiqing gherdanang bi gaiharaba. I’m amazed that this has happened.

840. Wula ghazhersi pingguang, tinku chuanku ghazher shenge cheber suladalang, tinku wulani ghazher tiaojiansi chuandu aikuerlang. The land in the mountains is not level, but land in the plains is flat and irrigated, so the mountain lands are not as easy to farm as the plains.

841. Bi ersegji qi gongzuoge yerrisa hudu mada, qi tige wengdang gongzuonang kerla xighaji qingan guang gelang. He said you made a big mistake because jobs are very difficult to find and it made no sense for you to give up the secure job that you had.

842. Bi gandu qi cizhi gejiang geji keliba. I told him you had resigned.

843. Tingku qi shini gongzuoge yerrisa hudu mada, qi tige wengdang gongzuonang kerla xighaji qingan guang gelang. He couldn’t understand what it was that made you to decide to give up your job when so many other people are out of work.

844. Gan yang kelila? What did he say?

845. Gan qimei jilaser bi gelang. He said that he remembered you.

846. Gan guorini yang keliba? What else did he say?

847. Gan keliji qi gezai erdajiang, niebie gongzuoe yerrisa hudu mada bang, qi tige wengdang gongzuonang kerla xighaji qingan guang gelang. He also said that because you were his relative and he knew your parents well, he would do his best to help you find another job.

848. Tingku qi shini gongzuoge yerrisa hudu mada, qi tige wengdang gongzuonang kerla xighaji qingan guang gelang. He couldn’t understand what it was that made you to decide to give up your job when so many other people are out of work.

849. Gan keliji qi ganni qinqi bikula ma qini aba ana ghuero geza bikula, gan qimei xiaha nukuer berji gongzuoe yerrisi hua gelang. But he also said that because you were his relative and he knew your parents well, he would do his best to help you find another job.

850. Jiaohui jidu bi gaishang xila bi, yixingqi sanhui. I come to Gaishang whenever there are market days, that’s about three times a week.

851. Bi niaoduer ningdu riji liangtian shi muni bulaini sara duerkunang, bi niaoduer ningdu riji durasi ma mukha diger duerku nukuersinang ge daichen geni. I’m here today because it will soon be thirty days after my baby’s birth so I’m buying some liquor and pork for a party with my friends.

852. Qi keliji qi mula panlaba gelang. You said that you had been doing a lot of thinking.

853. Aolai, bi mulaji bi gongzuoe aruerjiku kerlikunang. Yes, I was thinking that maybe I needed a job change.

854. Qi xiangdao danglani geji mulabu? Have you ever thought about being a tour guide?
855. Youdi kong keliji, gansi puza Tiebie xiangdaoge kerilang gelang. Someone told me that they heard that they needed another tour guide for Tibet.

856. Qi Mangghuer, Tiebie ge, Yinyu ma Qidai kelikula naosa, bi mulaji qi gongzuu yierrij luku keneng shuguo bang. Since you speak Mangghuer, Tibetan, English, and Chinese, I think you have a good chance of getting the job.

857. Gongzi wenduer bang, nazherdu waiguo kongsi langlaji rikusa guori, bi mulaji qi lihu aihuangla ni. The pay is good and except during the summer when foreigners come, I don’t think you’d be very busy.

858. Qi Tiebiege angsa suerba? Where did you learn Tibetan?

859. Dani yimegh Tiebie yimegh khergha bang, muni ana Tiebie bang, bi mula shijiendu weiniin kherghanang Tiebie yimeghdu wosiba. My home village is near a Tibetan village, my father was a Tibetan, and I was raised by my mother’s mother in a Tibetan village.

860. Nazherdu bi didi ma niana kherghanang xiku Mangghuer suer ba, xuedu xiku puza Qidaige suer ba. But in the summer I returned to visit my father’s parents so I learned Mangghuer and then when I went to school, I also learned Chinese.

861. Xuedu shu suerghaku laoshi Qidaila suerghalang, xiake goku bulaisi yigua Mangghuer kelilang. At school, the teachers teach in Chinese but outside of class, all the children speak Mangghuer.

862. Bi chuzhongsa Yinyu suerji kaike ba. I began learning English in junior middle school.

863. Bi nintaige jiang’hua bikuni meidiesa, wuraiher riji bisa berjiang. If I had known there was going to be a lot of speeches, I would have come later.

864. Ni kongsi keliji hangburala guang, yisiherni a daige aikelilang. My home village is near a Tibetan village, my father was a Tibetan, and I was raised by my mother’s mother in a Tibetan village.

865. But in the summer I returned to visit my father’s parents so I learned Chinese.

866. Yige tegher xige ma, bi maozendu ge xini. Those cold noodles look delicious, where did you buy them? How much did they cost?

867. Tiker liangmian naosa gezai bang, qi angsa duer ba? Those cold noodles look delicious, where did you buy them? How much did they cost?

868. Ma, munigenang qimei hua. Here, I can give mine to you.

869. Bi ganni tanidalang, gansi mulaji gan zheng hualalang, mula shijiendu, jiaohui nadundu gan shierge qianzi shanglalang gelang. I don’t know him but everyone thinks he is a genuine hualalang because when he was a young hualalang, he stuck twelve knives in his body at every afterharvest festival.

870. Gan nadundu hansi hualalang, ganni gerku kongsi ganni biedi zai qianzi aishanglaghulang gelang. He

---

15Trance medium.
still dances at the afterharvest festival but his family won’t let him stick knives in his body anymore.

871. Gansikelijiganxidierjiang, dajialaganzhenghualabikunixinhuololang, tinggugannibiediqianzishangladerguanggelang. They say that he is old now, and everyone accepts that he is a real fala, so it’s not necessary for him to put knives in his body.

872. Bulaisinibinguema lanqiugauoryangndurualala? What is more attractive to a boy than ice cream and basketball?

873. Yimeghkubulaisiangujiaijinadunaxisanziyoubang. Village children have much freedom to go anywhere they want to play.

874. Xianyiu, Liushiwugesangyigezhuangjiaqininakoanganganadunnidurualalang. Xianyiu, the son of Liushiwu, a farmer, has always loved the afterharvest festival.

875. Gansinizheqigesangdu, gansikelijiganadunnijinxingzhongbigebagelang. When they were interviewed by the reporter, they told him they had been preparing for the afterharvest festival for many weeks.

876. Qini nukuersi yamerbang? And what about your friends?

877. Gansiyigua tindubang. They were all there.

878. Qinyinxiaozhengnizuigezaishuertuoganganadundubinguerduerlang. One of Xiaozheng’s best friends, Qinyin, sells ice cream at the afterharvest festival.

879. Yimeghku jige shinagu jienanggerdunangsassangrangpipinzangduerlang. Several village ladies were selling cold noodles that they had made in their homes.

880. Gansitiergedirangpiziduerlang, rangpizituduorojiaozisuanceztehtuosiadamapuzitaihilang. They sold the noodles from small carts and seasoned the noodles with chili, garlic, oil, and salt.

881. Rangpizijimoqierdyigezhuhulang, nazhuredikukonghanhuduwulangbang. The noodles are sold for a few jiao per bowl and they are very popular during the warm summer months.

882. Gan kelilang, “Bi aguersiniyangaimiedielang.” He said, “I don’t know anything about girls.”

883. Khurongkuzongnawendangjiliuherkonggerlirunang. The man who is in charge of a wedding must be mature and able to think quickly.

884. Kongshipinshaosaijilaku, khurongkuichenlayaokukerliunang. People must be carefully seated and the wedding must proceed in exactly the right order.

885. Kanbersaerdaku, kongshipinayansini, han gannisuguni. If there are some mistakes, then people will not be happy and may criticize him.

886. Khurongburajixiku, wulangqikheghaimughalasasang“shiquan”ni jianshiridikukhurongqisiduduankejihulang. Food at the wedding comes mostly at the end when ten large dishes of mostly pork are served to the guests at every table.

887. Ganzaoshensa, jianshirididilengyigerghalang. Early in the morning, there are nine small dishes of food on each table.
888. Mula diediergedu chinasang andige bang. One small dish has boiled eggs.
889. Shini shinaguni aju daola kaikoku, zhihusi daola bosilang. After the new wife's maternal uncle starts singing, men sing throughout the wedding.
890. Dangran, xicha ma durasini ye khurongdu gherhalang. Of course, black tea and much liquor is served throughout the wedding.
891. Khurong buraji xiku, bulai ma aguerni aju ghuero gadi ser hangtu zhaghagera gherjirilang. At the end of the wedding, the bride and groom's maternal uncles link arms and singing together, they step out of the main feasting room.
892. Bi qimei xin saizhuruji wudaijiang. I have not written to you for a long time.
893. Bi yaoa qimeidu mieshiku shenge aidaqian gang. I am not going to apologize for leaving as I did.
894. Qi ke ng dangda aierseghni. You probably wouldn't ask me to.
895. Bi qimei guanxin gekuni qi miedie. I wanted you to know that I think about you.
896. Bi zhuangwanglaji kejie bersaher, daghuerlo saosang tini yige tegher xuanka. I hope one day we can sit down together and talk about it for a while.
897. Bi qimei yangjilaji nukuerge ber. I ask you to do me one favor.
898. Anadu keli bi jiehong gejiang ge. Tell mother that I am married.
899. Qi jinchang risa shizai gezai bang. It really is best if you visit more often.
900. Qi miedielang, bi ma qini ana ghuero Qidaige gezai amiedielang, zai ningku youzheng tingtai gezai guang, qi zhurusya da dasi keneck soulke dani. You know that neither I nor your mother read Chinese very well and the mail system is not very good so even if you do write, we may not receive your letter.
Part Five
READINGS FROM HUZHU

1. Ndani Ayili [My Village]

Ndani ayilini Tughuan dodana,
Qidarila Tuguan gina. [My village is
called Tughuan and in Chinese it is
called Tuguan.] Ndani ayili ndani
xangri zui texjin ghajarishdii ayiliga,
Chileb Ghadani kuali jiurana. [My
village is the most level place in our
commune, at the foot of Chile
Mountain.] 1Aylidi haran-niiman
qinsang yiina, nige jug xliu kun
yiina. 2Yiiguala nige aadeeni
huinaguna, yiiguala nige yasiwa.
[1There are eighteen households in
my village and more than one
hundred persons. 2All are
descendants of one ancestor and the
surname is the same.]

1Yerishdi, ayilini nughuun xjuzila
wuikadina, hulasa ayilini rjesa
yamada yiqi. 2Kunhgi
qinsangdina sowasza, nanjinghula
xangmog yamada guigu tiiginga
xjiribughula. [1In summer the village
is surrounded by green trees and it
can't be seen from the outside.
2People sitting in their homes feel
serene and happy.] 1Ndani ayilidigu
ghajar hudi texjinma, ghajarida
luanna. 2Hgengii ghajar huiigualu
rangdiwa, larihga warisza hudingi
quwariwa. 3Moori yiujin kunhgi
kenda shdurilana, ne ayili do saina,
sai saighan ayili! [1My village's fields
are very flat and there are many
fields. 2Most are level which is very
convenient for people to work.
3People walking on the road often
praise that here, fields are very nice
and how nice this village is!] 1Kileguni, Tughuan ayilini
bulaihidina beeri kiliza, cuanpiin
nengi jiigaria nadina gina. 2Ne jub
juba, ndani ayilisa beeri kilela sza
adaguni dii gua, amahgii saighan
xjunnida kil jra dhaana. [1It is said
that when Tughuan villagers look for
a girl for their sons, all depends on
their fields. 2It is true for no one can
not find a girl for their son from
anywhere and even the most
beautiful girl can be married into
our village.]

1Ndani ayiligu kunhgi turangni Wushi
Xangrugu Tughuanna. 2Hudi shdedini
dangghula cun tiriisa ndiri huni aasi
dilala rja. 3Jang rsan sguuudini, ne
ghajarishdini darang nige kuna gua.
4Ndiriisuzu yinja, shdaghuu yhina,
tinga tensa huina dii xgi gua, jiu ne
ghajarishdi sowa bo rja. [1The origin
of my village's people is Wushi
Commune's Tughuan. 2In ancient
times, we left there to herd livestock.
3No one had lived here before our
coming here. 4Here was water and
grass and therefore we did not return and stayed here until now.

Ndani aadee te sghuudi kijeeda kilena, te sghuudini ndani ayilidi hudi kujidii kungi yiina gina. [My grandfather often said, in the past, our village had a very strong person.] ¹Niguudurini gan jigerana fuudangi xjawa Rgulang xna gina shge szungi pingaxja gina. ²Gan jiu fuudani nige suulrna jaka, jigena yang nige suulrna jaka dawaxja gina. [One day he went to Youning Temple with a load of a big bag on a donkey and met a big river. He held the big bag under one arm and the donkey under the other arm and crossed the river.] ¹Darang nige huini, ne kun shdigarna luqiri sowa yan qidaniiguna. ²Kungi gandi kengini qinsangniini szaghajiigunaha, gan puza rangi, nige gharilana luqini taila gharigha zikiji teetewa giji kileja gina. [Another time the man sat on a grinding stone smoking on the threshing ground. When a person asked him where someone’s home was, he stood up and using one hand, raised the grinding stone and pointed, and said it’s that one.] ¹Ndani ayilidi Xni Sara hang dii hudi xoxjanna. ²Bu hudi xjigu duralani jida amanghiba xi adani. [My village is very happy during Spring Festival. I much enjoy being there but sometimes I cannot.]

2. Bu Zangda Marishida Adaguna
[I Can Never Forget]

Bu kijeeda Sangjizhunma ¹⁶ aaneeni muula soni, bu kijeeda, zangda ganni marishida adaguna. [I often remember Sangjizhunma grandmother, I can never forget her.] ¹Bu jirighun nesini sghuudini, kudi bulai luanna, nda guula shdan gua. ²Aama nda hgengii giixangri bulaihgimi tada giwi, laringa warila ghari xna. [When I was six-years-old, because the family had many children, I was not cared for. Mother often sent me into the lane to play with other children and then she went out to work.] ³Kudi nizhangghula darang muladiilingida musiji gua. ²Hudi kuiden durigidii, bu nadin nadindi gantiri guusizingi ruaxja. ³Yidigha shbinzi ulaana, ne sghuudini Sangjizhunma aane dangnii dangnii kudisana ghaxji rangi, nda shdimaangi ghuwa ulaaguni zhulighawaxja. ⁴Jiulana guusizini manta gharighaxja. ³Darang kudina dodaxja, halang bankangrna soghaxja. [The family was too poor for me to wear trousers. On a cold day, as I played, a thorn stuck in my leg. It was so painful that I loudly cried and at this time, Sangjizhunma grandmother limped out from home and gave me a piece of bread, and persuaded me to stop crying. Then the thorn was taken out by her needle. She led me to her home where I sat on her warm bankang.] ¹⁷

¹⁶Tibetan: Sangs rgyas sgrol ma.
¹⁷Huzhu version of the kang.
Sangjizhunma aaneedi kuu xjun kiji yamada gua, kudina jang xghalawa.

Gan nige hui jihunlajga, dansi saighang lohangi puja, saighangi larihga warin gua. Kijeeda durasi wuqina, wuqi sushidugu kudina rsa darang aaneeni sghuugu pughagu gina.

1Sangjizhunma grandmother was childless and alone in her home.
2Though she had married once her husband was not good and did not like work. He often drank and often returned home drunk and scolded and beat her.] 1Nige huini, aaneeni yixida pughangi kidiu duri wuqi shdaja gua, tulighuini xrigina, xiila xja. 2Te taigangira naa xa dii kualiniini hqulixja. 3Tensa huinasa dii kijeeda danxiniina. [One time she was too beaten to eat for several days and dizzily went out to urinate. 2She fell from a raised place, breaking her leg. Later, she often limped.] Dii ghooiri fandini Iohanni smugeerini yiuwaxja, tensa huina dii zangda haxji rja gua. [After two years, her husband secretly left and never returned.] Aanee zangda bulai turaja gua, tensa huina dii jihunlajjida gua. [Grandmother never had children nor did she remarry.]

Nige huini, bu qidiungini tada nadiniha, muni hai szuri naaxja. Bu aama sghuuguna ga ulaaji xahailaniha. Aanee mudewa yang muni tada rangi, lda quanga lii ulagha, durishiji ndani aama tada xangi, amadi saighan kiljea. Tinga dii aama nda sghuua gua. [One time as I was playing by the riverside my shoes fell in the water. I cried because my mother would scold me.

Grandmother knew it, came to me, persuaded me to stop crying, led me to mother, told mother about it. 4Then mother did not scold me.]

Sangjizhunma aaneeni yuanzini shge gua, tawun jan gerwa. 2Ger turani yama dangxida gua, aaneekijeeda xuuwa arigha sona. 3Darang shge nhuungi qidiija, suani kijeeda qidiwa saighangi lighawa, rde huinana xa giina. 4Amanghi nnuuin bankangrna durishiji xa handila sona. Aaneeninani Mongghul dogmangi dolasa, nnuuin qiqina puqigha saighangi qanglana. [Sangjizhunma grandmother's courtyard was not large with only five rooms. There was nothing in her rooms but grandmother kept them very clean. She had a big dog and at night, the dog ate fully then was tied to the back of the courtyard gate. But sometimes, she allowed him to sit on the bankang with her together. Then grandmother sang a Mongghul song and the dog raised both his ears.]

Aanee kijeeda zhuyozingi musa sona, tulighuirna cirizaran sar malighaangi juu sona, nudini shgengi, baini shgengi, niurini qighaangi. kenda sgasa jiu mudena kenniiguni. [Grandmother always wore thick clothes, a ragged lambskin hat, had large eyes, was a tall white-faced figure, and everybody knew her.]

Niguudurini, bu sunishdaji, gan naralaxja. Xuutangsa ra jiu kudini xwa, sza gan bankangrna soja, niurini qighaangi. Nnuuin tadani kola soja. [One day I heard that she was ill.]
When I returned from school and ran to her home where she lay on her bankang with a pale face. Her dog by her side. 1Aane nda sgawa jangna puza rja, gharilana muni moliri wara kilena, “Aaneeni sunzi, kidiu duri qimu yii sgasa, qimu muulawangi. 2Aane do kuja shdan gua. 3Qi xuutangdina xangi saighan suri ju. 3Aane rjesa qi boxan huinaha saighan zamangi rde shdaguna.”

Grandmother raised up slowly, put her hands on my forehead and said, “My grandson, I’ve not seen you for several days and thought much of you. Now I can not well care for myself. Please study hard in school. I’m sure you can have a good life in the future.”

Huina bu wuuzindi muxila ghara xja, kudisa hudi hulawa. Xuutang wariguni nige jinniiha dii kudi Ghoori Ghuran Saradini yiisgi nige hui hari shdanna. 3Ne sghuudini bu kijeeda ganni muula soni. [Later I went to town to study far from my home. The school’s regulations were very strict so only every two or three months could I return home. During this time, I often thought of her.]

Bu gozhun ghoori nenjiini sghuudini, nige huungi kudina sza aama nda nanxingi kilena, “Sangjizhunma aane baina giixja.” Bu yii xraigu tigiim ga, ninpizi nudinsa jangna rusa bo rja. [During senior high school grade two, once when I returned home mother sadly told me, “Sangjizhunma grandmother is dead.” I doubted this but tears trickled from my eyes.] Aama dii nda tuuxingi yiiguani saighangi kilewa.

Mother described it in detail.

Sangjizhunma aane, hugugunsa muxi kidiu duri darang kudi nige hui rja gina. Haralijingi, suanigu nuaszani wuqa xjiha. Sangjizhunma aane kudi rja gina, rangi jiu szaghaguni, Limusishiden rwu?

Sangjizhunma grandmother visited my home before she died. One night after supper, Sangjizhunma grandmother came to the home and asked did Limusishiden come? Then I went to her home and found she had died on her bankang and near her was vomitted blood.

Bu jangna kudini xwa, udenini quirghuala giija. Ude sarishdini nuhuini darang gurru soja. Nda sgagu tulighuina tailaji gharigha kidi ama hujangi, yang harida lii ghuani. [I slowly went to her home—the gate was locked. The dog huddled near the gate. When he saw me he raised his head, barked at me a little, and then was quiet.] Doha aane guiliwa kidi fan laxja, smanba deeran fan surija. Do muulasa, ne aane konin ganyinhua narila huguxja.

Grandmother has been dead for several years and I’ve studied four years of medicine. Now I think...
perhaps grandmother died of liver cirrhosis.] Sangjizhunma aanee, bu qimu zangda marishida adaguna. [Sangjizhunma grandmother, I can never forget you.]

3. Muni Nigiiji... [My Youth...]

1Bu hudi jilani, dulunun niimanni sghuudini, kudi hudi niizhangna.

2Aaba ali fandida ghada ghariji seeri zinlala uxa. [I remember very clearly when I was seven or eight-years-old that my family was very poor.

2Father went out working every year for food money.] Budahgisa muxigu nige biizisa piju muxighan gua, hngengii lamadii danglahana. 2Ndani aadeehgi ghadii kiji deeranlawa, zui shgenida zui mula ghoorilani lamadii danglaghaxja, ndani aadeeni yang nige qinsanggidi tiira ghuaxja. 3Kudi jang nigeniini giiwa beeri awuji ghuja. [Before my generation no one went to school but always became lamas. 2My grandfather had four brothers and the oldest and youngest were lamas while my grandfather was given to another family for a child.

3Just the remaining one stayed at home and married.] Ndani shge aaba rjeji ne diudi kuu luanna, shge lisa tiruu gharighasa madawa ga.

2Nige huingidi ndani aabadi kileguni, “Zhummaa, do qi Limushishidenni lama lighadii gija.” [My father’s elder brother felt that the younger brother had many children and it was difficult to provide for them. 2Once he said to my father, “Zhummaa, please send Limushishiden to be a lama.”] Ndani aaba kileguni, “Do amahgii niizhangnihada lamadii li

lighan kija.” [My father said, “Though my family is very poor. I won’t send him to be a lama.”]

1Niguudurini ayilidi mula tigii piju surighuajingi xuukija. 2Aama muulasaa nigehe tadowa kudindan gual shdaguna. 

7Tirii kidi sara muxangi ndani te losi rjeji bu muxii sainigula, ndani aamadi kileguni, "Saihua, qi ne bulaina xuutangdi xghaji piju surigha." 2Aamaa dayinlaja, jiu tirisi, nengi losi nda nirangi xaji ghuja, jiusi muni dogu Qidari nira ningiji jurina, Li Dechun. [One day a small teaching place in our village was built. 3Mother thought that it was very near so I could still work for the family and secondly that I could acquire knowledge then I was sent to that teaching place. 3Several months passed there and the teacher thought that I could easily learn knowledge and then he said to my mother, “Saihua, please send the child to school so he can learn knowledge.” 4My mother agreed and just then, the teacher gave me a name which is my Chinese name, Li Dechun.]

1Tinga dii nda xuutangdi xghaxja, xuutang hudi hulawa, yiusa nige zhuntuu dawana. 2Jang sza Qidari ugo lii mudeni, surisa hudingi madawa. 3Bu darang jilani, bu turang surisan nige ama Qidari ugoni, niguudurini, bu muxii guainiiha, lurijogdi huinasa ndasa shgehan Mongghul bualangi qorana, “Nii ba nog din zhog.” 4Bu lii muden yan kilenaasii dii, nige szaghasa yiisgi
Then I went to a primary school far away from my family—walking there requires more than one hour. When I first went to school I could not understand Chinese and it was so difficult for me to learn it. I still remember the first Chinese I learned which was one day as I was running and I suddenly heard a shout behind me, “Qing ni deng wo.” shouted by a Mongghul older than I. I did not know what it meant and only learned the meaning by asking him. Deean nenjiini sghuuha, yiisgi Qidari ugoni saighangni yanglani, tawun nenjiira nda xutangsa xusangghulani tulighuingi tiija. [After four years I just understood Chinese well and in five years I was made captain of the students.] 1Ne xeoxuuni muxigu sghuudini hudi niizhangna, yeri rguli guiji zhuyozingi musa soja. 2Rgulidi menkuu gua, jiu nige han danku musa soja. [During my primary school time the family was so poor, regardless of it being summer or winter, I always wore thick worn-out upper body clothing. In winter I did not wear thick wool trousers but just thin trousers.] 1Shdeji shdimaa saayoggi rdewa, shdimaa ngiija zhuangla xna. 2Durihgundini jiisi shdimana rdena, quigua gua. 3Hudi dasiza, bulogri xangi langhuari szungi gualiji ra jiulaji rdena. 4Tawun fanni xeoxuuni jiu ningiji dawaja. [In the morning I simply ate a little bread or some potatoes, then put a piece of bread in a bag for lunch. At noon, I often just ate bread with no boiled water.] 3If I was very thirsty I ran to a spring and took water in a bottle and then ate bread with water. 4My five years of primary school were spent just in this way.] Darang pujiuri bu ynnara shdana, kijeeda losi nnda shdurilana. [Every lesson I learned well and often received teachers’ praise.]

Xeoxuuni muxa buraghagu, kolangi zhunxuuri ruaxja. [Primary school ended and then I was examined for middle school.] 1Ne xuutang xangzhinfuni tiriwa, kudisa hulawa. 2Bu ne xuutangi dangghulani ayilisa xghala kolaxja. 3Ne sghuudini bu kuja ne pujiu muxisa amagiguni sgilidi boja, bu xangi jiu saighanna surija. [Middle school was at the government place, far from my home. I was the only student there from my village. At that time, I realized the usefulness of knowledge and began to study harder.] 1Ne xuutang yang xeoxuula salidan gua yahuada qirogwa. 2Guadi mogxji, aama nda shdemama doda puzighana. 3Bu niurina ghua amayisangi wa ji xangnra ghuwa xuutangdi xhara xna. [Middle school differed from primary school for the school’s regulations were very strict. Every morning, I was awakened very early by mother. After washing my face, I ate a little, then quickly went to school with my school bag.] 1Te sghuudi nigeha mulawa, nigeha xghalawa, dii nigeha hulawa, tinga bu moori hudungi ayina. 2Niguumogxjini bu xuutangdi xniia, sara darang hudi gigeenna, qazi hudi jujuanna. 3Yiuji jangmungini tadani kurisa, hulas
Ji wazingida awuji musi shdan gua. 1Guadi mogxji xuutangdi kurisa ghari kuali kuari xna. [1In winter I could not buy socks. 2Every morning when I reached school, my feet and hands were cold.] Ghoori nenjiiri nda yang xuusangghulani tulighuiniini tiija. [In the second year I was made captain of the students.] Te sghuudi budahgini banzhurin rjeji muni yiiguala saihana, jiu nda smugeeridini kilena, “Qi suriji saina, xahailangi kola ghari xji gina.” [At that time, my teacher in charge of our class thought well of my study and told me privately, “You study well, study hard, then pass the exam and leave.”] Jiu tinga, bu nigeha pujuna surisa, nigeha darang xuutangni xuusangghulani sqinnini gualagu gulani. [Then I needed to study well but on the other hand, I still was involved in many student activities.]

1Ghuran nenjiiri dii bu jiu shhinzinga suriwa, ganghog te fan wuuzindi xni xuutanggi bankija. 2Tera zhuanmin Mongghul Tiwarihgidii surighuajin xuutangga. 3Zui huina bu jiu te xuutangdi kola ruaxja. [1During the three years I studied very hard and by chance, that year, a new senior middle school was established in Huzhu town. 2That school only accepted Mongghul and Tibetan minority students. 3At last, I was examined to that school.] 1Ne xuutangni Huzhuuxan Minzuzhunxuu giji nira xaja. 2Xuusangdi nigeha sara nigeha sara gunja seeri ghuna. 3Xuutangni surighuajin ger, sojin ger, rdeguhgi yiiguala saina, dansi dindiiyig huigx mighii losi hulasa rsanna, yiiguala wadala gulena. tinga yixi lii yanglani. 4Dii nigeha yang Yinyii surighuaghanaha dii yuhuada nanqidi ruaja. [1The school was named Huzhu County Minority School. 2The school’s students, every month, received a stipend given by the government. 3The school’s teaching building, dormitory building, and food all were good, but, there were so many teachers who all spoke standard Chinese19 which I could not understand. 4I began studying English, therefore, I had much...

19The teachers spoke the national language, as opposed to the Huzhu Han dialect which Limusishiden had mastered by this time. The difference between the local Han dialect and the national language made it difficult for Limusishiden to understand the latter.
trouble in study.\textsuperscript{26} Ningangi, bu xanxangragu jiu wadala gulejin losi xuusanghila guleji wadala ugoni suriwa. [Then I began practicing my standard language with teachers and students.] \textsuperscript{1}Bu yii mudeni, amagisanniiha, Yinyii te sghuusa tigii adagungida gua. \textsuperscript{2}Losi surighua buragu bu yiiguani jila gi shdani. ['I don't know why but later English was not difficult to study.'] \textsuperscript{2}When the teacher's lesson was ended, I could remember it.] Budahgini xututandgi hgengiini Mongghul xuusangna, dii Tiwariwa, darang Huihui. [Most students at my school were Mongghul, next were Tibetan, the third It'ere Hui.]

Cun ghoori nenjiirsa bu wadalani qanglaji rgha shdanni, jinada jinlengdi gahgila wadalala gulewa. [After the first years, I could easily understand standard Chinese and tried my best to speak it.] Muni sgilidi boja, tinga bu jiu shbinzi pujuuana suriwa, darang zuqiu hgualidanii, lanqiu pughani, darang ziganzi piilanii. [I was more mature then studied hard, played football and basketball, and played the flute.]

\textsuperscript{1}Ghuran nenjiinii sghuudini, do muka kolagunaha, yiiyuandi shnci jensalala xwa. \textsuperscript{3}Nige smanbangi nda nige sghuujii ghuwaha, dii bu jiu yixyuyuanni bolawa. \textsuperscript{3}Huinhaha jubda daxuuni kolaxja. ['In the third year, college exam time was coming and we were physically examined by doctors.'] \textsuperscript{2}During this a doctor scolded me\textsuperscript{21} and then I prepared to study for the medical college exam. \textsuperscript{3}At last I really passed the college exam.]

Qinhai Yiixuyuandi rangi, Kevin xensin nda jiu Yinyii surighuawa, gan nda shbinzina surighuana, buda shbinzina suriwa. [When I came to Qinghai Medical College I met Mr. Kevin who warmly taught English so I studied hard.] \textsuperscript{1}Cun ghoori nenjiirsa, yang Mongghul pujuu suriwa, hgengiiniini jaqiiiri suridiwa. \textsuperscript{2}Darang Xnqiidi kudina xgula ganni ayilidi xangi suanidindi suriwa. \textsuperscript{3}Nigeha bu Mongghul ugonu gule shdaniha, dii surisada quwariwa. [From the second year of college I began studying the Mongghul alphabet which I mostly studied during my vacation.]

When I returned home on Sundays I went to another village at night to study. \textsuperscript{2}Because I can speak my language therefore, I learned it very easily.] Do bu yijin deerman nenjiini xuusangna, Jirighun Sarani budahgi shxiilaguna. [Now I am a fourth year student and we shall do clinical practice in June.]

\textsuperscript{1}Bu Mongghul pujiuni surigu hudi duralani, Yinyii surigu duralani, bu yanda duralani. \textsuperscript{2}Xanzai yixi mangdangi zuqiu biisaida rje adani. \textsuperscript{3}Jiuriji yidadisa, ziganzimangi piilagui tinginii. ['I greatly enjoy studying Mongghul and English and I want to

---

\textsuperscript{26}I.e., because these teachers taught English in the national language, which Limusishiden poorly understood.

\textsuperscript{21}In the course of the examination the doctor became impatient with Limusishiden and scolded him.
study everything. 2. Now I’m very busy and cannot watch football matches. 3. When I’m tired of writing, I play the flute.] Bu ne sanbani warigu duralani, yinwui bu hara ghajarini duralani. [I much love what I do because I much love the world.]

4. Huzhuuni Rgunbaa--Rachuali
[The Huzhu Temple--Rachuali]
Rachuali Rgulang Rgunbaani tura hgangina. Rachuali Temple lies further inside a valley than Rgulang Temple. 1. Laghangraniji xjisa mula taashini udengi dawana. 2. Turani taashini yudanggi yiisa amani tingerediji fura soja. 1. Walking to the temple you pass through a small stone gate. 2. It has a hole inside it like an open mouth facing heaven. 1. Qidarila “Tenminsi” dodana. 2. Rachuali Rgulang Rgunbaani duragvi mula rgunaangiwa. 3. Chinese call it “Tenminsi.” 2. Rachuali Temple is a small temple administered by Rgulang Temple. Rgulang Rgunbaargu shge lamahgi huaijxjana muxa buraghasa dirii hanburala xjina. Rgulang Temple leaders come here to rest when they finish chanting Buddhist scriptures. Ne rgunaargu qiini logni Rgulangla nigewa. The temple’s scriptures are the same as Rgulang. Hana guleji, rgunbaani szaji guigunsu muxi ne ghajarishdi tensada saighanna gina. People say that before the temple was built it was very beautiful here.

5. Mongghul Kunni Jilaguni
[Mongghul Taboos]2
Mongghul kun pugilii qimusidii kashida muhani jilaji rden gua gulesa mori, liusa, jige nehguni. [Mongghul do not eat the meat of such round-hooved animals as the horse, mule and donkey.] Darang nihuinida jilana, kashidapang tura bajji xiisa jilana, ne aasi kashida npeelagura nantog yii gisana. [Dog meat is taboo as is urination and defecation in the stable, because it will harm livestock]
Mongghulni laghangda qisgangdi, sara kudi xjisan kun, nine kun, haraa duragu kunni ruaji xjighan gua. [Mongghul prohibitions ban people from entering a confinement home and women from entering the temple and the room where a Buddha image is kept.] Nine kun maligha lii juusa, shduri deel lii musisa shdugu muxi ghari shdan gua. [It is prohibited for a woman without a hat and robe to face older men.]
Mongghul kun harighai yighara wuqgu warisa jilana, zhivani muxini bulainia sguusa pughasa jilana. [Mongghul prohibit serving guests with a cracked bowl and prohibit spanking or scolding children in the presence of guests.]
Mongghuldii rde jilagu xjiilog yii, xni ude nirasa, sara sosu, nadjin nari gharisa, kudina rghan gua. [Mongghul have taboos ways related

to establishing a new gate, childbirth, spread of diseases and not allowing persons to enter their homes.] Ude jilagu shdogni: shge udeni haighadi fulaan qaalisi nalighaji, xgua raligha zailaji, shge ghalma tiina. [Taboo indications include: pasting red paper on gate sides, hanging a cypress branch and burning a large straw pile.]

Mongghulni dide kunni tulighui da dalira nine kun gharina xjilighasa dide kun jilana. [The Mongghul men do not allow women to put their hands on their heads or shoulders.]
Part Six
LANGUAGE POINTS

Minhe equivalents {} follow the Huzhu unless otherwise indicated.

1. Ghudiligu Ugo [Verbs]

Example One: sit

1. sit, Sodii. {} Please sit. 
2. sits, Shdanchin tirini sodii. 
   {} Shdanchin/Lingling sits there.
3. sitting, Gan bandangra dundii soja. 
   {} He is sitting on the chair.
4. sat, Quguduri gan diriixi dundii soja. 
   {} Yesterday, she sat there.

Example Two: read

1. read, Jaaxi, teni muxi. 
   {} Jaaxi/Yuanlun, please read it.
2. reads, Gan kijeea pujjungi rjena. 
   {} He often reads a book.
3. reading, Gan pujjungi muxina. 
   {} He is reading a book.
4. read, Quguduri gan pujjungi rjeja. 
   {} He read a book yesterday.
5. have read, Bu nenga pujjungi shdanangs sa rjewa do liwa. 
   {} I have read this book for a long time.
6. has read, Gan nenga pujjuni shdanangs sa rjewa do lija. 
   {} He has read this book for a long time.
7. will read, Jinwun malang ne pujjuni rjeguna. 
   {} Jinwun/Lingling will read this book tomorrow.
8. will be read, Ne pujjuni Shdanchin huina rjeguna. 
   {} The book will be read by Shdanchin/Yuanlun.
9. shall be read, Ne pujjuni bu huina rjegunii. 
   {} The book shall be read by me.
10. was reading, Quguduri bu Jinxuuni kudini sza, gan pujjungi rjena. 
    {} Lingling was reading a book when I went to his home yesterday.
11. had read, Gan ne pujjuni hugugunsan muxisa rjeja. 
    {} He had read this book before he died.
12. had been read, Ne pujjuni gan hugugunsan muxisa rjeja. 
    {} The book was read by me.
The book had been read by him before he died.

**Example Three: write**

1. write, Qi teni jiuri. {Qi ninige zhuru.} Please write it.
2. writes, Gan teni jiuri. {Gan nini zhuruulang.} He writes it.
3. writing, Gan puiju jiurina. {Gan shu yiben zhuruser bang.} He is writing a book.
4. wrote, Quguduri bu puiju nigijji jiuriwa. {Chuguduer bi tiaozige zhuru ba.} I wrote a note yesterday.
5. have written, Bu nenga puijuni shdanangsa jiuriwa do liwa. {Bi tini zhuruji wuda ba.} I have written it for a long time.
6. has written, Gan teni jiurixja. {Gan tini zhuru gherghajiang.} He has written it.
7. will write, Gaasan malang yangi jiuriguna. {Huyuan mughashi yangbersage zhurukunang.} Gaasan/Huyuan will write something tomorrow.
8. will be written, Nenga puijuni huinaha shdanchin jiuriguna. {Ni shuni yihou lingling zhurukunang.} The book will be written by Shdanchin/Lingling in the future.
9. shall be written, Nenga puijuni bu huinaha dii jiurigunii. {Ni shuni yihou bi zhuruni.} The book shall be written by me in the future.
10. was writing, Quguduri bu Gaasanni kudini sza gan yanniiha jiurina. {Chuguduer bi huyuanni gerdu xiji bisa, gan yang diger zhuruser bang.} Gaasan/Huyuan was writing something when I went to his home yesterday.
11. had written, Gan nengani shdananggunsu muxi jiuraxja. {Gan nini wudanihuang sa mieshi zhuru gherghajiang.} He had written it before last year.

**2. Szagha [Questions]**

1. sa, Qi sainiisa? {Qi gezai bainu?} How are you?
2. wa, Qi anjisa rwa? {Qi angsa riba?} Where do you come from?
3. ni, Te qinani? {Ni qini bai?} Is it yours?
4. nii, (a) Qi anjisa rsanii? {Qi angsa riba?} Where are you from? (b) Ne deel kennii? {Ni qunzi kanni bang?} Whose skirt is this?
5. na, Ne yanna? {Ni yang bang?} What's this?
6. wu, Qi wuqiwu? {Qi yi dibu?} Did you eat?
7. ni, (a) Ie qinani? {Ni qi niel ni du ma?} It's for you? (b) Qini tulighui yidinani? {Qini terghai bietu liu?} Have you a headache?
8. xja, Rnqan amagaxja? {Huyuan yageji?} What's wrong with Rnqan/Huyuan?
9. gu, Malang bu tirii xgu? {Bi tingdu mughashi xisa berku nainu?} May I go there tomorrow?

**3. Minhe Mangghuer Question Words**

1. nu, Qi gezai bainu? How are you?
2. ba, Qi angjisa riba? Where have you come from?
3. biu, Ni qini bai? Is it yours?
4. kanni, Ni KANNI BANG? Whose is it?
5. yang, Ni YANG BANG? What’s this?
6. bu, Qi YIDI BU? Did you eat?
7. yageji, Ti KONG YAGEJI? What’s wrong with the man?
8. bar nu, MUGHASHI BI TINGDU XISA BERNU? May I go there tomorrow?
9. ken, KAN NINI ZHURUJI? Who did write it?
10. kendu, KANDU QIANBIGE BI? Who has a pencil?

4. Tindigu Nira Ugo [Adjectives]

Example One: big

1. shgewa [big], Ne liuxi shgewa. {NI LAOCHU SHUGO BANG.} The rat is big.
2. tensa shgewa [bigger], Ne muxi tensa shgewa. {NI MIAORI NUGUSA SHUGO BANG.} The cat is bigger than it.
3. hanansa shgewa [biggest], Mori te jirihgari hanansa shgewa. {NIGE MORI NI DUNDA ZUI SHUGO BANG.} The horse is the biggest of them all.

Example Two: tall

1. duriwa [tall], Niidosuni baini duriwa. {LINGLING WENDUER BANG.} Niidosu/Lingling is tall.
2. tensa duriwa [taller], Gaxjunni baini tensa duriwa. {HUYUAN GANSA WENDUER BANG.} Gaxjun/Huyuan is taller than her.
3. hanansa duriwa [tallest], Limuhuani baini te jirihgari hanansa duriwa. {YUANQING NISI DUNDA ZUI WENDUER BANG.} Limuhua/Yuanqing is the tallest of them all.

Example Three: fast

1. maliwa [fast], Dirijiisirang guaiji maliwa. {LINGLING GUJI MALI BANG.} Dirijiisirang/Lingling runs fast.
2. tensa maliwa [faster], Jaaxi guaiji tensa maliwa. {YUANQING GUJI GANSA MALI BANG.} Jaaxi runs faster than him.
3. hanansa maliwa [fastest], Rashidan te jirihgari guaiji hanansa maliwa. {YUANQING NI DUNDA GUJI ZUI MALI BANG.} Rashidan/Yuanqing runs the fastest of them all.

5. Pronouns

Example One:

bu/nda/muni/ndana/teni/teniwa/nd asgeni/ndasgela

1. Bu haran-tawun nesilija. {BI SHIWU BER BA.} I am fifteen-years-old.
2. Bu xuusanggi yii. {BI XUESHENG BI.} I am a student.
3. Nda sunghuangi yii. {DANGDA SI-TIJIBIGE HI.} I have a pen.
4. Nda nige diungi yii. {DANDA DIAOGE BI.} I have a younger brother.
5. Muni kabog nughuungi yii. {MUNI CHUCHUER KUGUO BANG.} My bag is green.
6. Muni deel tiriiwa. {MUNI DIER TINGDU BANG.} My dress is there.
7. Te muni beeriwa. {NI MUNI BIERI BI.} She is my wife.
8. Te ghajari ndana. {TI WURUANG DASINI BANG.} That land is ours.
9. Te ndana. {TI MUNI BI.} That is mine.
10. Bu teni tanni. {BI GANNI MIEDIELANG.} I know him.
11. Ne teniwa. {TI GANNI BANG.} That is hers.
12. Budahgini aaba mangda soja. {DASINI ABA HUANGLALANG.} Our father is busy.
13. Gan budahgiola salidan gua. {GAN DASINI WUJIDALANG.} He doesn't like us.

Example Two: te/teni
1. Te Qidariga. {GAN QIDAIQI BANG.} He is Chinese.
2. Te tawun nesilija. {GAN WUSUI BERJIANG.} She is five-years-old.
3. Teni nirani Chinhuawa. {GANNI NIERENI HUYUAN GELANG.} His name is Chinhua/Huyuan.

Example Three:
qi/qini/teni/tehgini/qina
1. Qi anjigunii? {QI ANGJISA RI BA?} Where have you come from?
2. Qi kidi nesiliwa? {QI KEDU BER BA?} How old are you?
3. Qini kudi anjii? {QINI GER ANGJI BI?} Where is your family?
4. Qini bulai lai? {QINI KAO ANGJI BANG?} Where is your son?
5. Teni aaba anjii? {TASINI ABASI ANGJI BANG?} Where are your fathers?
6. Tehgini ugona gule. {QI GE KELI.} Please your words speak. (i.e.) Please speak.

7. Ne sunghua qina. {NI SHUIBI QINI BANG.} This pen is yours.
8. Ne sunghua qinani? {NI SHUIBI QINI BIU?} Is this pen yours?

Example Four:
tehgi/gahgini/tehgina/gahgidi
1. Tehgi anjiguna? {GANSI ANGJI BANG?} Where are they?
2. Tehgi amagina? {GANSI YANG GESER BANG?} What are they doing?
3. Gahgini dangxiniini bu mude. {BI GANSINI DONGXINI MIEDIELANG.} I recognize their belongings.
4. Gahgini (or: Tesgini) caanganzini ndiiwa. {GANSINI CHABEI NINGDU BANG.} Their teacups are here.
5. Ne deelhgi tehginani? {NI DIERSI GANSINI BAINU?} Are these clothes theirs?
6. Ne deelhgi tehgina. {NI DIERSI GANSINI BANG.} These clothes are theirs.
7. Tehgini (or: Gahgini) bu muden. {BI GANSINI MIEDIELANG.} I know them.
8. Bu tehgidi (or: gahgidi) surighawa. {BI GANSIDU SUERGHIA BA.} I taught them.

2. Minhe Mangghuer Pronouns

Example One: bi/damei/nda
1. BI YAO NI. I'll leave.
2. DAMEI WUGUI. I don't have.
3. DANGDA WUGUI. I don't have.

"Bi" is used only as a subject.
"Damei" and "nda" are used as subjects and objects:
1. DAMEI CHA YIGE GHA HU. Give me a cup of tea.
2. DANGDA SUGUO BA. I was scolded.

Example Two: muni

1. MUNI GAGA YAO BA. My elder brother has gone.
2. NI MUNI BI. This is mine.

Example Three: dasi/datang

“Dasi” refers to a group of people containing the subset “datang.”
“Dadu” may mean “dasi” or “datang.”

1. DASI MUBALA YAO WA BA? Shall we (all) go swimming?
2. DATANG LAI YAO. We (a part of this group) won’t go.

When “dasi” and “datang” are used as objects of verbs, “du” or “ni” should be added to show the passive.

1. GAN DASIDU LAIKELIKUNANG. He won’t tell us.
2. DATANGNI SUGO BA. We were scolded.
3. DASINI KHA'ALALANG. We are being called.
4. DATANGDU WUGUI. We don’t have.
5. DASIDU WUGUANG. We don’t have.
6. DADU WUGUI. We don’t have.

Example Four: dasini/dani

1. NI DASINI BAINU? Is this ours?
2. DASINI WURUANG SAIHANG BANG. Our place is beautiful.

Example Five: qimei [you singular]

1. QIANGJI XINI? Where are you going?
2. QIMEI XUJUNDIAO BIU? Do you have any younger sisters?
3. GAN QIMEI KELI BU? Did he tell you?

Example Six: tasi [you plural]

1. TASI ANJJI XIBA? Where did you go?
When tasi is used as the subject of a verb, du or ni is added. Ni commonly shows the passive.

1. GAN TASIDU TI QIERNI HU BU? Did he give you the money?
2. TASINI DAODALANG. You are being called.

Example Seven: tasini

1. TASINI ANA WENDUER BANG. Your mother is tall.
2. NI TASINI BIU? Is this yours?

Example Eight: gan/gansi

1. GAN RI JIU? Did he/she come?
2. GANSI YAO BA. They have gone.

When gan or gansi is used as a verb object, du or ni should be added. Ni commonly indicates the passive.

1. GANDU HU. Give him/her.
2. GANNI SUGUOJIANG. He/She was scolded.
3. **GANSIDU KELI.** *Tell them.*
4. **GANSINI DAODA.** *Call them.*

**Example Nine: ganni/gansini**

1. **GANNI GER TADA BANG.** *His/Her home is near.*
2. **GANSINI YAMA ANGTUDONG NI.**
   *How nice their meal was.*
3. **NI GANSINI BANG.** *This is theirs.*
Part Seven
ENGLISH-IN-MONGHUL TELEVISION PROGRAM

Initially published with support from the Canada-China Support Unit in Beijing, English-In-Mongghul: Mongghulla Yinyi \(^2\) is one of the few texts ever to appear teaching a foreign language in one of China’s non-Sinitic languages. During the Lunar New Year period of 1997, a television program recorded by Limusishiden and Kevin Stuart in 1995, was broadcast by the Huzhu County Television Station and again in the summer months. Broadcasts were also made possible by support from the Canada-China Foundation. The recorded program, comprised of thirty-eight lessons, followed the text with Limusishiden reading the Mongghul portion and Kevin Stuart reading the English portion.

One thousand texts were printed in Weiyuan, Huzhu County, and distributed free of charge to Mongghul-speaking middle school students in Huzhu County just prior to the Lunar New Year holiday.

\(^2\)Limusishiden and Kevin Stuart (1996).
Why is English important? English is the most widely used of all international languages and also it is the language of science and technology. China has stressed learning English as a tool in developing the national economy, especially in minority areas and in furthering economic developments in line with the national policy of “opening to the outside world.” Furthermore, when students have a better grasp of English, their scores will be higher on the university entrance examinations. This will allow more Mongghul students to attend universities and colleges.

Why teach English in Mongghul? Many Mongghul students do not understand Chinese well enough to learn English efficiently. By teaching English in Mongghul, students will grasp English much faster and have a better knowledge of it.

Amaga Mongghulla Yinyii Surighuaguna? Henggii Mongghul xuusang ne Yinyiini surisa Qidari ugosa maliwa darang saina. Mongghulla Yinyii surighuasa Mongghul kundi yangchu hudi luanna.

This book. Material in this book was prepared by Limusishiden and Kevin Stuart. Students who learn the substance of this book should be able to have a conversation and read English at the lower intermediate level. We hope all the students who read this book will not give up after a few lessons but continue to the end! Learning a new language is difficult, but hard work brings a real knowledge of the language being learned and real rewards in the end!

Jantogdini bii hgal. Ugongi surisa quwari gua.

Good luck in your English study!

Saighanna surida Yinyiini suri shdan!

Limusishiden & Kevin Stuart
Lesson One

(1) Name
a. What is your name?
My name is ___.

Nigedari Kijeel

(1) Nirani
a. Qini nira yannii?
Muni nira ___ yii.

b. What is his name?
His name is ___.

b. Ganni nirani yana?
Ganni nirani ___ na.

c. What is her name?
Her name is ___.

c. Teni nirani yana?
Teni nirani ___ wa.

d. What is my name?
Your name is ___.

d. Muni nira yana?
Qini nira ___ wa.

(2) Home
a. Where is your home?
My home is ___.

(2) Kudi
a. Qini kudi anjiia?
Muni kudi ___ di yii.

b. Where is her home?
Her home is ___.

b. Teni kudini anjiia?
Teni kudini ___ diwa.

c. Where is his home?
His home is ___.

c. Ganni kudini anjiia?
Ganni kudini ___ diwa.

d. Where is my home?
Your home is ___.

d. Muni kudi anjiia?
Qini kudi ___ diwa.

(3) Age
a. How old are you?
I am ___.

(3) Nesi
a. Qi kudini nesiwa?
Bu ___ na.

b. How old is he?
He is ___.

b. Ganni kudini nesiwa?
Gan ___ na.

c. How old is she?
She is ___.

c. Teni kudini nesiwa?
Te ___ na.

d. How old am I?
You are ___.

d. Bu kudini nesiwa?
Qi ___ na.

(4) Job
a. What is your job?
I am a ___.

b. What is his job?
He is a ___.
c. What is her job?
She is a __.
d. What is my job?
You are a teacher.

e. Are you a teacher?
Yes, I am. I am a teacher.
f. Is he a teacher?
Yes, he is. He is a teacher.
g. Is he a teacher?
No, he isn't. He isn't a teacher.
h. Is she a teacher?
Yes, she is. She is a teacher.
i. Is he a teacher?
Yes, he is. He is a teacher.

(4) Gunzuu
a. Qini gunzuu yannii?
Bu __ ngi yii.
b. Ganni gunzuunii yana?
Gan __ ngiwa.
c. Teni gunzuunii yana?
Te __ ngiwa.
d. Muni gunzuunii yana?
Qi losingiwa.
e. Qi losingi yiu?
Ninbii, bu. Bu losingi yii.
f. Gan losingiwani?
Ninba, gan ninba. Gan losingiwa.
g. Gan losingiwani?
Puja, gan puja. Gan losingi puja.
h. Te losingiwani?
Ninba, te ninba. Te losingiwa.
i. Gan losingiwani?
Ninba, gan ninba. Gan losingiwa.

(5) Nationality
a. What is your nationality?
I am Mongghul.
b. Is he Mongghul?
Yes, he is. He is Mongghul.
c. Is she Mongghul?
Yes, she is. She is Mongghul.
d. Is he Mongghul?
No, he isn't. He is __.
e. Is she Mongghul?
No, she isn't. She is __.
f. Am I Mongghul?
Yes, you are. You are Mongghul.

(5) Szaribatin
a. Qi yan szaribatin ii?
Bu Mongghul yii.
b. Gan Mongghulwani?
Ninba, gan ninba. Gan Mongghulwa.
c. Te Mongghulwani?
Ninba, te ninba. Te Mongghulwa.
d. Gan Mongghulwani?
Puja, gan puja. Gan __ wa.
e. Te Mongghulwani?
Puja, te puja. Te __ wa.
f. Bu Mongghulwani?
Ninba, qi ninba. Qi Mongghulwa.

Lesson Two

(6) Numbers
1--one
2--two
3--three
4--four
5--five
6--six
7--seven
8--eight
9--nine
10--ten
11--eleven
12--twelve
13--thirteen
14--fourteen
15--fifteen
16--sixteen
17--seventeen
18--eighteen
19--nineteen
20--twenty
21--twenty-one
22--twenty-two
30--thirty
40--forty
50--fifty
60--sixty
70--seventy
80--eighty
90--ninety
100--one hundred

(7) Time
What time is it? It’s 9:30 (nine-thirty). It’s 10:55 (ten fifty-five). It’s 1:00 (one). It’s 12:15 (twelve-fifteen). It’s 1:01 (one O one).

(7) Sghuu

(8) Greetings
1: Good afternoon.
2: Good afternoon.
1: How are you today?
2: I’ve very well, thank you. And you?
1: I’m fine, thanks.
2: Good-bye. Nice to see you.
1: Nice to see you, too. Good-bye.

(8) Szagha
1: Sainiisa.
2: Sainiisa.
1: Qi niuduri sainasa?
2: Bu hudi saina, qimu hgali giwa. Qi lai?
1: Bu saina, hgali giwa .
2: Siida sgaya. Qimu sgawa baisiwa.
1: Qimu sgawa ya baisiwa. Siida sgaya.

(9) Texts
a. Niima is a teacher. He is not a student. He is twenty-four. He is not French. He is not American. Niima is
Mongghul. His nationality is Mongghul. His home is Danmaa.

(9) Kuuwun

b. Miss Ruby Brown is not a teacher. Ruby is a student. She is not Mongghul. She is not Chinese. She is French. She is eighteen. Her home is Paris. Her nationality is French.

c. Li Ping is twenty-one. He is not Spanish. He is not American. Li Ping is Chinese. His home is Beijing. Li Ping is not a milkman. He is not a nurse. Li Ping is a student. He is a new student. His nationality is Chinese.

d. Jane is not a teacher. She is not a student. Jane is a housewife. She is not Chinese. She is not Mongghul. Jane is English. Her home is England. She is forty-five years old. Her nationality is English.

e. Is that man fat? Yes, he is. He is fat. He is a fat man. That man is fat.

f. Is that man fat? No, he isn’t. He is not fat. That man is not fat. That man is thin.

g. A: Is this your __? No, sir. It’s not my __.

h. A: Is this your __? B: Yes, sir. It is my __.

i. This is Tim’s shirt. It’s Tim’s shirt. It is a white shirt. Tim’s shirt is white. Tim’s shirt is not blue. Tim is fat. Tim is not thin. Tim is
twenty-five. He is young. He is not old. Tim is not thirty. Tim is a policeman. He is not a policewoman. His home is America. His home is not Tibet. He is busy. He is not lazy. He is American. His nationality is American. He is not Mongghul. His nationality is not Mongghul. He is not Chinese. His nationality is not Chinese.


Lesson Three

(10) Write in the missing words.
a. This is ___ pen. This is not ___ pen.
b. This is ___ shirt. It is not ___ shirt. It's Niima's shirt.
c. This is my ___ dress. It is not my ___ dress. It is a ___ dress.
d. My ___ is a mechanic. He is ___.
   His ___ is Tangraa. He is ___.
   not thin. He is ___.
   He is French. He is not a ___.

e. Britt is an ___.
   She is ___.
   Her home ___ England. She is ___.
   She's ___ air-hostess. She is not a ___.
f. Miss Ruby Brown is ___.
   She is not ___.
g. This coat is my ___.
   It is not my ___.
   My daughter is ___.
   She is a student. My ___ is ___.
   He ___ a barber. He is not a ___.

Ghurandari Kijeel

(10) Guilisan pujuni jiuri.
a. Ne sunghuua ___ wa. Ne sunghuua ___ puja.
c. Ne muni ___ deelwa. Te muni ___ puja. Te muni ___ deel puja. Te ___ deelniwa.
   Gan ___ ni puja.
e. Buriitii ___ ngiwa. Te ___. Teni kudini Lundun ___ wa. Gan fiijiri gunzulijin ___ wa. Te ___ ngi puja.
f. Rubiiburan Aagu ___ wa. Te ___ puja.
g. Ne deel muni ___ niwa. Te muni ___ ni puja. Muni xjun ___ wa. Te xusanggiwa. Muni ___ wa. Gan rawaa qirighajingi ___.
   Gan ___ ngi puja.

(11) Write in the missing words.
A: Whose is this ___?
B: It is Stella's ___.
   It is a ___ handbag. This is ___ handbag. ___ is not his handbag.
   It is not my ___ handbag. It is not ___ handbag.
(11) **Guilisan pujuni jiuri.**
A: Ne kenni ___ wa?
B: Te Stailaani ___ na. Te ___ kaboggwi. Ne kabog ___ wa. ___ teni kabogni puja. Te muni ___ kabog puja. Te kabog ___ puja.

(12) **Write in the missing words.**
A: Is this your umbrella?
B: No, it isn’t. It ___ not my umbrella. It is Miss Ruby Brown’s ___.

(12) **Guilisan pujuni jiuri.**
A: Ne qini yuusannani?
B: Puja, te puja. Te muni ___ yuusan puja. Te Rubiiburan Aaguni ___ na.

(13) A: How many brothers do you have?
B: I have two brothers.
A: How old are your brothers?
B: One is twenty-one. One is eighteen.
A: What are your brothers’ names?
B: One is ___. One is ___.
A: What are your brothers’ jobs?
B: One is a teacher. One is a student.
A: Where are your brothers’ homes?
B: My brothers’ homes are Funanira.  
(One brother’s home is Funanira. One brother’s home is Qaaghuali.)

(13) A: Qimu kidi aaghadiu yii?
B: Nda ghoori aaghadiu yii.
A: Qini aaghadiuhgi kidihangi nesilija?
A: Qini aaghadiuhgini nirani yana?
A: Qini aaghadiuhgini gunzuuni yana?
B: Nigeni losingiwa. Nigeni xuusanggiwa.
A: Qini aaghadiuhgini kudini anjiwa?
B: Ndani aaghadiuhgini kudini Funaniraawa. (Nige aaghadini kudini Funaniraawa. Nige aaghadini kudini Qaaghualiwa.)

(14) A: How many sisters do you have?
B: I have one sister.
A: What is her name?
B: Her name is ___.
A: How old is your sister? (How old is she?)
B: She is fifteen.
A: Where is her home?
B: Her home is Jiloghua.
A: What is her job?
B: She is a student. My sister is a student.

(14) A: Qimu aajji xjundiu giji kidi yii?
B: Nda aajji nige yii.
A: Teni naran yana?
B: Teni nirani ___ wa.
A: Qini aajji kidihangi nesilija? (Te kidi nesilija?)
B: Te haran-tawunna.
A: Teni kudini anja?
B: Teni kudini Jilohuashdiwa.  
A: Teni gunzuuni yana?
B: Te xuusanggiwa. Muni aajji xuusanggiwa.

(15) Niima is a student. His home is Danmaa. He is twenty. He has two sisters and three brothers. One sister is eighteen. She is a student. One sister is twenty-five. She is a nurse.
The sisters’ home is Danmaa. The sisters are Mongghul.


One brother is fourteen. He is a student. One brother is thirty. He is a teacher. One brother is twenty-five. He is a mechanic. The brothers’ home is Danmaa. The brothers are Mongghul.


Niima is not fat. He is thin. He is not short. He is tall. Niima’s home is Danmaa. Niima has a new coat. His coat is green. It’s very smart. Niima’s new green coat is very smart. His coat is not old. His coat is new. It is a lovely coat. Niima is Mongghul. He is not French. His nationality is Mongghul.


(16) This is Bill. He is Canadian. He is twenty. He is a student. He is not a teacher. He is fat. He is not thin. He is young. He is not old. His home is Canada. This is his car. It’s green. It is a green car. It is a new car. It is not an old car. This is Bill’s hat. It is an old hat. It is not a new hat. Bill’s hat is white. Bill’s hat is not black. His hat is white. It is a white hat. It’s white. Bill has two brothers. Bill has no sisters. One brother is fourteen. He is a student. One brother is thirty-one. He is a mechanic. Bill’s father is fifty-five. Bill’s mother is fifty-four. Bill’s father is a teacher. Bill’s mother is a housewife.

Lesson Four

(17) Write in the missing words.
This ___ Niima’s ___. It is a ___ coat. It is ___ a white ___. Niima is ____. Niima is a ___. Niima is not a ___. Niima is ___. He is ___ old.
Niima has ___ sisters. Niima has ___ brothers. One ___ is nineteen. He is a ____. One brother is ___. He is ___ student. One brother ___ a barber.
He is ___. Niima’s brothers are ___.
Niima’s brothers are not ___.

Deerandari Kijeel

(17) Guilisan pujuni jiuri.
Ne Niimani ___ Te ___ deelniwa.
Niimani aahadiuhgini ___ wa.
Niimani aahadiuhgini ___ puja.

(18) Write in the missing words.
Shdanbaa is forty-two. He ___ two daughters and three ___. One ___ is a ___ student. Shdanbaa’s sons are ___.

(18) Guilisan pujuni jiuri.
Shdanbaa tijin-ghooriwa. Gandi aajii giji ghoori ___ darang ghuran ___.
Nige aajii (xjundiu)ni ___ ngiwa.
Nige ___ ni xuusanggiwa.
Shdanbaani kuuhgini ___ wa.

(19) Write in the missing words.
This ___ is black. It is not ___. It is a ___ hat.

(19) Guilisan pujuni jiuri.
Ne ___ harawa. Te ___ gua. Te ___ malighaangiwa.

(20) Write in the missing words.
How are ___ today?
I’m very well, ___. How are you?
I’m very well. Thank ___.
Good-bye.
Good-bye.

(20) Guilisan pujuni jiuri.
___ niuduri sainasa? Bu hudi saina.
___ ___. Qi sainasa? Bu hudi saina.
___ hgali giwa. Siida sgaya. Siida sgaya.

(21) A: How many brothers do you have?
B: I have one brother.
A: What is his name?
B: His name is Limudanzhuu.
A: How old is he?/ How old is your brother?/ How old is Limudanzhuu?
B: He is twenty./ My brother is twenty./ Limudanzhuu is twenty.
A: What is your brother’s job?/ What is Limudanzhuu’s job?
B: My brother is a mechanic. He is a mechanic. Limudanzhuu is a mechanic.
A: Where is your brother's home? Where is Limudanzhuu's home? Where is his home?
B: His home is Tughuan. My brother's home is Tughuan. Limudanzhuu's home is Tughuan.
A: What is your brother's nationality?
B: He is Mongghul.

A: How old are your sisters? How old are they? How old are Jane and Rose?
B: One is twelve. One is twenty-five. Jane is twelve and Rose is twenty-five.
A: What are your sisters' jobs? What is Jane's job and what is Rose's job?
B: Jane is a student and Rose is a nurse.
A: Where are your sisters' home? Where is their home? Where is Jane's home and where is Rose's home?
B: Jane's home is New York. Rose's home is Chicago. One's home is New York. One's home is Chicago.
A: What is your sisters' nationality? What is their nationality? What is Jane's nationality and what is Rose's nationality?
B: They are American. My sisters are American. Jane and Rose are American.

(21) A: Qimu aaghadiu giji kidi yii?
B: Nda nige aaghadiu yii.
A: Ganni nirani yana?
B: Ganni nirani Limudanzhuuwa.
A: Gan kidi nesiliia? Qini aaghadiu kidi nesiliia? Limudanzhuu kidi nesiliia?
B: Gan hurinna. Muni aaghadiu hurinna. Limudanzhuu hurinna.
A: Qini aaghadiuni gunzuuni yana? Limudanzhuuuni gunzuuni yana?
B: Muni aaghadiu timurima szajinga. Gan timurima szajinga. Limudanzhuu timurima szajinga.
A: Qini aaghadiuni kudini anja? Limudanzhuuni kudini anja? Gan kudini anja?
B: Ganni kudini Tughuandiwa. Muni aaghadiuni kudini Tughuandiwa. Limudanzhuuni kudini Tughuandiwa.
A: Qini aaghadiuni szaribatinni yana?
B: Gan Mongghulwa.

(22) 2,3,4,5, ... brothers/ sisters
A: How many sisters do you have?
B: I have two sisters.
A: What are their names? What are your sisters' names?
B: One is Jane. One is Rose.

(22) Ghoori, ghuran, deeran, tawun, ... aaghadiuhgi/ aajii xjundiuhgi
A: Qimu aajii xjundii giji kidi yii?
B: Nda aajii xjundii giji ghoori yii.
A: Tehgini nirani yana? Qini aajii xjundiuhgini nirani yana?
B: Nigeni Janna. Nigeni Ruuziwa.
A: Qini aajii xjundiuhgi kidi nesiliia? Tehgi kidihangi nesiliia? Jan da Ruuzi ghoorila kidihangi nesiliia?
A: Qini aajii xjundiuni gunzuuni yana? Jan da Ruuzini gunzuuni yana?
B: Jan xuusangga Ruuzi huusinga.
A: Qini aajii xjundiuni kudini anja? / Tehgini kudini anja? / Jan da Ruuzini kudini anja?

(23) Write in the missing words.
A: Is this your _?  
B: Yes, it is. It is mine. It is my _.

(24) Write in the missing word.
A: Is this your _?
B: No, it isn’t.

(24) Guilisan pujiuni jiuri.
A: Ne qini ___ wani?
B: Ninba. Te muna. Te muni ___ wa.

(25) Write in the missing words.
A: Whose ___ is it?
B: It’s ___ (his, hers, yours).

(25) Guilisan pujiuni jiuri.
A: Ne kenni ___ wa?
B: Te ___ (ganna, tena, qina).

(26) A: Is this his/ hers/ yours/ mine?
B: No, it isn’t. It’s his/ hers/ yours/ mine.

(26) A: Ne gannini/ tenini/ qinini / munini?
B: Puja, te puja. Te gannini/ tenini/ qinini/ munini.

(27) What color’s your coat? hat? shirt?
It’s blue/ black/ green/ white.

(27) Qini deelni, malighaani, hindazini, udogni yana?
Te yiilan/ hara/ nughuun/ qighaanwa.

(28) What color’s his/ her/ my coat? hat? shirt?
His/ her/ my coat is black, white, green, blue.

(28) Ganni/ teni/ muni deelni, malighaani, hindazini, udogni yana?
Ganni/ teni/ muni deel hara, qighaan, nughuun, yiilanwa.

(29) A: What color is that hat?
B: It’s green.
A: What color is that coat?
B: It’s the same color. It’s green. It is green. It’s green, too.

(29) A: Tengi maligha yan udogwa?
B: Te nughuuniga.
A: Tengi deel yan udogwa?
B: Nige sanba udogwa. Te nughuunna. Te nughuunga. Teda nughuunga.

(30) ...the same as... too...
A: What are your brothers’ jobs?
B: Bill is a teacher. Jim is a teacher. Jim has the same job. He is a teacher, too. Bill and Jim are teachers.
...nigehua... ya...
A: Qini aaghadiuni gunzuuni yana?

(31) A: Are you Mongghul?
B: Yes, we are. We are Mongghul.

(32) A: Are you French?
B: No, we are not. We are not French. We are Mongghul.

A: Qi Faagui niu?

Lesson Five

(33) A: Are these your books?
B: Yes, they are./ No, they are not. No, they aren’t.

Tawundari Kijeel

(33) A: Nehgi qini pujii yiu?
B: Tehgi ninba./ Puja, tehgi puja. Puja, tehgi puja.

A: Qi Mongghul yiu?
B: Bu ninbii. Budahgi Mongghul yii.

(34) A: Are you Mongghul?
B: Yes, we are. We are Mongghul. A: Are your friends Mongghul, too?
B: Yes, they are. They are Mongghul. They are Mongghul, too.

(34) A: Tehgi Mongghul yiu?
B: Ghin, budahgi ninbii. Budahgi Mongghul yii.

A: Qini zhoniihgi ya Mongghulwani?
B: Ghin, tehgi ninba. Tehgi Mongghulwa. Tehgi ya Mongghulwa.

(35) Niima’s home is Wuuzin. He has two sisters and one brother. Niima is twenty-four and he is a postman. One sister is Lamulu. She is eighteen and she is a student. Her home is Wuuzin, too. One sister is Gaaxijin. She is twenty-five and she is a nurse. Her home is Tangraa. Gaaxijin’s home is not Wuuzin.


Niima’s father is a teacher and his mother is a housewife. His father is fifty-one and his mother is forty-nine.

Niimani aabani losingiwa, aamani kudina lairiga warijinga. Ganni aabani tayin-nigewa, aamani tijin-nigewa.

Niima is very busy, he is not lazy. His job is a postman. His mother is very busy, too. Housewives are very busy. Housewives are not lazy. They are very busy. They are not lazy.

Niima is tall and thin. He is not short and fat. Niima’s father is tall, too. Lamulua is short and thin. She is not tall and fat. Niima’s mother is fat. Niima’s father is fat, too.


Lamulua and Gaaxijin are very pretty. They are very busy, too.

Lamulua da Gaaxijin ghoorila hudi saighanna. Tehgi ya hudi mangna.

Niima, Niima’s father, and Gaaxijin are employees. Lamulua and Niima’s mother are not employees. Lamulua is a student and Niima’s mother is a housewife.


Niima’s friends are Mongghul and Chinese. Niima is Mongghul. Niima’s friends are not French. His friends are not French. His friends are Mongghul and Chinese. He has Mongghul friends and Chinese friends. Lamulua has Mongghul and Chinese friends, too.


Niima’s brother is Limudanzhuu. He is twenty and his home is Wuuzin. too. He is not a student he is a barber. He has Mongghul and Chinese friends, too.


Limudanzhuu has a new hat. It is green and it is very smart. Limudanzhuudi xni malighaangi yiina. Te nughuunga rjegundi hudi saighanna.

Limudanzhuu is very busy. He is not lazy. He is tall and thin. He is not short. Limudanzhuu is not fat, he is thin. Limudanzhuu is Mongghul. He is not Spanish. Limudanzhuu’s nationality is Mongghul. His nationality is not Spanish. Limudanzhuu is Niima’s brother.

Mr. Jackson: Come and meet our students, Mr. Richards.
Mr. Richards: Thank you, Mr. Jackson.

Mr. Jackson: This is Miss Lamulua and this is Miss Gaaxijin.
Mr. Richards: How do you do?
Mr. Jackson: Miss Lamulua is a student. Miss Gaaxijin is a teacher.
Mr. Jackson: This is Mr. Limudanzhuu and this is Mr. Niima.
Mr. Richards: How do you do?
Mr. Jackson: They are very busy! What are their jobs?
Mr. Richards: They’re students. They’re not lazy.
Mr. Jackson: This is Mr. Li. He is a teacher.

Jaakisin Aaga: Ra, budahgini xuusanghgini nige rjela ra, Jaakisin aaga.
Riiqidi Aaga: Hgali giwa, Jaakisin aaga.
Jaakisin aaga: Ne Lamulua Aaguwa ne Gaaxijin Aaguwa.
Riiqidi Aaga: Qi sainiisa?
Jaakisin Aaga: Te xjunhgi hudi saighanna. Tehgini gunzuuni yana?
Jaakisin Aagu, Ne Limudanzhuu aagawa, ne Niima aagawa.
Riiqidi Aaga: Qi sainiisa?
Riiqidi Aaga: Tehgi hudi mangna! Tehgi gunzuuni yana?

Niima is a teacher. Lamulua is a teacher, too. Lamulua and Niima are married. They have two children.
Niima is twenty-eight and Lamulua is twenty-eight, too. Niima is Mongghul and Lamulua is Mongghul, too.
Niima’s home is Shgeayili. Lamulua’s home is Shgeayili, too.
They have two children. This is Limudanzhuu. Limudanzhuu is Niima’s son. Limudanzhuu is Lamulu’s son, too. Limudanzhuu is three. Limudanzhuu has no job. Limudanzhuu is a child.

This is Gaaxijin. Gaaxijin is Niima’s daughter. Gaaxijin is Lamulu’s daughter, too. Gaaxijin is five. Gaaxijin has no job. Gaaxijin is a child.

This is Niima’s father. He is fifty-five. He is a farmer. His home is Shgeayili. This is Niima’s mother. She is fifty-five, too. Her home is Shgeayili, too. Niima’s mother is a farmer.

Lamulu is very tired. She has two children. She works very hard.

Lamulu hudi yidaja. Tendi ghooori bulai yiina. Te wariguni hudi saina.

Niima is very tired, too. He is a teacher and he has two children. Lamulu and Niima are tired because they are very busy.


Gaaxijin and Limudanzhuu are children. They are short. They are not tall.

Niima and Lamulu are tall. They are not short. They are thin, too. They are not fat.


Niima has seventy-five students. Lamulu has sixty-six students. They are teachers. Niima and Lamulu are teachers.

Niima has a new hat. It is black. It is very smart. Lamulua has a new skirt. It is brown. It is very smart, too.


Niima has two brothers. One is twenty and one is thirty. Niima’s brothers are teachers. Lamulua has one brother. He is fifteen and he is a student. Niima has no sisters. Lamulua has no sisters.


Lesson Six

(40) Write answers to the following questions.

a. What is Niima’s nationality?
b. How old is Niima?
c. How old is Lamulua?
d. How old is Niima’s father?
e. How old is Niima’s mother?
f. How old is Limudanzhuu?
g. How old is Gaaxijin?
h. What is Niima’s job?
i. What is Lamulua’s job?
j. What is Niima’s father’s job?
k. What is Niima’s mother’s job?
l. Where is Niima’s home?
m. Where is Lamulua’s home?
n. Where is the childrens’ home?
o. Where is Niima’s father’s home?
p. Where is Niima’s mother’s home?
q. Are Niima and Lamulua tired?
r. How many children do Niima and Lamulua have?
s. How many students do Niima and Lamulua have?
t. How many brothers does Niima have? What are their jobs?
u. How many brothers does Lamulua have? What is his job?
w. How many sisters does Niima have? How many sisters does Lamulua have?

Jirighundari Kijeel

(40) Duragu wuncini huidaaniini jiuridii.

a. Niimani szaribatinni yana?
b. Niima kidi nesilija?
c. Lamulua kidi nesilija?
d. Niimani aabani kidi nesilija?
e. Niimani aamani kidi nesilija?
f. Limudanzhuu kidi nesilija?
g. Gaaxijin kidi nesilija?
h. Niimani gunzuuni yana?
i. Lamuluani gunzuuni yana?
j. Niimani aabaniini gunzuuni yana?
k. Niimani aamaniini gunzuuni yana?
l. Niimani kudini anja?
m. Lamuluani kudini anja?
n. Bulaihgini kudini anja?
o. Niimani aabaniini kudini anja?
p. Niimani aamaniini kudini anja?
q. Niima da Lamulua yidajani?
r. Niima da Lamuluadi kidi bulai yiina?
s. Niima da Lamuluadi kidihangi xusuang yiina?
t. Niimadi kidi aaghadjiu yiina?

Tehgini gunzuuni yana?
They have some animals. They have one two yaks, five sheep, two goats, one horse, one cow, one mule, and one donkey. They have no camels.


Niima is fifty-five and Lamulua is fifty-five, too. Lamulua and Niima’s home is Naringhua. They have two children. Their son is Limudanzhuu. He is eighteen and he is a student. Limudanzhuu is a young man, he is not an old man. Their daughter is Gaaxijin. She is twenty-five and she is a doctor. Gaaxijin is married, too, and has two children, too. One child is four and one child is three. Her children have no jobs. They are children. Gaaxijin is very busy. She is not lazy. Gaaxijin is a pretty young woman, she is not an old woman.


Lesson Seven

Write answers to the following questions.

a. Where is Niima’s home?

b. Where is Lamulua’s home?

c. How old is Niima?
d. How old is Lamulua?

e. Do Niima and Lamulua have any animals?

f. How many animals do Niima and Lamulua have?

g. How many children do Niima and Lamulua have?

h. How old is Niima’s and Lamulua’s son?

i. What is Niima’s and Lamulua’s son's job? (What is Limudanzhuu’s job?)

j. How old is Niima’s and Lamulua’s daughter?

k. What is Niima’s daughter’s name?

l. What is Gaaxijin’s job?

m. Is Gaaxijin old?

n. Is Gaaxijin pretty?

o. Is Limudanzhuu old?

p. Where is Lamulua’s brother’s home?

q. Is Lamulua’s brother young?

r. How many animals does Lamulua’s brother have?

s. How many children does Lamulua’s brother have?

t. What is Lamulua’s brother’s job?

u. How old are Lamulua’s brother’s children?

v. What jobs do Lamulua’s brother’s children have?

---

**Duluundari Kijeel**

(42) Duragu wuncini huidaaniini jiuridi.

a. Niimani kudini anja?

b. Lamuluanu kudini anja?

c. Niima kidi nesilija?

d. Lamulua kidi nesilija?

e. Niima da Lamuluadi kashida aasima yiina?

f. Niima da Lamuluadi amahanei kashida aasi yiina?

g. Niima da Lamuluadi bulai kidi yiina?

h. Niima da Lamuluanu kuuni kidi nesilija?

i. Niima da Lamuluanu kuuniini gunzuuni yana? (Limudanzhuu gunzuuni yana?)

j. Niima da Lamuluanu xjunni kidi nesilija?

k. Niimani xjunniini nirani yana?

l. Gaaxijinni gunzuuni yana?

m. Gaaxijin shdulijani?

n. Gaaxijin saighannani?

o. Limudanzhuu shdulijani?

p. Lamuluanu aaghiaduniini kudini anja?

q. Lamuluanu aaghiaduni lalangnani?

r. Lamuluanu aaghiaduniini kidihangi kashida aasi yiina?

s. Lamuluanu aaghiaduniini kidihangi bulai yiina?

t. Lamuluanu aaghiaduniini gunzuuni yana?

u. Lamuluanu aaghiaduniini bulaini kidi nesilija?

v. Lamuluanu aaghiaduniini bulaihginiini gunzuuni yana?

---

(43) Hello. My name is Niima. I am a student at Huzhu Nationalities Middle School in Huzhu Mongghul County. I am fourteen years old. My father is a farmer. He has some animals. He has seven yaks, three cows, one horse, eight sheep, and four mules. My father has no donkeys, and camels. My father’s home is Sunduu. My father is forty-five. He is very busy, he is not lazy.
I have two brothers and two sisters. One brother is a student and one brother is a doctor. One brother is fourteen and one brother is twenty-five. Their home is Sunduu, too. My two sisters are students, too. One is fifteen and one is sixteen. They are very busy, too.


I have a new coat. It is a brown coat and it is very smart. It is a big coat, it is not a small coat. I have a knife, too. It is a Tibetan knife. It is a long knife, it is not a short knife. It is very smart, too. It is not a new knife, it is an old knife.


My mother is forty-four. She is a farmer. She is very busy, too. She is not lazy.

Muni aama tijin-deeranna. Te larighaqinga. Te ya hudi mangna. Te lan gua.

My father’s sister is not a farmer. Her home is Xining. She is not a farmer, she is not a doctor. She is a policewoman. She is tall, she is not short. She is thin, she is not fat. She has one child.


My mother’s brother is old. He is sixty-five. He is not a farmer, he is a monk. He is not married. He has no children. His home is Hgunbin.

Lesson Eight

(44) Write answers to the following questions.

a. Where is my/ his/ Niima’s home?

b. How old are my/ Niima’s/ his/ father and mother?

c. Where is my/ his/ Niima’s mother’s brother’s home?

d. How old am I? (How old is he/ Niima?)

e. Where is my/ his/ Niima’s father’s sister’s home?

f. How many brothers do I/ does he/ does Niima have?

g. How many sisters do I/ does he/ does Niima have?

h. What are my/ his/ Niima’s brother’s jobs?

i. Where is my/ his/ Niima’s brothers’ home?

j. What is my/ his/ Niima’s mother’s brother’s home?

k. Is my/ his/ Niima’s knife old?

l. What color is my/ his/ Niima’s new coat?

m. Is my/ his/ Niima’s knife smart?

n. What are my/ his/ Niima’s sisters’ jobs?

Niimandari Kijeel

(44) Duragu wuncini huidaaniini jiuridii.

a. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani kudini anja?

b. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani aaba aamani kidihangi nesilija?

c. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani aamaniini aaghaduniini kudini anja?

d. Bu kidi nesilija? (Gan/ Niima kidi nesilija?)

e. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani aabaniini aajiiiniini kudini anja?

f. Nda/ gandi/ Niimadi aaghadii giji kidi yiina?

g. Nda/ gandi/ Niimadi aajji xiundii giji kidi yiina?

h. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani aaghaduniini gunzuuni yana?

i. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani aaghaduniini kudini anja?

j. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani aamaniini aaghaduniini kudini anja?

k. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani qidighuani hojirajani?

l. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani xni malighaauniini udogni amahgiinga?

m. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani qidighuani rjegundi saighannani?

n. Muni/ ganni/ Niimani aajji xjundiiniini gunzuuni yana?

(45) This is your classroom. It is a large classroom. It is not a small classroom. There are many desks in the classroom. The desks are brown. There are many stools. They are brown stools. There are two blackboards in the classroom. They are not small blackboards, they are large blackboards. The blackboards are black, they are not white.


(46) This is Mrs. Parker’s kitchen. It is a large kitchen. It is not a small kitchen. There is a refrigerator in the kitchen. It is a blue refrigerator. The
refrigerator is blue, it is not red. The refrigerator is on the right. There is an electric cooker in the kitchen. The cooker is yellow. It is on the left. There are two small tables in the middle of the room. There are two bottles on the tables. The bottles are full. They are not empty. There is a cup on the table, too. The cup is clean, it is not a dirty cup.


(47) Write answers to the following questions.
- Is Mrs. Parker's kitchen small?
- Where is the refrigerator?
- What color is the refrigerator?
- Where is the electric cooker?
- Is the cooker green?
- Where are the two small tables?
- Where are the two bottles?
- Are the bottles empty?
- Where is the cup?
- Is the cup dirty?
- Is the cup clean?

(48) Look at your classroom. Write answers to the following questions.
- Where are the blackboards?
- Where are the stools?
- Are there many stools in the classroom?
- Are there many desks in the classroom?
- Where are the tables?
- What color are the stools and tables?
Limudanzhuu: Yes, I am a student. I study at Huzhu Nationalities Middle School. Are you a student, too?
Niima: Yes, I am a student, too.
Limudanzhuu: Where is your home, Niima?
Niima: My home is Danmaa.
Limudanzhuu: My home is not Danmaa. My home is Funaniraa.
Niima: Does Funaniraa have many Mongghuls?
Limudanzhuu: Yes, Funaniraa has many Mongghuls. Does Danmaa have many Mongghuls, too?
Niima: Yes, Danmaa has many Mongghuls. How many brothers do you have?
Limudanzhuu: I have no brothers.
Niima: How many sisters do you have?
Limudanzhuu: I have three sisters.
Niima: How old are your sisters?
Limudanzhuu: One is fifteen, one is sixteen, and one is seventeen.
Niima: How old are you?
Limudanzhuu: I am eighteen. How old are you, Niima?
Niima: I am eighteen, too.
Limudanzhuu: How many brothers and sisters do you have?
Niima: I have two brothers and two sisters.
Limudanzhuu: How old are your brothers and sisters?
Niima: One brother is ten. One brother is twenty. One sister is fifteen and one sister is twelve.
Limudanzhuu: What are your brothers' and sisters' jobs?
Niima: They are students.

Limudanzhuu: How old is your father and what is his job?
Niima: My father is forty-five. He is a farmer.
Limudanzhuu: Does he have many animals?
Niima: No, he doesn't. He does not have many animals. My father has only a few animals.
Limudanzhuu: What animals does he have?
Niima: My father has three sheep, one cow, one yak, three goats, and one horse. He has no camels.
Limudanzhuu: How old is your mother and what is her job?
Niima: My mother is a farmer and she is forty-one. What is your father's job and how old is he?
Limudanzhuu: My father is a farmer and he is fifty.
Niima: Does your father have many animals?
Limudanzhuu: No, he doesn't. He does not have many animals. My father does not have many animals. He has one mule, one yak, two goats, and five sheep. He does not have any donkeys. He has no horses.
Niima: Is this your classroom?
Limudanzhuu: Yes, it is. It is my classroom. It is a big classroom. It is not a small classroom. It has many desks and stools. The desks and stools are brown. My classroom has two blackboards. They are black. They are not white.
Niima: How many desks are there in the classroom?
Limudanzhuu: There are fifty-two desks in the classroom.
Niima: How many stools are there in the classroom?
Limudanzhuu: There are fifty-two stools in the classroom.
Niima: How many blackboards are there in the classroom?
Limudanzhuu: There are two blackboards in the classroom. Is your hat new?
Niima: Yes, it is. My hat is new. It is a new hat. My hat is not old.
Limudanzhuu: What color is your hat?
Niima: My hat is brown. It is not white, it is not blue. It is a brown hat.
Limudanzhuu: Your hat is very smart!
Niima: Thank you very much! Is your shirt new?
Limudanzhuu: Yes, it is. It is a new shirt. It is not an old shirt, it is new. My shirt is new. My shirt is white.
Niima: Your shirt is very smart, too!
Limudanzhuu: Thank you very much! Niima, what is your nationality?
Niima: My nationality is Mongghul. I am a Mongghul. Limudanzhuu, are you Mongghul, too?
Limudanzhuu: Yes, I am Mongghul. I am Mongghul, too. My nationality is Mongghul.
Niima: Good-bye, Limudanzhuu.
Limudanzhuu: Good-bye, Niima.

(49) Niima: Ghai, Limudanzhuu qi niuduri amahgiinga?
Limudanzhuu: Ghai, Niima. Bu sainu, qimu hgalig wiwa. Qida sainasa?
Niima: Bu hudi sainu. Qi xuusanggi yiu?
Niima: Ninbii, bu ya xuusanggi yii.

Limudanzhuu: Niima qini kudi anjii?
Niima: Muni kudi Danmaadi anjii.
Limudanzhuu qini kudi anjii?
Limudanzhuu: Muni kudi Danmaadi pujii. Muni kudi Funaniraa yii.
Niima: Funaniraa Mongghul hudi luannani?
Limudanzhuu: Ghin, Funaniraa Mongghul hudi luanna. Danmaadida Mongghul luannani?
Niima: Ghin, Danmaadi Mongghul luannama. Qi aaghadiu giji kidila yii.
Limudanzhuu: Nda aaghadiu giji gui.
Niima: Qimu aajii xjundiu giji kidi yii?
Limudanzhuu: Nda aajii xjundiu giji ghuran yii.
Niima: Qini aajii xjundiuhiqi kidihangi nesilija?
Niima: Qi kidi nesilija?
Limudanzhuu: Bu haran-niimanna.
Niima qini kidi nesilija?
Niima: Bu ya haran-niimanna.
Limudanzhuu: Qimu aaghadiu, aajii xjundiu giji kida yii?
Niima: Nda aaghadiu ghoori da aajii xjundiu giji ghoori yii.
Limudanzhuu: Qini aaghadiu da aajii xjundiuhiqi kidihangi nesilija?
Limudanzhuu: Qini aaghadiu da aajii xjundiuhiqi kidihangi nesilija ganni gunzuuni yana?
Niima: Tehgi xuusangna.
Limudanzhuu: Qini aaba kidihangi nesilija ganni gunzuuni yana?
Niima: Muni aaba tijin-tawunna. Gan larihgaqinga.
Limudanzhuu: Gandi ahangi kashida aasi yiinani?
Limudanzhuu: Gandi amahgii kashida aasi yiinani?
Niima: Muni aabadi ghuran huni, nige aasi, nige musi, ghuran yimaa da nige mori. Gandi timeen gua.
Limudanzhuu: Qini aama kidihangi nesilija, teni gunzuuni yana?
Niima: Muni aama larihgaqinga, te tijin-nigewa. Qini aabani gunzuuni yana gan kidihangi nesilija?
Limudanzhuu: Muni aaba larihgaqinga, gan tayinna.
Niima: Qini aabadi ahangi kashida aasi yiinani?
Niima: Ne qini joshiwani?
Niima: Joshi tura amahangi xrai yiina?
Limudanzhuu: Joshi tura tayin-ghoori xrai yiina.
Niima: Joshi tura amahangi bandang yiina?
Limudanzhuu: Joshi tura tayin-ghoori bandang yiina.

Niima: Joshi tura amahangi hiiban yiina?
Limudanzhuu: Joshi tura ghoori hiiban yiina. Qini malighaa xniwani?
Limudanzhuu: Qini malighaani udogni yana?
Niima: Muni malighaa buruunga. Te qighaan gua, te yiilanni puja. Te buruun malighaanga.
Limudanzhuu: Qini malighaani rjegundi hudi saighanna!
Niima: Qimu hudingi hgali giwa! Qini hindaaazi xniwani?
Niima: Qini hindaaazini ya rjegundi hudi saighanna!
Limudanzhuu: Qimu hudingi hgali giwa! Niima qini szaribatin yannii?
Niima: Muni szaribatin Mongghul yii. Bu Mongghulgi yii. Limudanzhuu, qida ya Mongghul yii?

(50) This is a kitchen. It is a large kitchen. It is not a small kitchen.
The there is a refrigerator in the kitchen. It is a large refrigerator. The refrigerator is on the right. It is not in the middle. It is a blue refrigerator. It is not a white refrigerator. The refrigerator is new. It is not an old refrigerator.
There is a table in the kitchen. It is a small table. It is not a big table. It is not a new table. It is an old table. The table is yellow. The table is in the middle of the room.

Zuuhandi xraingi yiina. Te mula xrainga. Te shge xraingi puja. Te xni xraingi puja. Te hojirasan xrainga. Te xrai xrainga. Te xrai gerni xjiidina.

There are two glasses in the kitchen. The two glasses are on the table. The glasses are full. They are not empty.

Zuuhandi ghoori caagangzi yiina. Te ghoori caagangzi xrai dirawa. Te caagangzihgi diurija. Tehgi huusin puja.

There is an electric cooker in the kitchen. It is a large electric cooker. It is not a small electric cooker. The electric cooker is red and it is new. It is not yellow and it is not old. The electric cooker is on the left. It is not on the right. It is not in the middle of the room.


There is a plate in the kitchen. It is on the plate. It is a large plate. It is not a small plate. The plate is white. The plate is not black.

Zuuhandi tawoggi yiina. Te xrai dirawa. Te shge tawogga. Te mula tawoggi puja. Te tawog qighaanga. Te tawog harangi puja.

There is a knife in the kitchen. It is on the plate. It is a small knife. It is not a large knife. It is not a long Tibetan knife. The knife is new. It is not old. The small knife is on the plate.


There are two spoons in the kitchen. They are in the glasses. The two spoons are in the glasses. The spoons are large spoons, they are not small spoons. They are old spoons, they are not new spoons.

Zuuhandi ghoori timuxii yiina. Tehgi caagangzihgini turana. Te ghoori timuxii caagangzihgini turana. Te timuxihihi shgehan timuxihiwa, tehgi mula timuxii puja. Tehgi huujin timuxihiwa, tehgi xni timuxii puja.
Lesson Ten

This is Niima’s home. It is a large home. This is Niima’s living room. It is a living room, it is not a kitchen. His living room is large. It is not small. There is a television in the room. The television is new. It is not old. The television is big. It is not a small television, it is a large television. There are some magazines, books, and newspapers on the television. The books are English books. The magazines are Tibetan magazines. The newspapers are Chinese newspapers. There are two armchairs in the room. The armchairs are large and they are new. The armchairs are not old and small. They are new and big. The armchairs are near the table. The armchairs are brown. They are very smart. There is a radio in the room. It is a small radio. It is not a large radio. The radio is black and it is an old radio. It is not a new radio. The radio is near the door. There are some books on the radio. They are English books. One book is a Tibetan-English dictionary. One book is “English for Tibetans.” Niima is an English student. He studies English. He has many English books. Niima also studies Tibetan and Chinese. There are some pictures in the room. The pictures are on the wall. There are three pictures in the room.

Harandari Kijeel


This is Niima’s bedroom. It is a large bedroom. This is Niima’s bed. It is a big bed. There are some shoes on the floor. They’re near the bed. They are Niima’s shoes. They are new shoes and they are black. This is Niima’s dressing-table. There are some cigarettes on Niima’s dressing-table. The cigarettes are near a box. The box is a new box. It is a small box, it is not a large box.
This is Niima's kitchen. It is a large kitchen. This is Niima's refrigerator. It is a new refrigerator. There are some bottles in the refrigerator. They are empty. The bottles are empty. They are not full. This is Niima's cooker. It is a blue cooker. There are some plates on the cooker. They are clean plates. They are not dirty plates. There are some forks, spoons, and knives on the table in the kitchen. They are in a red box. The forks, spoons, and knives are in a red box on the table. The table is in the middle of the kitchen.


Niima is a student. His home is Xining. He studies at Qinghai Education College. He is twenty-one. His is not married. He has no children. He has two brothers and two sisters. One brother is a teacher. He teaches Tibetan. He is married and he has three children. His home is Xining, too. He teaches Tibetan at Qinghai Education College. He is thirty. One brother is a student. He is a student at Qinghai Teachers' University. He is eighteen. He studies math. He is not married and he has no children.
These are Niima’s friends. Limudanzhuu is a student at Qinghai Education College. He studies math. He does not study English. Limudanzhuu’s home is Qaaghuali. His father is a farmer. He does not have many animals. He has one yak, one horse, two sheep, and one goat. He has no camels. Limudanzhuu is Tibetan. His nationality is Tibetan.


This is Lamulua. Her nationality is Mongghul. She is Niima’s friend, too. She is a student at Qinghai Education College, too. She studies English. Her home is Sunduu. She is nineteen. She is very pretty. Her father is a farmer. He does not have many animals. He has one donkey, one mule, and two cows.


Niima has many friends. His friends are students. They study at Qinghai Education College and Qinghai Teachers’ University. His friends are Tibetan and Chinese. Niima has no French friends. His friends’ homes are Gansu, Qinghai, and Qaaghuali.


Niima’s mother is fifty-two. She is very busy. She is a housewife. She is not a policewoman. She is not lazy. Her home is Xining, too. She has five children. Her brother is a monk. His home is Kumbum. He is sixty-five. He is not young, he is old. He teaches Tibetan. He has many students. He is very busy. He is fat, he is not thin.

hudi mangna. Gan tarighuanna, gan hgalaja gua.

Niima’s father is an engineer. He is not a postman. He is very busy. He is fifty-three. He is tall, he is not short. He is thin, he is not fat. Niima’s father has a new hat. It is a brown hat. It is not a black hat. It is not a red hat. It is a brown hat.


Lesson Eleven

(52) Lamulua is Gaaxijin’s daughter. Gaaxijin is Lamulua’s mother. Gaaxijin is the mother. Lamulua is the daughter.
Gaaxijin. Come in, Lamulua and please shut the door. Your bedroom is very untidy.
Lamulua. What must I do, Mother?
Gaaxijin. Open the windows and air the room. Then put these clothes in the wardrobe. Then make the bed. Dust the dressing-table. Then sweep the floor.

Haran-Nigedari Kijeel


Gaaxijin. Rua ra, Lamulua qi udeni hadii. Qini qaajin ger hudi arin gua. Lamulua. Aama, bu yan warigii?

(53) Limudanzhuu is Niima’s student. Niima is Limudanzhuu’s teacher.
Niima is a student. Limudanzhuu is a teacher.
Limudanzhuu: Come in. Niima. Shut the door please. This classroom is very untidy.
Niima: What must I do, Mr. Limudanzhuu?
Limudanzhuu: Open the windows and air the classroom. Then dust the stools and desks. Then clean the blackboards. Then sweep the floor.

Niima: Bu yan warigii? Limudanzhuu Aaga.

(54) Niima is a student. He is a math student at Qinghai Education College. He is a first year student. He studies math.

(54) Niima xuusangga. Gan Qinhai Joyii Xuuyuandi fuxuu surina. Gan
This is his dormitory room. It is a big room, it is not a small room. There are six beds in the room. The beds are very tidy. There are six students in the room. There is a table in the room. The table is a small table. It is a brown table. The table is near the window. There is one window in the room. It is a small window. It is a clean window. It is not a dirty window.

There are two chairs in the room. They are old chairs, they are not new chairs. One chair is near the door. One chair is near the table.

There are two stools in the room. The stools are on the right. They are small stools, they are not large stools.

There are some shoes on the floor. They are Niima’s shoes. Niima’s shoes are near Niima’s bed.

There are some cigarettes on the table. They are Niima’s friend’s cigarettes.

There are some trousers on Niima’s bed. They are on the bed, near a blue shirt. The trousers are brown. They are new trousers and they are very smart.

There is a tin on the table, too. It is Niima’s food tin. There is a fork in the tin. There is a spoon in the tin, too. The fork and the spoon are Niima’s. They are Niima’s fork and spoon. Niima’s dormitory room has no television and no radio.
There are six glasses on the table. One glass is Niima's. They are tall glasses. They are not small glasses. There is a knife on the table, too. It is in a red box.

Niima has two brothers and three sisters. His brothers and sisters are students. They are young, they are not old.

Niima's mother is a farmer. She is forty-three. She is very busy, she is not lazy. She has six children.

Niima's home is Jilloghua. He has two brothers and three sisters. His brothers and sisters are students. They are young, they are not old.

Niima's home is Jilloghua. He has two brothers and three sisters. His brothers and sisters are students. They are young, they are not old.

Niima's mother is a farmer. She is forty-three. She is very busy, she is not lazy. She has six children.

Niima's home is Jilloghua. He has two brothers and three sisters. His brothers and sisters are students. They are young, they are not old.

Niima's home is Jilloghua. He has two brothers and three sisters. His brothers and sisters are students. They are young, they are not old.

Niima's mother is a farmer. She is forty-three. She is very busy, she is not lazy. She has six children.
Lesson Twelve

(55) Lamulua. Where’s our daughter, Gaaxijin?
Niima: She’s on the mountain, Lamulua.
Lamulua. What is she doing?
Niima: She’s herding sheep.
Lamulua. How many sheep is she herding?
Niima: She is herding six sheep.
Lamulua. Whose sheep are they?
Niima: They are our sheep, Lamulua.
Lamulua. Is our son, Rashidan, on the mountain, too?
Niima: Yes, he is.
Lamulua. What’s he doing?
Niima: He’s riding a black horse.
Lamulua, I beg your pardon? Who is riding a horse?
Niima: Rashidan is.
Lamulua. What about the dog?
Niima: The white dog is on the mountain, too. It’s running across the grass. It’s running after a brown and white cat.

Haran-Ghooridari Kijeel

(55) Lamulua: Gaaxijin, budahgini xjun anjiwa?
Niima: Lamulua, te ghadarwa.
Lamulua. Te amagina?
Niima: Te huni dilana.
Lamulua. Te kidihangi huni dilana?
Niima: Te jirighun huni dilana.
Lamulua. Tehgi kuni huniwa?
Niima: Lamulua, tehgi budahgini huniwa.
Lamulua. Budahgini kuu Rashidan ya ghadarwani?
Niima: Ninba, gan yiina.
Lamulua. Gan amagina?
Niima: Gan hara morki funij. Lamulua. Qi diingi kile? Ken morki funij?
Niima: Rashidanna.
Lamulua. Te nuhui lai?
Niima: Te qighaan nuhui ya ghadarwa. Te wusi jirihgari holina.
Te buruun qighaan tigii muuxingini huinani jirana.

(56) This is Niima's family. Niima's home is Xining. His father is typing a letter. One sister is emptying a basket. One brother is hot, he is opening a window. Niima's mother is making the bed. She is very busy. One sister is shutting the door. Niima's dog is eating a bone. A sister is looking at a picture. One brother is reading a magazine. One brother is cleaning his teeth. One sister is dusting the dressing-table. His grandmother is cooking a meal. Niima's cat is black. It is drinking its milk. One sister is sweeping the floor. Niima is sharpening a pencil. Niima's grandfather is turning on the light. Niima's sister is turning on the tap. Niima's brother is putting on his shirt. Niima's mother's friend is taking off her coat.


(57) It is a very fine day today. There are many clouds in the blue and white sky but the hot sun is shining. Mr. Limudanzhuu is with his family today. They are riding horses on the grassland. There are some yaks on the grasslands. They are big and brown yaks. Mr. Limudanzhuu and his wife are looking at them. Limuqog, Mr. Limudanzhuu and Mrs. Gaaxijin's daughter, is looking at a big sheep. The large white sheep is walking on the grassland. Rashidan, Mr. Limudanzhuu and Mrs. Gaaxijin's son, is looking at an airplane. The airplane is a small airplane and it is flying over the grassland.

Limudanzhuu Aaga da Gaaxijin
Aayini kuuna, gan fijingini rjena. Te fijji mula tigii fijingiwa. Te wusii talaa jighadi nasiji dawana.

(58) Limudanzhuu: Gaaxijin, what are they doing?
Gaaxijin. They are cooking. The two men are cooking on an electric cooker.
Limudanzhuu: What is that boy doing? What is that girl doing?
Gaaxijin. The boy and girl are sleeping. They are sleeping.
Limudanzhuu: What are those two men doing? Are they sleeping?
Gaaxijin. No. they are not sleeping. They are shaving. The two men are shaving.
Limudanzhuu: Gaaxijin what are those two children doing? Are they eating?
Gaaxijin. No, they are not eating. They are crying.
Limudanzhuu: What are those two dogs doing? Are they eating?
Gaaxijin. Yes, they are eating. Those two dogs are eating.
Limudanzhuu: What are those two employees doing?
Gaaxijin. They are typing. They are typists. They are not lazy.
Limudanzhuu: What are those two students doing?
Gaaxijin. They are doing homework.
Limudanzhuu: What are those two women doing?
Gaaxijin. They are very busy. They are washing dishes.
Limudanzhuu: What are those two birds doing?
Gaaxijin. Those two little birds are flying over the big river.

Limudanzhuu: What are Mr. Limuzhaxii and Mrs. Qiyansuu doing?
Gaaxijin. They are walking over the big bridge.

Limudanzhuu: What are they doing?
Gaaxijin. They are waiting. They are waiting for the bus.

Limudanzhuu: What are those two children doing?
Gaaxijin. They are jumping over the wall.

Limudanzhuu: What are those two young men doing?
Gaaxijin. They are riding horses on the mountain.

(58) Limudanzhuu: Gaaxijin, tehgi amagina?
Gaaxijin. Tehgi shdana. Te dide kun ghoorila den tighungira shdana.
Limudanzhuu: Tengi bulai amagina? Tehgi qaaja.
Gaaxijin. Te bulai da xjun ghoorila qaaja. Tehgi qaaja.
Limudanzhuu: Te dide kun ghoorila amagina? Tehgi qaajani?
Gaaxijin. Gua, tehgi qaaja gua. Tehgi sghalina guakina. Te dide kun ghoorila sghalina guakina.
Limudanzhuu: Gaaxijin te ghoori bulai amagina? Tehgi rdenani?
Gaaxijin. Gua, tehgi rden gua. Tehgi ulaadina.
Limudanzhuu: Te nuhui ghoorila amagina? Tehgi rdenani?
Limudanzhuu: Te ghoori guulasan kun amagina?
Limudanzhuu: Te ghoori xuusang amagina?
Gaaxijin. Tehgi jatiin zuniina juurina.
Limudanzhuu: Te ghoori nine kun amagina?
Gaaxijin. Tehgi hudi mangna. Tehgi diizhgingi ghuana.
Limudanzhuu: Te ghoori xuula amagina?
Gaaxijin. Te mula xuu ghoorila shge szungini nasiji dawana.
Limudanzhuu: Limuzhaxii Aaga da Qiyansuu Aayi ghoorila amagina?
Gaaxijin. Tehgi shge kuarigaani yiiji dawana.
Limudanzhuu: Tehgi amagina?
Gaaxijin. Tehgi sgaana. Tehgi gungun qiichai sgaana.
Limudanzhuu: Te ghoori bulai amagina?
Gaaxijin. Tehgi rmaa duuliji dawana.
Limudanzhuu: Te lalang dide kun ghoorila amagina?
Gaaxijin. Tehgi ghadari morina funana.


Here is another photograph. This is the school building. It is beside a forest. The forest is on the right. Some Mongghul children are coming out of the school building. Some of them are going into the forest.


Lesson Thirteen

(60) A: “Where is that man going?”
B: “He is going into a bookstore.”
A: “Where is that woman going?”
B: “She is going out of a bookstore.”
A: “Where is that small boy?”
B: “He is sitting beside his mother?”
A: “Where is that woman?”
B: “She is sitting beside her son.”
A: “Where are the mother and son sitting?”
B: “They are sitting on a park bench.”
A: “Where are the man and woman going?”
B: “They are walking across the street. The man and woman are walking across the street.”
A: “Where are the cats going?”
B: “They are running along the wall. The cats are running along the wall.”
A: “Where are the children?”
B: “They are jumping off a tree.”
A: “Where is the man?”
B: “He is walking between two policemen.”
A: “Where is the girl?”
B: “She is sitting near a tree.”
A: “Where is the airplane?”
B: “It is flying under the bridge.”
A: “Where is the airplane?”
B: “It is flying over the bridge.”
A: “Where is the family?”
B: “They are sitting on the grass.”
A: “Where is the man?”
B: “He is reading in his chair.”
A: “Where is the woman?”
B: “She is knitting in her chair.”

Haran-Ghurandari Kijeel

(60) A: “Te kun anji xna?”
B: “Gan tufuuguanri xna.”
A: “Te nine kun anji xna?”
B: Te tufuuguanrsa ghariji rana.”
A: “Tengi mula bulai anja?”
B: “Gan aama tadana soja.”
A: “Tengi nine kun anja?”
B: “Te bulai tadana soja.”
A: “Bulai da aama ghoorilana anji soja?”
B: “Tehgi gunyuan qiraidigu bandanggiri soja.”
A: “Te dide kun da nine kun ghoorila anji xna?”
B: “Tehgi gaidogri yiuna. Te dide kun da nine kun ghoorila gaidogri yiuna.”
A: “Te muuxi anji xna?”
B: “Tehgi te rmaari guaina. Te muuxi te rmaari guaina.”
A: “Te bulaihgi anja?”
B: “Tehgi xjuusingirsa bona.”
A: “Te kun anja?”
B: “Gan ghoori jincaani jiurani yiuna.”
A: “Te xjun anja?”
B: “Te xjuusingini szarishdini soja.”
A: “Te fiji anja?”
B: “Te kuarigaani dura nasina.”
A: “Te fiji anja?”
B: “Te kuarigaani jighadini nasina.”
A: “Te kudi anja?”
B: “Te kuarigaani jighadini soja.”
A: “Te fiiji anja?”
B: “Te kuarigaani dura nasina.”
A: “Te fiiji anja?”
B: “Te kuarigaani jighadini soja.”

Limudanzhuu: You’re working very hard, Niima. You are very busy. You are not lazy. What are you doing now?
Niima: I’m making a large bookcase. Give me that small hammer please, Limudanzhuu.
Limudanzhuu: Which small hammer? This one?
Niima: No, not that one. That is a big hammer. Please give me the small blue hammer.
Limudanzhuu: Here you are.
Niima: Thanks, Limudanzhuu.
Limudanzhuu: What are you going to do now, Niima?
Niima: I’m going to paint it.
Limudanzhuu: What color are you going to paint it?
Niima: I’m going to paint it pink.
Limudanzhuu: Pink!
Niima: This bookcase isn’t for me.
It’s for my daughter, Lamulua. Pink’s her favorite color.
Limudanzhuu: How old is Lamulua, Niima?
Niima: She’s twelve. This bookcase is for her bedroom.

Niima: What are you doing now?
Limudanzhuu: I’m herding sheep.
Niima: What are you going to do?
Limudanzhuu: I’m going to eat some mutton.
Niima: What are you doing now?
Limudanzhuu: I’m eating some mutton.
Niima: What are you going to do?
Limudanzhuu: I’m going to swim in the river.
Niima: What are you doing now?
Limudanzhuu: I’m swimming in the river.
Niima: What are you going to do?
Limudanzhuu: I’m going to ride this horse.
Niima: What are you doing now?
Limudanzhuu: I’m running across the field.
Niima: What are you going to do?
Limudanzhuu: I’m running across the field.

Niima: What are you going to do?
Limudanzhuu: I’m going to herd sheep.
Niima: This bookcase isn’t for me.
It’s for my daughter, Lamulua. Pink’s her favorite color.
Limudanzhuu: How old is Lamulua, Niima?
Niima: She’s twelve. This bookcase is for her bedroom.
Limudanzhuu. Bu nengi morini funigunii.
Niima. Qi do amaginii?
Limudanzhuu. Bu ne morini funinii.
Niima. Qi do amagugunii?
Limudanzhuu. Bu do ne ghajarini guaiji dawagunii.
Niima. Qi do amaginii?
Limudanzhuu. Bu ne ghajarini guaiji dawanii.

(63) My Bonnie
My Bonnie lies over the ocean
My Bonnie lies over the sea
My Bonnie lies over the ocean
Oh bring back my Bonnie to me

(63) Muni Sgilini Kun
Muni sgilini kun daliira yii
Muni sgilini kun hairi yii
Muni sgilini kun daliira yii
Ghog muni sgilini kunni nda dura ra

Bring back, bring back
Oh bring back my Bonnie to me, to me
Bring back, bring back
Oh bring back my Bonnie to me

Dura ra, dura ra
Ghog muni sgilini kunni nda dura ra, nda
Dura ra, dura ra
Ghog muni sgilini kunni nda dura ra

Oh blow you winds over the ocean
Oh blow you winds over the sea
Oh blow you winds over the ocean
And bring back my Bonnie to me

Ghog qini kiini daliira tiu
Ghog qini kiini haira tiu
Ghog qini kiini daliira tiu

Darang muni sgilini kunni nda dura ra
Bring back, bring back
Oh bring back my Bonnie to me, to me
Bring back, bring back
Oh bring back my Bonnie to me

Dura ra, dura ra
Ghog muni sgilini kunni nda dura ra, nda
Dura ra, dura ra
Ghog muni sgilini kunni nda dura ra

You winds have blown over the ocean
You winds have blown over the sea
You winds have blown over the ocean
And brought back my Bonnie to me

Qini kii dali jighadi tiuja
Qini kii hai jighadi tiuja
Qini kii dali jighadi tiuja
Darang muni sgilini kunni nda dura rja

Brought back, brought back
Brought back my Bonnie to me, to me
Brought back, brought back
Brought back my Bonnie to me

Dura rja, dura rja
Muni sgilini kunni nda dura rja, nda
Dura rja, dura rja
Muni sgilini kunni nda dura rja

Lesson Fourteen

(64) Niima lives in the countryside. He has a large home. The home is made of adobe. Niima and his wife,
Gaaxijin, made the home. Niima and Gaaxijin live in Shgeayili. The countryside is very beautiful in spring. There are many green crops. There are many families who live in Shgeayili. Niima and Gaaxijin are very happy to live in the countryside. Niima is a farmer and Gaaxijin is a farmer, too.

**Haran-Deerandari Kijeel**


Niima and Gaaxijin have one baby. His name is Limudanzhuu. Limudanzhuu is one year old. He is a big strong baby. Niima is twenty-five and Gaaxijin is twenty-four. They are Mongghul. Their nationality is Mongghul. Now it is morning.


(65) **Niima:** Gaaxijin, what are you going to do?

**Gaaxijin:** I am going to feed Limudanzhuu, he is hungry. He is crying.

**Niima:** What are you doing now?

**Gaaxijin:** I am feeding Limudanzhuu. He is not crying now. What are you going to do, Niima?

**Niima:** I am going to eat. I’m hungry, too.

**Gaaxijin:** What are you doing now?

**Niima:** I am eating.

**Gaaxijin:** What are you eating?

**Niima:** I am eating some mutton. The mutton is very good. I am eating some bread. It is very good. And I am drinking some tea. The tea is very good, too. It is hot tea. It is not cold tea. What are you going to do Gaaxijin?

**Gaaxijin:** I am going to wash the dishes.

**Niima:** What are you doing now?

**Gaaxijin:** I am washing the dishes. What are you going to do Niima?

**Niima:** I am going to work in the fields. Good-bye Gaaxijin.

**Gaaxijin:** Good-bye. Niima.

(65) **Niima:** Gaaxijin, qi amagila xgunii?

**Gaaxijin:** Bu Limudanzhuuni qidiila xgunii. gan luaxija. Gan ulaana.

**Niima:** Qi do amaginni?


**Niima:** Bu wuqila xgunii. Bu ya luaxija.

**Gaaxijin:** Do qi amaginni?

**Niima:** Bu rdenii.

**Gaaxijin:** Qi yan rdenii?

**Niima:** Bu huni muhamangi rdenii.
Ne huni muha hudi saina. Bu shdimaa...
Gaaxijin: Bu ne diizihgini ghugunii.
Niima: Qi do amagunii?
Gaaxijin: Bu ne diizihgini ghuani.
Niima: Qi do amagugunii?
Niima: Bu ghajarirna warila xgunii. Siida sgaya, Gaaxijin.
Gaaxijin: Siida sgaya, Niima.

(66) Now it is afternoon.
Gaaxijin: Hello, Niima. Are you tired?
Niima: No, Gaaxijin, I am not tired. Gaaxijin: How are the crops in the fields.
Niima: They are fine. They are growing well. The crops are fine. What are you going to do Gaaxijin?
Gaaxijin: I am going to cook. You are hungry, I am hungry, and Limudanzhuu is hungry, too.
Niima: What are you doing now, Gaaxijin?
Gaaxijin: I am cooking.
Niima: What are you cooking, Gaaxijin?
Gaaxijin: I am cooking some soup. It is good soup. What are you going to do Niima?
Niima: I am going to eat some soup. Gaaxijin: What are you doing now, Niima?
Niima: I am eating some soup. The soup is hot and it is good. It is mutton soup. What are you going to do with that large flower vase, Gaaxijin.

Gaaxijin: I’m going to put it on the new radio, Niima. The flowers are lovely.
Niima: Don’t do that. Give it to me.
Gaaxijin: What are you going to do with it?
Niima: I’m going to put it here, on the table.
Gaaxijin: Be careful! Don’t drop it! Don’t put it there, Niima, put it here, on this large box.
Niima: There we are! It’s a lovely large vase.
Gaaxijin: Those flowers are lovely, too. My brother gave me the flowers this morning. What are you going to do, Niima?
Niima: I’m going to take off my coat.
Gaaxijin: What are you doing now?
Niima: I’m taking off my coat.
Gaaxijin: What are you going to do?
Niima: I’m going to put on my coat.
Gaaxijin: That is a beautiful coat, Niima.
Niima: Yes, it is. My mother made this coat. She gave it to me this afternoon.
Gaaxijin: What are you doing now?
Niima: I am putting on my coat.
What are you going to do, Gaaxijin?
Gaaxijin: I am going to turn on the radio.
Niima: What are you doing now?
Gaaxijin: I’m turning the radio on. What are you going to do, Niima?
Niima: I’m going to turn the radio off!
Gaaxijin: What are you doing now?
Niima: I’m turning the radio off.
Gaaxijin: What are you going to do with those English books, Niima?
Niima: I'm going to take them to my sister, Lamulua. Lamulua is studying English.
Gaaxijin: What are you going to do with those letters?
Niima: These are my father's letters. I'm going to send them to my father.
Gaaxijin: What are you going to do with that small coat?
Niima: I am going to give it to my brother, Rashidan.
Gaaxijin: What are you going to do now, Niima?
Niima: I am going to leave.
Gaaxijin: What are you doing now, Niima?
Niima: I am leaving. I am going to take the English books to my sister. I am going to give my small coat to my brother. I am going to send the letters to my father. Good-bye,
Gaaxijin.
Gaaxijin: Good-bye, Niima.

(66) Do xruulija.
Gaaxijin: Ghai, Niima qi yidajani?
Niima: Gua, Gaaxijin, bu yidaja gua.
Gaaxijin: Ghajarirgu zhuangjaa amahginga?
Gaaxijin qi amagugunii?
Niima: Do qi amaginii? Gaaxijin.
Gaaxijin: Bu shdani.
Niima: Gaaxijin, qi yan shdaniii?
Gaaxijin: Bu kuamangi shdani. Te saini kuanga. Niima do qi yamaguguni?
Niima: Bu kuamangi wuqila xgii.
Gaaxijin: Niima, do qi amaginii?
Niima: Tehgi muni aabani xnaa. Bu tehgni aabadina kurigeexi xgi. Gaaxijin: Tengi mula deella qi amagugunii?
Niima: Bu aaghadiudina Rashidandi ghuadigii.
Gaaxijin: Niima, Do qi amagugunii?
Niima: Bu yiugunii.
Gaaxijin: Niima, do qi amaginii?
Gaaxijin, Niima, sida sgaya.

Lesson Fifteen

(67) Send your father those letters. Take your mother those flowers. Show me that picture. Give Lamulua these books. Give the children these ice-creams.

Haran-Tawundari Kijeel


(68) Niima and Gaaxijin are on a bus. They are riding a bus. The bus has many people.
Niima: Is that large brown bag very heavy?
Gaaxijin: Yes, it is. It is very heavy.
Niima: I beg your pardon?
Gaaxijin: Yes. This bag is very heavy. It is not light.

Niima: Here! Put it on this bus seat. Where are you going?
Gaaxijin: Thank you very much. This bag is very heavy! I’m going to my mother’s home.
Niima: Where is your mother’s home?
Gaaxijin: She lives in Shgeayili. My mother is a farmer.
Niima: What’s in your large bag?
Gaaxijin: I have some mutton for my mother. It is very good mutton. I have some barley flour for my father. It is new barley flour. I have some pink soap for my sister. She likes pink. Pink is her favorite color. I have a bar of chocolate for my brother. I have some cheese for my grandfather. I have two pounds of sugar for my grandmother. I have two bricks of tea for my mother’s brother. And I have some tobacco for my father. Are you hungry Niima?
Niima: Yes, I am very hungry.
Gaaxijin: Here is some mutton. Please eat this mutton.
Niima: Thank you very much. This is very good mutton!
Gaaxijin: Yes, it is. I cooked the mutton this morning.
Niima: You are a good cook!
Gaaxijin: Thank you!
Niima: How many brothers do you have?
Gaaxijin: I have one brother. He is twenty-five.
Niima: Is he married?
Gaaxijin: Yes, he is married. He has two children. They are boys.
Niima: What is his job?
Gaaxijin: He is a farmer. What is your name?
Niima: My name is Niima.
Gaaxijin: Where are you going?
Niima: I’m going to Shgeayili, too.
Gaaxijin: What is your job?
Niima: I’m a student. I study at the Huzhu Nationalities Middle School. I’m a second year student.
Gaaxijin: How old are you?
Niima: I am fourteen. What is your name?
Gaaxijin: Gaaxijin.
Niima: What is your job?
Gaaxijin: I’m a student, too. I study in Xining. I study Chinese, English, geography, chemistry, and physics. Your Mongghul clothes are very smart, Niima.
Niima: Thank you. My mother made them. Your Mongghul clothes are also very beautiful. Did your mother make them?
Gaaxijin: No. I made them.
Niima: Are you tired?
Gaaxijin: Yes, I am tired.
Niima: Please sit here.
Gaaxijin: Thank you very much! I am very tired.
Gaaxijin: Qi kidi nesiliwa?
Niima: Bu haran-deerannii. Qini nira yannii?
Gaaxijin: Gaaxijin.
Niima: Qini gunzuu yannii?
Gaaxijin: Gua. Bu yiusana.
Niima: Qi yidajani?
Gaaxijin: Ghin, bu yidaja.
Niima: Qi diriini sodii.
Gaaxijin: Qimu hudingi hgali giwa! Bu hudi yidaja.

Yes, there is. There is a tie on the chair.
*Is there a chair in the room?
Yes, there is. There is a chair in the room.
*Is there a loaf of bread on the table?
Yes, there is. There is a loaf of bread on the table.
*Is there bread in the kitchen?
Yes, there is. There is bread in the kitchen. There is a loaf of bread on the table.
*Is there a hammer on the table?
Yes, there is. There is a hammer on the table.
*Is there a box of tea in the room?
Yes, there is. There is a box of tea on the table in the room.
*Is there a vase in the room?
Yes, there is. There is a vase on the radio in the room.
*Is there a suit in the bedroom?
Yes, there is. There is a suit in the wardrobe.
*Is there tobacco in the living room?
Yes, there is. There is tobacco on the table in the living room.
*Is there chocolate in your bag?
Yes, there is chocolate in my bag.
*Is there cheese in your home?
Yes, there is cheese in my home. The cheese is in a bag on the table.
*Is there a newspaper in your home?
Yes, there is a newspaper in my home. It is on the television in the living room.
*Is there a car on the bridge?
Yes, there is a car on the bridge.
*Is there soap on the dressing table?
Yes, there is soap on the dressing table.
*Is there a bird in the tree?
Yes, there is a beautiful small blue bird in the tree.

(69) *Xrairi huuzhoggi yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Xrairi huuzhoggi yiina.
*Langhuari sun yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Langhuari sun yiina.
*Xrairi sun langhuangi yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Xrairi sun langhuangi yiina.
*Zuuhandi sun yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Zuuhandi sun yiina.
Xrairgu langhuangira sun yiina.
*Tawogra timuxiingi yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Tawogra timuxiingi yiina.
*Yiiziri liindaingi yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Yiizira liindaingi yiina.
*Ger tura yiizingi yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Ger tura yiizingi yiina.
*Xrairi dira shdimaa ahangi yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Te xrairi dira shdimaa ahangi yiina.
*Zuuhandi shdimaa yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Zuuhandi shdimaa yiina. Xrairgi shdimaa ahangi yiina.
*Xrairi chuingi yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Xrairi dira chuingi yiina.
*Ger tura nige bozi qa yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Ger turagu te xraira nige bozi qa yiina.
*Ger tura huapingi yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Ger turagu shuuyinziira huapingi yiina.
*Qaajin gershdi deelgi yiinani?
    Ghin, tiri yiina. Deel giijin xangzira deelgi yiina.
*Qaajin gershdi yan yiinani?

Ghin, tiri yiina. Qaajin gershdi yraira yan yiina.
*Qini kabogri qokiliiti yiur?
    Ghin, muni kabogri qokiliiti yiur.
*Qini kudi nailuu yiur?
    Ghin, muni gershdi nailuu yiur. Te nailuu xrair diragu kaboggirwa.
*Qini gershdi boozingi yiur?
    Ghin, muni gershdi boozingi yiur. Te qaajin gershdi densirwa.
*Kuarigaa dira qichaangi yiinani?
    Ghin, kuarigaa dira qichaangi yiina.
*Deel giijin xrairi fiizog yiinani?
    Ghin, deel giijin xrairi fiizog yiina.
*Xjuziri xuungi yiinani?
    Ghin, Xjuziri saighan mula tigii xuungi yiina.

Lesson Sixteen

(70) THE SINGING DOG
This is Shgeayili many years ago. A mother and her son live here. They have no money. They are very poor. They live in the countryside. Their home is a brown adobe house. They have no cattle, no yaks, no sheep, no goats, no camels, and no fields. They have no animals. They eat roots.

Haran-Jirighundari Kijeel

(70) NE QORAJIN NUHUI
Today the mother says to Niima, her son, “Go look for a job. We have no money. If we have no money, we have no food.” That day a rich man wanted to move his animals to a new grassland. He asked Niima to help him. Niima said yes. Niima is helping the rich man move his animals to a new grassland. Niima is riding a large white horse. The rich man is riding a large black horse. They are working, they are not lazy. They are very busy.


They have finished moving the animals. Now, the rich man will give Niima some money. The rich man has a dog. The rich man says, “Dog, do not talk.” The rich man is gone. Niima and the dog are alone in the rich man’s large home. The dog is singing a song. “Give me some food. I will tell you a secret. Give me some food. I will tell you a secret.”


Niima is surprised. The dog can speak Mongghul! Niima gives some food to the dog. The dog is hungry. The dog is eating the food. The bread is very good. The dog is happy.


The dog tells Niima, “Ask the rich man for me. Do not ask for money.” The rich man returns. He asks Niima, “What do you want?” Niima says, “I want the dog. I do not want money.” The rich man is surprised. He gives Niima the dog.


Niima is at home. His mother is surprised. “Why do you have a dog? We cannot eat the dog!” Niima’s mother is angry. She is not happy.
Later the dog becomes a beautiful girl. She is a good cook. Niima marries her. They find much money. Their life is very good. They have many children. Niima’s mother is happy. She is now a grandmother. Their home is very beautiful and they have many animals and many fields.


(71) **THE FROG CHILD**

Niima and Lamulua are old. They have no children. They are sad, they are not happy. Niima is angry at Lamulua because they have no children. Lamulua is angry at Niima because they have no children.

(71) **TE BAWOG BULAI**


Today Niima and Lamulua go to Kumbum. They pray for a child. One year later Lamulua’s thumb becomes very big. Niima takes his long Tibetan knife. The Tibetan knife is sharp. It is not blunt. He cuts Lamulua’s thumb. A frog jumps out. It is not a child. It is a frog. Niima and Lamulua are surprised. They want a child. They do not want a frog. The frog says, “Lamulua and Niima, you are my mother and father. I am your son.” Niima and Lamulua are surprised. The frog can speak Mongghul!


The frog is now sixteen. The frog wants to marry a beautiful girl. Niima and Lamulua say, “You are a frog. You are a good frog. But no girl wants to marry a frog.” The frog son says, “I will marry a beautiful girl.”

The frog is going to a rich man's home. He says very loudly, "I want to marry your oldest daughter." The rich man laughs. "You are a frog. You are not a man. You cannot marry my beautiful daughter." The frog says, "If you do not give me your daughter I will hop." The rich man says, "You may hop. I will not give you my beautiful daughter." The frog is hopping. The earth is shaking. All the people are afraid. The rich man says, "You may marry my daughter. Please stop hopping." The frog stops hopping.


Lesson Seventeen

The rich man's beautiful daughter is angry. She does not want to marry a frog. She tries to kill the frog. The frog is angry, too. He says, "You are not a good woman. I do not want to marry you." The frog goes to the rich man's home. The frog says, "Give me your second daughter." The rich man is angry. He says, "I gave you my oldest daughter. You do not want to marry her. Now, you want to marry my second daughter. You are a bad frog." The frog says, "If you do not give me your second daughter, I will weep." The rich man says, "You may weep. I don't care. You may not marry my beautiful second daughter."

The frog weeps. There is much water. All the people are very afraid. The rich man says, "You may marry my beautiful daughter. Please stop weeping." The second daughter loves the frog. They marry. Lamulua and Niima are very happy.

Haran-Duluundari Kijeel

One night the frog takes off his frog clothes. He is a handsome young Mongghul man! The second daughter is very surprised! She is very happy!

One day there is a horserace. The frog’s wife wants to go. The frog says, “You may go to the horserace. I will stay at home. I will not go to the horserace.” The frog’s wife goes to the horserace. A young handsome Mongghul man wins the horserace. His horse runs very fast. His horse is a beautiful white horse. The frog’s wife does not know who the rider is. She thinks he looks like her husband. She goes home. She says, “Today, there was a horserace. The winner was a handsome young Mongghul man. I do not know him. But he looks like you.” The frog said nothing.

The next day the wife says, “I am going to the horserace.” The frog says, “I will stay home. I will not go to the horserace.”

The frog’s wife does not go to the horserace. She is looking through a window. The frog is taking off his frog clothes. He is a handsome young Mongghul man. He rides his horse. He leaves. The wife is not happy. She burns the frog’s clothes.

The handsome young Mongghul man comes home. He is not happy. His frog clothes are burned. He is ill. He...
says, "I must have my frog clothes. If I do not have frog clothes, I will die." The frog's wife is very sad. She weeps. She holds her husband. But the handsome young Mongghul man cannot live. He does not have his frog clothes. He dies. Niima and Lamulua are very sad. The wife is very sad, too. They all weep.


(72) Gaaxijin: Can you make some good milk tea, Niima?
Niima: Yes, of course I can, Gaaxijin. Is there any water in this kettle?
Gaaxijin: Yes, there is water in the kettle. The brick of tea is on the table, dear, it is behind the teapot. Can you see it?
Niima: I can see the large teapot, but I can't see the tea.
Gaaxijin: There it is! It's in front of you!
Niima: Ah yes, I can see it now. Where are the teacups?
Gaaxijin: There are some in the cupboard and there are some on the table. Can you find them?

Niima: Yes, here they are. These teacups are very beautiful. They have dragons on them. Who gave us these teacups?
Gaaxijin: My mother gave us these teacups. When we married, my mother gave them to us. Hurry up, Niima, the kettle is boiling!

(73) a. Are there any loaves of bread on the table? Yes, there are. There are two loaves of bread on the table.
b. Is there any bread on the table? Yes, there is. There are two loaves of bread on the table.
c. Are there any hammers behind that box? Yes, there are. There are two hammers behind that box.
d. Is there milk in front of the door? Yes, there is. There is milk in front of the door. There are two bottles of milk in front of the door.
e. Are there any bottles of milk in front of the door? Yes, there are. There are two bottles of milk in front of the door.
f. Is there any milk in our home? Yes, there is. There is much good milk in our home. The milk is on the table. The milk is in a large pot.
g. Is there any soap on the sideboard? Yes, there is. There is soap on the sideboard. There are three bars of soap on the sideboard. The soap smells nice.
h. Are there any newspapers behind that beautiful small blue vase? Yes, there are. There are three newspapers behind that vase. One is a Tibetan newspaper. One is an English newspaper. And one is a Chinese newspaper.
i. Is there any water in those glasses? Yes, there is. There is water in those two glasses. The two glasses are on the table.
j. Is there any tea in those nice dragon teacups? Yes, there is. There is tea in these two cups.
k. Is there any chocolate behind that book? Yes, there is. There are two bars of chocolate behind that book.
l. Are there any chocolate bars behind that book? Yes, there are two.

Haran-Niimandari Kijeel

(73) a. Xrairi shdimaa yiina?
Ghin yiina. Xrairi ghoori shdimaa yiina.
b. Xrairi shdimaa yiina? Ghin, yiina.
Xrairi ghoori shdimaa yiina.
c. Te huuzi huina chuimangi yiina?
Ghin, yiina. Tengi huuzi huina ghoori chui yiina.
e. Ude muxi langhuari zhuanglasan sunma yiina? Ghin, yiina. Ude muxi ghoori langhua sun yiina.
g. Te ban tada fiizogmangi yiina?
Ghin, yiina. Te ban tada fiizog yiina. Te ban tada ghuran fiizog yiina. Te fiizogni wuidogni saini.
h. Tengi saighan mula yiilan huapin huina boozi ahangi yiina?
i. Te caagangzirhang szuma yiina?
Ghin, yiina. Te ghoori caagangzirni szu yiina. Te ghoori caagangziri xrai dirawa.
j. Te liu bosan saighan qa caagangziri qama yiina?
Ghin, yiina. Te ghoori caagangziri qa yiina.
k. Tengi pujiu huina qokiliitimangi yiina?
Ghin, yiina. Tenga pujiu huina ghoori qokiliiti yiina.
l. Tengi pujiu huina qokiliitimangi yiina?
Ghin, ghoori yiina.
(74) Niima: Can you please come here a minute, Limudanzhuu?
Limudanzhuu: Yes, sir. I can.
Niima: Where’s Miss Gaaxijin?
Limudanzhuu: She’s next door. She’s in her office, Mr. Niima. She is typing. She is very busy.
Niima: Can she type this short letter for me? Please ask her.
Limudanzhuu: Yes, Mr. Niima.---Can you type this letter for the boss please, Miss Gaaxijin?
Gaaxijin: Yes, of course I can.
Limudanzhuu: Here you are.
Gaaxijin: Thank you,
Limudanzhuu.---Limudanzhuu!
Limudanzhuu: Yes? What’s the matter?
Gaaxijin: I can’t type this letter. I can’t read it! Mr. Niima’s handwriting is terrible!

(75) Niima: I can put my hat on but I can’t put my Mongghul robe on.
a. Can he put his hat on? Yes, he can.
He can put his hat on.
b. Can he put his Mongghul robe on? No, he can’t. He can’t put it on.

(76) Niima: I can see that airplane but I can’t see a bird.
a. Can Niima see an airplane? Yes, he can see it. He can see the airplane.
Niima can see the airplane.
b. Can Niima see the bird? No, Niima can’t see a bird.

(77) Niima: I can paint this bookcase but I can’t paint this room.
a. Can he paint that/ this/ the/ a bookcase? Yes, he can.
b. Can he paint the/ this/ that/ a room? No, he can’t paint it.

(78) Niima: I can paint this bookcase but I can’t paint this room.
a. Can he paint that/ this/ the/ a bookcase? Yes, he can.
b. Can he paint the/ this/ that/ a room? No, he can’t paint it.
Lesson Nineteen

(81) KUMBAYA
Kumbaya, my Lord, kumbaya.
Kumbaya, my Lord, kumbaya.
Kumbaya, my Lord, kumbaya,
Oh, Lord, kumbaya.

Haran-Shzindari Kijeel

(81) KUNBAYAA
Kunbayaa, muni shgeda, kunbayaa,
kunbayaa, muni shgeda, kunbayaa,
kunbayaa, muni shgeda, kunbayaa,
Ghog, Shgeda, kunbayaa.

Someone’s crying, Lord, kumbaya.
Someone’s crying, Lord, kumbaya.
Someone’s crying, Lord, kumbaya.
Oh, Lord, kumbaya.

Ken kengi ulaana, shgeda, kunbayaa.
Ken kengi ulaana, shgeda, kunbayaa,
Ken kengi ulaana, shgeda, kunbayaa,
Ghog, Shgeda, kunbayaa.

Someone’s praying, Lord, kumbaya,
Someone’s praying, Lord, kumbaya,
Someone’s praying, Lord, kumbaya,
Oh, Lord, kumbaya.

Ken kengi yangjilana, shgeda,
kunbayaa,
Ken kengi yangjilana, shgeda, kunbayaa.
Ken kengi yangjilana, shgeda, kunbayaa.
Ghog. Shgeda, kunbayaa.

Someone’s singing, Lord, kumbaya.
Someone’s singing, Lord, kumbaya.
Oh, Lord, kumbaya.

Ken kengi qorana, shgeda, kunbayaa.
Ken kengi qorana, shgeda, kunbayaa.
kn kengi qorana, shgeda, kunbayaa.
Ghog. Shgeda kunbayaa.

Kumbaya, my Lord, kumbaya.
Kumbaya, my Lord, kumbaya.
Oh, Lord, kumbaya.

Kunbayaa, muni shgeda, kunbayaa.
Kunbayaa, muni shgeda, kunbayaa.
Kunbayaa, muni shgeda, kunbayaa.
Ghog. Shgeda, kunbayaa.

(82) Write the sentences correctly.

a. She/ her/ home is Shgeayili.
b. She lives/ home/ in Shgeayili.
c. She/ her father is a herdsman.
d. She/ her has five children.
e. She/ her studies at Huzhu Nationalities Middle School?
f. He/ his home is Sunduu.
g. He/ she/ his/ they/ ours home is Qaaghuali.
h. He/ boy/ her/ man/ him/ his is not lazy.
i. He/ her/ they/ we/ my/ him has two brothers.
j. He/ him/ her/ we is not lazy.
k. They/ she/ he/ her/ him/ us have two children.

l. He has/ have two goats.
m. She has/ have no children.
n. My brother has/ have one child.
o. He is tired too/ to/ two.
p. He has too/ two/ to brothers.

(82) Ugohgini duilasangi jiuri.
a. Te/ teni/ kudini Shgeayilidiwa.
b. Te soja/ kudini Shgeayilidiwa.
c. Te/ teni aabani huni dilajinga.
d. Te/ tendi tawun bulai yiina.
e. Te/ te Huzhuu Mongghulxan Miinzuu Zhunxuri pijuu surinani?
f. Gan/ ganni kudi Sunduuwa.
g. Gan/ te/ ganni/ tehgi/ budahgini kudi Qaaghualidiwa.
h. Gan/ bulai/ teni/ kun/ gandi/ ganni lan gua.
i. Gan/ teni/ tehgi/ budahgi/ muni/ gandi ghoori aaghadiu yiina.
j. Gan/ gandi/ tendi/ ndahgi lan gua.
k. Tehgi/ te/ /gan/ gandi/ tendi ndahgi bulai ghoori yiina.
l. Gandi yiina/ yiina ghoori yimaa.
m. Tendi yiina/ yiina bulai gua.
n. Muni aaghadiudi yiina/ yiina nige bulai.
o. Gan yidaja/ hudi/ ghoori.

(83) Correct these sentences.
a. There are bread on the table.
b. There are any hammers behind that box.
c. There are milk in front of the door.
d. There are soap on the sideboard.
e. There are newspaper behind that vase.
f. There are water in those glasses.
g. There are tea in those tea cups.
h. There is teacups in front of that kettle.
There are chocolate behind that book.
There are teapot in the cupboard.
There are car in front of the building.
There are coffee on the table.
There is coffee in the table.
There is cars in front of that building.
There is teapots in the cupboard.
There are chocolate bars in the book.
There are coffee on the table.
There is coffee in the table.
There is cars in front of that building.
There are teapots in the cupboard.
There are milk on front of the door.
There are two milk bottle in front of the door.
There is hammers behind that box.

(83) Ne ughogini duilasandiji jiuri.

a. Xrai dira shdimaa nige ahangi yiina.
b. Tengi huuzi huina ahangi chui yiina yiiguteo.
c. Ude muxi sun ahangi nigiiyi yiina.
d. Banbanzi dira fiizog ahangi nigiiyi yiina.
e. Tengi huapin huina boozi ahangi nigiiyi yiina.
f. Te cabiizihgini tura szu luanmama.
g. Te caagangzihgini turani qa yiina.
h. Tengi tiihu muxi caagangzi yiina ahangi nijeeri yiina.
i. Tengi pujiu huina qokiliiti ahangi nigiiyi yiina.
j. Wanjaaguiri tiihu ahangi kidi yiina.
k. Ger muxi qiichai ahangi kidi yiina.
l. Xrai dira kafi ahangi nigiiyi yiina.
m. Xrairi kafi ahangi kidi yiina.
n. Tengi ger muxi qiichi ahangi kidi yiina.
o. Wanjaaguiri tiihu ahangi kidi yiina.
p. Pujuri qokiliitima yiina.
q. Tiihu muxi cabiizi ahangi kidi yiina.
r. Te caagangziri qa luan nigiiyi yiina.
s. Te cabiiziri szu luanmama nigiiyi yiina.
t. Te huapinhgina huinani boozi ahangi nigiiyi yiina.
u. Te banbanzi dira fiizog luanmama nigiiyi yiina.
v. Ude muxi sun ahangi nigiiyi yiina.
w. Ude muxi ghoori langhua sun nigiiyi yiina.
x. Tengi huuzi huina chui luanmama nigiiyi yiina.

(84) Choose the correct answer.
a. They’re/ their/ there are two students in this room.
b. They’re/ their/ there Mongghul farmers.
c. They’re/ their/ there children are boys.
d. They’re/ their/ there not students, they are babies.
e. They’re/ their/ there home is Shgeayili.
f. They’re/ their/ there is a box on the table.
g. They’re/ their/ there boxes are on the table.
h. They’re/ their/ there box is blue.
i. They’re/ their/ there not busy.
j. They’re/ their/ there English book is on they’re/ their/ there chair.
(84) Duilasanni lighaji jiuri.
a. Tehgi/ tehginin ne ger tura ghoori xuusang yiina.
b. Tehgi/ tehginin tirii Mongghul larihgaqi.
c. Tehgi/ tehginin tirigii bulaihgi kuu bulaiwa.
d. Tehgi/ tehginin tirii xuusang puja, tehgi mula bulaiwa.
e. Tehgi/ tehginin tirii kudini Shgeayiliwa.
f. Tehgi/ tehginin xrai dira huuzingi yiina.
g. Tehgi/ tehginin xrai dira huuzimangi yiina.
h. Tehgi/ tehginin tirii huuzi yilanga.
i. Tehgi/ tehginin tirii mang gua.
j. Tehgi/ tehginin tirii Yinyii pujiu tehgi/ tehginin tirii yiizi.

f. Ganni aamada aabadini saighan tigii gunzuungi yiina/ yii.
g. Ganni ghoori jang musi yiina/ yii.
h. Tehgidi nige jige yiina/ yii.
i. Tehgidi ghoori jang huni yiina/ yii.
j. Tendi shge tigii qighaan yimaangi yiina/ yii.

(85) Choose “has” or “have.”
a. He has/ have two children.
b. He has/ have one child.
c. They has/ have two children.
d. They has/ have one child.
e. His mother has/ have a good job.
f. His mother and father has/ have good jobs.
g. He has/ have two hundred yaks.
h. They has/ have one donkey.
i. They has/ have two hundred sheep.
j. She has/ have one large white goat.

(85) Ne “yiina” da “yiini” lighaji yangla.
a. Gandi bulai ghoori yiina/ yii.
b. Tehgidi bulai nige yiina/ yii.
c. Tehgidi bulai ghoori yiina/ yii.
d. Tehgidi bulai nige yiina/ yii.
e. Ganni aamadini saighan tigii gunzuungi yiina/ yii.

(86) *He is taking his book.---He can take his book.
*She is putting on her coat.--She can put on her coat.

Change the following sentences in the same way:
a. They are herding these sheep.
b. She is making bread.
c. You are running across the field.
d. You are riding a large white horse.
e. We are swimming across the river now.
f. We are making milk tea.
g. He is reading that English book.
h. I am jumping off this camel.
i. They are cooking some mutton soup.
j. Those women are washing the dishes.
k. Niima and Gaaxijin are making a new adobe home.
l. Gaaxijin is giving Limudanzhuu some milk.
m. Gaaxijin is cooking dinner.
n. Those Mongghul students are studying math.
o. You are studying English at Huzhu Nationalities Middle School.
p. We are eating barley flour, cheese, and sugar now.
q. He is eating some good hot mutton soup.

(86) *Gan ganni pujiuna warina.---Gan jina pujiuna wari shdanna.
*Te jina deelna musina.---Te jina deelna musi shdanna.

**Duragu ughgini nige sanbadiji jiuri:**
a. Tehgi ne hunihgini dilana.
b. Te shdimaa xranka.
c. Qi ne ghajari gua "jiai" dawana.
d. Qi shge qighaan tigii moriging funaja.
e. Budahgi do te szuni do hunbayi dawani.
f. Budahgi sundii qa shdani.
g. Gan tengi Yinyii pujiuni musina.
h. Bu nengi timeenrsa bonii.
i. Tehgi huni muha kua shdana.
j. Te nine kunhgi diizihgini ghuana.
k. Niima da Gaaxijin ghoorila xnni xruu rmaangi nidina.
l. Gaaxijin Limudanzhudi sunmangi ghuana.
m. Gaaxijin suanini shdana.
n. Te Mongghul xuusanghgi fuxuu surina.
o. Qi Huzhhu Mongghulxan Miinzuu Zhunxuuri Yinyii surina.
q. Gan saighan halang tigii huni kuamangi wuqina.

**Lesson Twenty**

(87) Correct these sentences.
a. Is there any passport on that table?
b. Is there any milks in that bottle?
c. Is there any spoons on that plates?
d. Is there a ties on that chairs?
e. Is there any loaf of bread on that table?
f. Is there a hammers on that tables?
g. Is there any teas on that tables?
h. Is there any vases on that television?
i. Is there a suit on that wardrobe?
j. Is there any tobaccos on that tables?

**Hurindari Kijeel**

(87) Ne ughgini duilasandiji jiuri.
a. Te xrairi huuzhormangi yjinani?
b. Tengi langhua tura sunmangi luanna nijeeri yjinani?
c. Tengi tawogri timuxiimangi luhanan nijeeri yjinani?
d. Tengi yiiziri liindaingi luhanan yjinani?
e. Tengi xrairi shdimaa ahangi nigiiji yjinani?
f. Tengi xrairi chui ahangi nijeeri yjinani?
g. Tengi xraira qamangi ahangi nigiiji yjinani?
h. Tengi shuuyinzi dira huapin ahangi nijeeri yjinani?
i. Tengi deel giijin dira deelngi yjinani?
j. Tengi xraihgira dira yan ahangi nigiiji yjinani?

(88) Mrs. Gaaxijin: Do you like milk tea, Mrs. Lamulua?
Mrs. Lamulua: Yes, I do.
Mrs. Gaaxijin: Do you want a bowl?
Mrs. Lamulua: Yes, please, Mrs. Gaaxijin.
Mrs. Gaaxijin: Do you want a large bowl, or a small bowl?
Mrs. Lamulua: I want a large bowl. I am very thirsty.
Mrs. Gaaxijin: Do you want any cheese?
Mrs. Lamulua: Yes, please. I like cheese.
Mrs. Gaaxijin: Do you want any butter?
Mrs. Lamulua: Yes, please. I like butter, too.
Mrs. Gaaxijin: Do you want any salt?
Mrs. Lamulua: No, thank you. I don’t like salt in my milk tea. I like milk tea with no salt.
Mrs. Gaaxijin: Do you like barley flour with butter, sugar, and cheese?
Mrs. Lamulua: Yes, I do.
Mrs. Gaaxijin: Do you want some?
Mrs. Lamulua: Yes, please.

(88) Gaaxijin Aayi: Lamulua Aayi, qi sundii qa duralani?
Lamulua Aayi: Ghin, bu duralani.
Gaaxijin Aayi: Qi yighaangi hgilegu niu?
Lamulua Aayi: Ghin, Gaaxijin aayi nda ghua.
Gaaxijin Aayi: Qi shge yighaangi hgilegu niu mula yighaangi hgilegunii?
Gaaxijin Aayi: Qi nailuuumangi hgilegu niu?
Lamulua Aayi: Ghin, hgilegui. Bu nailuu duralani.
Gaaxijin Aayi: Qi qighaan tuusimangi hgilegu niu?
Lamulua Aayi: Ghin hgilegui. Bu qighaan tuusini ya duralani.
Gaaxijin aayi: Qi dashizimangi hgilegu niu?

Gaaxijin Aayi: Qi sbii ghuriliri qighaan tuusi, garaa da nailuu yiiha duralani?
Lamulua Aayi: Ghin, bu duralani.
Gaaxijin Aayi: Qi nigiiji hgilegu niu?
Lamulua Aayi: Ghin, ghua.

(89) Niima: Do you like mutton soup?
Limudanzhuu: Yes, I do. I like mutton soup.
Niima: Do you want some mutton soup?
Limudanzhuu: Yes, I do. I want some mutton soup.

(89) Niima: Qi huni muha kua duralani?
Limudanzhuu: Ghin, bu duralani. Bu huni muha kua duralani.
Niima: Qi huni muha kuamangi hgilegu niu?
Limudanzhuu: Ghin, bu hgilegui. Bu huni muha kuamangi hgilegui.

(90) Niima: Do you like my new Mongghul robe?
Limudanzhuu: Yes, I do. It is very smart. Who made it?
Niima: My mother made it. I like it, too.
Limudanzhuu: Yes, it is very beautiful. Do you like my new Mongghul hat?
Niima: Yes, I do. It is very beautiful. Did your mother make it?
Limudanzhuu: No, my mother did not make this hat, my wife made this hat.

(90) Niima: Qi muni xni Mongghul snbaini duralani?
Limudanzhuu: Ghin, bu duralani. Teni rjegundi hudi saighanna. Ken teni yiija? 
Niima: Ndani aama yiija. Bu teni ya duralani. 

Limudanzhuu: Ghin, te hudi saighanna. Qi muni xni Mongghul malighaani duralani? 
Niima: Ghin, bu duralani. Te hudi saighanna. Qini aama yiusananii? 
Limudanzhuu: Gua. muni aama neni yiija gua, muni beeri ne malighaani yiija. 

(91) a. Niima: Do you like riding horses, Limudanzhuu? 
Limudanzhuu: Yes. I do. 
Niima: Do you want to ride horses? 
Limudanzhuu: Yes, I do. 
Niima: Do you want to ride this black horse? 
Limudanzhuu: No, I don’t. I want to ride that white horse. That white horse is very large. It can run very fast. This black horse is very old and very slow. 

(91) a. Niima: Limudanzhuu, qi mori funigu duralani? 
Limudanzhuu: Ghin, bu duralani. 
Niima: Qi mori funigu niu? 
Limudanzhuu: Ghin, bu funigunii. 
Niima: Qi nengi hara morini funigu duralani? 

b. Niima: Do you want to study English now? 

Limudanzhuu: No, I don’t. Now, I want to sleep. 

b. Niima: Qi do Yinyii surigu duralani? 

c. Niima: Do you want to swim, now? 
Limudanzhuu: No, I don’t. Now, I want to study English. 

c. Niima: Qi do joxidagu duralani? 
Limudanzhuu: Aghin, bu yii duralani. Do, bu Yinyii surigunii. 

d. Niima: Do you like apples? 
Limudanzhuu: No, I don’t’ like apples. I like bananas. 

d. Niima: Qi piingumangi duralani? 

e. Niima: Do you like butter? 
Limudanzhuu: No, I don’t like butter. I like cheese. 

e. Niima: Qi qighaan tuusi duralani? 

f. Niima: Do you like coffee? 
Limudanzhuu: No, I don’t like coffee. I like milk tea with salt and cheese. 

f. Niima: Qi kafii duralani? 
g. Niima: Do you like beer?
Limudanzhuu: No. I don’t like beer. I like wine.

h. Niima: Do you like ice cream?
Limudanzhuu: No, I don’t like ice cream. It is too cold.

i. Niima: Do you like peaches?
Limudanzhuu: No, I don’t like peaches, I like pears.

j. Niima: Limudanzhuu, do you like grapes?
Limudanzhuu: No, I do not like grapes, I like oranges. I do not want any grapes. I want some oranges.

k. Is this your umbrella?
No. It isn’t my umbrella. It’s your umbrella.

m. This is Miss Parker. French/
(Swedish)
Is she a French student or a Swedish student?
She isn’t a Swedish student. She’s a French student.
n. This is a robe. Mongghul/ (Tibetan)
Is it a Mongghul robe or a Tibetan robe?
It isn’t a Mongghul robe. It’s a Tibetan robe.

n. Ne snbaingiwa. Mongghul/ (Tiwari)
Te Mongghul snbaingani Tiwari snbainga?
Te Mongghul snbaingi puja. Te Tiwari snbainga.

o. a. This is Britt. Swedish/ (German)
b. This is a yak. black/ (white)
c. This is Hans. (German)/ Italian
d. This is Stella. Spanish/ (Italian)
e. This is Niima. Mongghul/
(Tibetan)
f. This is Paul. Brazilian/ (Greek)
g. This is a Fiat. (Italian)/ English
h. This is Baatar. Tibetan/
(Mongolian)
i. This is a Volkswagen. (German)/
French
j. This is a tent. big/ (small)
k. This is a Ford. English/ (American)

p. typist
What’s her job? Is she a typist? Yes. she is.

p. pujiu pughajin

engineer
What’s his job? Is he an engineer?
Yes, he is.

Gunchinsi

Now do the following in the same way.

a. policeman
b. policewoman
c. taxi-driver
d. air-hostess
e. postman
f. nurse
g. mechanic
h. barber
i. housewife
j. milkman

Duraguni nige sanbala jiuri.

a. dide jincaa
b. nine jincaa
c. chuzuu-szi
d. fiijiri warijin nine kun
e. xn kurigeeten kun
f. huusi
g. timurima szajin
h. rawaa qirighajin
i. kudina larihga warijin beeri
j. sun sajin kun

q. Mrs Davis/ well
Look at Mrs Davis. She’s very well.
Now do the following in the same way.

a. man/ fat Look at that...
b. woman/ thin
c. policeman/ tall
d. policewoman/ short
e. mechanic/ dirty
f. nurse/ clean
g. Mr Ford/ hot
h. Mrs Ford/ cold
i. milkman/ old
j. air-hostess/ young
k. barber/ busy
l. taxi-driver/ lazy

q. Daiwuisi Aayi/ saina
Daiwuisi Aayini rje. Te hudi saina.

Dura “ni,” “ganni,” “tenihgi” ni nige sanbala yanglaji jiuri.

a. dide kun/ tarighuan teni rje...
b. nine kun/ hgala
c. dide jinca/ duri
d. nine jinca/ hguari
e. timurima szajin/ zang
f. huusil arin
g. Foriidi Aaga/ halang
h. Foriidi Aayi/ kuiden
i. sun sajin kun/ shduli
j. fiijirgu nine kun/ lalang
k. rawaa qirighajin/ mang
l. chuzu-szi/ lan

r. shirt/ Tim
Whose is this shirt? It’s Tim’s. It’s his shirt.

Now do the following in the same way using: “s,” “his,” “her.”

a. handbag/ Stella
b. car/ Paul
c. coat/ Miss Parker
d. umbrella/ Mr Ford
e. pen/ my son
f. dress/ my daughter
g. suit/ my father
h. skirt/ my mother
i. blouse/ my sister
j. tie/ my brother
k. pen/ Alice
l. qunzi/ Tim
Ne kennis qunziwa? Te Tiimna. Te ganni qunzina.

Lesson Twenty-Two

s. Mr Ford/ umbrella/ black
What color’s Mr Ford’s umbrella? His umbrella’s black.

Now do the following in the same way using: “s,” “his,” “her.”

a. Paul/ car/ blue
b. Tim/ shirt/ white
c. Miss Parker/ coat/ grey
d. Mrs White/ carpet/ red
e. Frank/ tie/ orange
f. Mr Ford/ hat/ grey and black
g. Mrs Davis/ dog/ brown and white
h. Hans/ pen/ green
i. Dimitri/ suit/ grey
j. Stella/ pencil/ blue
Hurin-Ghooridari Kijeel

s. Foriidi Aaga/ yuusan/ hara
Foriidi Aagani yuusanni amahgii udogwa? Ganni yuusanni haranga.

Dura “ni,” “ganni,” “tenihgi” ni nige sanbala yanglaji yiuri.

a. Poog/ qiichai/ yiilan
b. Tiim/ hindaaizi/ qighaan
c. Paariki Aagu/ deel/ kugua
d. Wuaiti Aayi/ zitan/ fulaan
e. Furanki/ liindai/ xrandog
f. Foriidi Aaga/ malighaa/ kugua da hara
g. Daiwuisi Aayi/ nuhui/ buruun da qighaan
h. Hansi/ gangbii/ nughuun
i. Dimiiiri/ deel/ kugua
j. Stailaa/ qanbii/ yiilan
k. Burititi/ kabog/ buruun
l. Aliii/ quunzi/ xra
m. books/ red

What color are your books? Our books are red.

Now do the following in the same way using “our.”

a. Shirts/ white
b. coats/ grey
c. tickets/ yellow
d. suits/ blue
e. hats/ black and grey
f. passports/ green
g. umbrellas/ black
h. handbags/ white
i. ties/ orange
j. dogs/ brown and white
k. pens/ blue
l. cars/ red
m. dresses/ green
n. blouses/ yellow

Dura “budahgi” ni nige sanbala yanglaji jiuri.
a. hindaaizi/ qighaan
b. deelhgi/ kugua
c. peohgi/ xra
d. deelhgi/ yiilan
e. malighaahti/ hara da kugua
f. huuzhoghgi/ nughuun
g. yuusanhgi/ hara
h. kaboghgi/ qighaan
i. liindaihgi/ xrandog
j. nuxuighgi/ buruun da qighaan
k. gangbiihgi/ yiilan
l. qiichaihgi/ fulaan
m. deelhgi/ nughuun
n. deelhgi/ xra
u. (mechanics)/ clerks

What are their jobs? Are they mechanics or clerks? They aren’t mechanics. They’re clerks.

Now do these in the same way.
a. (typists)/ nurses
b. (postmen)/ milkmen
c. (policewomen)/ air-hostesses
d. (customs officers)/ engineers
e. (barbers)/ taxi-drivers
f. (engineers)/ teachers
g. (policewomen)/ housewives
h. (milkmen)/ barbers
i. (policemen)/ postmen
j. (nurses)/ typists
u. (timurima szajinhgi)/ warijinhgi
Tehgini gunzuuni yana? Tehgi
timurima szajinhgiwani warijinhgiwa?
Tehgi timurima szajinhgi puja. Tehgi
warijinhgiwa.

**Duraguni nige sanbala jiuri.**

a. (pujiu pughajinhgi)/ huusihgi
b. (xn kurigeejinzhgi)/ sun sajin kunhgi
c. (nine jincaahghi)/ fiijirgu nine
kunhgi
d. (haiguanyanhgi)/ gunchinsihgi
e. (rawaa qirighajinhgi)/ chuzuu-
szihgi
f. (gunchinsihgi)/ losihi

g. (nine jincaahgih)/ kudi larihga wariijnine
kunhgi
h. (sun sajin kunhgi)/ rawaa qirighajin
kunhgi
i. (dide jincaahghi)/ xn kurigeejin
kunhgi
j. (huusihgi)/ puju pughajinhgi

D. his shoes/ (dirty)/ clean
Are his shoes dirty or clean?
They’re not dirty. They’re clean.

**Now do these in the same way.**

a. the children/ (tired)/ thirsty
b. the postmen/ (cold)/ hot
c. the barbers/ (thin)/ fat
d. the shoes/ (small)/ big
e. the shops/ (shut)/ open
f. his cases/ (heavy)/ light
g. grandmother and grandfather/
(young)/ old
h. their hats/ (old)/ new
i. the policemen/ (short)/ tall
j. his trousers/ (short)/ long

v. Ganni haihgini/ (zangna)/ arin
Ganni haihgini arinnani zangna?
Tehgi zangna. Tehgi arin gua.

**Duraguni nige sanbala jiuri.**

a. ne bulaihgi/ (yidaja)/ dasija
b. ne xn kurigeejin kunhgi/ (dari)/
halang
c. ne rawaa qirighajinhgih/ (hgalah)/
tarighuan
d. ne hahigih/ (mula)/ shge
e. ne shangdenhgi/ (ha)/ nii
f. ganni ciboghghi/ (kundin)/ kunguan
g. aadee da aaneel/ (lalang)/ shdulli
h. tehgini malighaahghi/ (hojira)/ xn
i. te jincaahghi/ (hguari)/ duri
j. ganni muladiilihi/ (hguari)/ shduri

v. (this blue)/ that red
Give me a book please.
Which one? This blue one?
No, not this blue one. That red one.
Here you are.
Thank you.

w. (ne yilan)/ tengi fulaan.
Nda pujiungi ghua.
Alinga? Yilan nengama?
Puja, yilan nengi puja. Fulaan
tengawa.
Ma ghuya.
Qimu hgali giwa.

**Now do these in the same way.**

a. cup/ (this dirty)/ that clean
b. glass/ (this empty)/ that full
c. bottle/ (this large)/ that small
d. box/ (this big)/ that small
e. tin/ (this new)/ that old
f. knife/ (this sharp)/ that blunt
g. spoon/ (this new)/ that old
h. fork/ (this large)/ that small

**Duraguni nige sanbala jiuri.**

a. caagangzi/ (nengi zang)/ tengi arin
b. cabizii/ (nengi huusin)/ tengi diuri
c. langhua/ (nengi shge)/ tengi mula
Lesson Twenty-Three

x. glasses/ on the shelf
Give me some glasses please.
Which ones? These?
No, not those. The ones on the shelf.

Now do these in the same way.

a. pens/ on the desk
b. ties/ on the chair
c. spoons/ on the table
d. plates/ on the sideboard
e. cigarettes/ on the television
f. boxes/ on the floor
g. bottles/ on the dressing-table
h. books/ on the shelf
i. magazines/ on the bed
j. newspapers/ on the radio

Hurin-Ghurandari Kijeel

x. cabiizihgi/ te ban dira
Nda cabiizimangi ghua.
Alinga? Nehgi?
Puja. neghi puja. Te banrgu nigeni.

Duraguni nige sanbala jiuri.

a. gangbihgi/ xrai dira
b. liindaihgi/ yiizi dira
c. timuxihgi/ xrai dira
d. tawoghi/ sarishdigu ban dira
e. ziyanhgi/ densi dira
f. huuzihgi/ ban dira
g. langhuahgi/ deel gijin xrai dira
h. pujiuhi/ ban dira
i. zaazihgi/ chuang dira
Shut the door.

Write sentences using the following words.

Shut the
Open the
Put on your
Take off your
Turn on the
Turn off the
Sweep the
Clean the
Dust the
Empty the
Read this
Sharpen these

Duraguni nige sanbala jiuri.

a. (pujiuhgi) gershdi/ zaazihgi/ densi dira
b. (liindaihgi)/ ban dira/ haihgi/ chuang tada
c. (cabiizihgi)/ sarishdigu ban dira/ langhuahgi/ te guantuuhgini tada
d. (boozihgi)/ ban dira/ peohgi/ tengi kabog tura
e. (cacaazihgi)/ xrai dira/ qidighuahgi/ tengi huuzi tura
f. (caagangzihgi) shuuyinzi dira/ cabiizihgi/ te langhuahgini tada
g. (caagangzihgi)/ zuuha tura/ tawoghi/ zuuha dira

h. (cabiizihgi)/ zuuha tura/
langhuahgi/ denbiinxang tura
i. (pujiuhgi)/ gershdi/ huaihgi/
rmaaar
j. (yiizihgi)/ gershdi/ yiizihgi/ tungi xrai tada

aa. Shut the
Shut the door.
Lesson Twenty-Four

bb. Miss Grey/ emptying the basket/ typing a letter
What is Miss Grey doing? Is she emptying the basket?
No, she isn’t emptying the basket.
She’s typing a letter.

Now do these in the same way.

a. Mr Niima/ cleaning his teeth/ opening the window
b. Miss Gaaxijin/ making mutton soup/ making milk tea
c. My mother/ shutting the door/ making the bed
d. The dog/ drinking its milk/ eating a sheep bone
e. Mrs Ford/ dusting the dressing-table/ cooking a meal
f. Bessie/ making the bed/ sweeping the floor
g. Tim/ reading a magazine/ sharpening a pencil
h. The girl/ turning on the light/ turning off the tap
i. The boy/ cleaning his teeth/ putting on his shirt
j. Miss Jones/ putting on her coat/ taking off her coat
(92) **DORIJINSU AND THE BALL**
This is my ball. It is a red ball. It is a big ball. Can you see the big red ball?

(92) **DORIJINSU DA TE MOODAN**
Ne muni moodanna. Te fulaan moodanga. Te shge moodanga. Qi tengi shge moodanni sgani?

I have my ball. I have my big ball. I have my red ball. Can you see me and my red ball?


Here is Dorijinsu. Dorijinsu is a girl. She has a yellow dress. Can you see Dorijinsu and her yellow dress?

Dorijinsu diriiwa. Dorijinsu xjunga. Tendi xra deelgi yiina. Qi Dorijinsu da teni xra deelniini sgani?

I am playing with Dorijinsu. We are playing with the big red ball. Dorijinsu says, "Throw the ball. Throw the ball to me."


I am throwing the ball. I am throwing the ball to Dorijinsu. Run, Dorijinsu, run! Run and catch the ball. Dorijinsu is running. She is running after the ball. Where is the ball? She cannot see the big red ball. Can you see the hill? The ball is rolling down the hill. Where is Dorijinsu? Dorijinsu is not here.


Where is the ball? Dorijinsu is running. I am running with Dorijinsu. We are looking for the ball. There is a big tree on the hill. The ball is rolling near the tree. It is near the tree on the hill. Look, Dorijinsu, look! Look for the ball. Look down the hill. Look near the tree. Can you find the ball?


Dorijinsu is walking near the tree. She is looking for the ball. There is the ball! It is under the big tree. Dorijinsu is running to the big tree.
She can see the big red ball. “Here is the ball, under the tree! Here is the big red ball!”

Dorijinsu te xjuzi tada yiuwa kurija. Te te moodanni yerina. Te moodan diriwa! Te tangi shge xjuzi durawa. Dorijinsu guaiwa te shge xjuzi tada xja. Te te shge fulaan moodanni sgaja. “Te moodan diriwa, ne xjuzi durawa! Te shge fulaan moodan diriwa!”

Dorijinsu and I are playing with the ball. We are throwing the ball and catching it. We are playing near the big tree on the hill.


(93) **THE SKIPPING-ROPE**
My name is Jaaxi. Mother is giving me a jersey. It is a new jersey. This is my new red jersey.

(93) **TE DUULIJI NADIJIN**

This is Gaaxijin. Mother is giving her a skipping-rope. Gaaxijin is skipping. This is her skipping rope.


Gaaxijin and I are going to school. Here we are. She has her new skipping-rope. I have my new jersey.


We are at school. Gaaxijin is skipping on the grass. The grass is wet. The skipping-rope is wet. Gaaxijin and Lamulua are skipping. They are jumping over the rope. Gaaxijin and Lamulua are saying. “One, two, three, jump; four, five, six, jump.”


Dirijisirang and I are playing. We are playing football. Can you see Dirijisirang? Can you see the football? I am kicking the ball. I am kicking it to Dirijisirang. Dirijisirang is catching the ball. He is kicking it to me. I am running into the grass. I am running after the ball. I am falling down in the grass. I am falling on the wet ball.


Dirijisirang says to me, “There is some mud on your jersey.” I can see the mud. My new jersey is wet with mud.


Gaaxijin says to me, “Give me your jersey. I can wash it for you. I can wash the mud off your jersey.”

Gaaxijin nda kilena, “Qi nda moyiina ghua. Bu qimu ghuaji ghuya. Bu qini moyii diragu te xaawarini ghua bo xgha shdan.”

Gaaxijin says to me, “Tie my skipping rope to that tree.” We tie the rope to the big tree. We throw my jersey over the rope. Now my jersey is dry. We are going home. Gaaxijin has her skipping rope in her hand. I have my new red jersey.


Lesson Twenty-Five

(94) a. “A” is used before a consonant sound.
- a man
- a woman
- a cow
- a Tibetan
- a Chinese
- a hammer

Hurin-Tawundari Kijeel

(94) a. Fuuyin muxi yanglajin “ngi.”
- dide kungi
- nine kungi
- wuneengi
- Tiwarigi
- Qidarigi
- chuingi

b. “An” is used before a vowel sound.
- an egg
- an ashtray
- an ice-cream
- an umbrella
- an American

b. Yuanyin muxi yanglajin “ngi.”
- digengi
- yanhui ganggangzingi
- biingoangi
- yuusangi
- Miigui kungi

c. Put “a” or “an” before these words.
- *mountain *woman *egg *eye
- *cigarette *dog *yak *donkey *horse
- *boy *ice-cream *girl
c. “A” da “an” ne pujiihyni muxini giiidi.
*ghada *nine kun *dige *nudi *yan
*nuhui *musi *jige *mori *bulai
*biingoai *xjun

(95) Plural and singular.
a. (boy) One ___ is a Mongghul.
Three ___ are Chinese.
b. (tree) One ___ is big. Three ___ are small.
c. (yak) One ___ is red. Two ___ are black.
d. (pencil) One ___ is old. Five ___ are new.
e. (Hui) One ___ is a student. Two ___ are teachers.
f. (Chinese) One ___ is singing. Two ___ are playing.
g. (man) He is a big ___. They are big ___.
h. (woman) One ___ is in the room.
Two ___ are in the kitchen.
i. (child) One ___ is crying. Two ___ are running.
j. (sheep) That ___ is eating grass.
Those ___ are sleeping.
k. (cat) That ___ is yellow. Those ___ are white.

(95) Fufuu da danfuu.
a. (bulai) Nige ___ ni Mongghulga.
Ghuran ___ ni Qidariwa.
b. (xjuzi) Nige ___ ni shgewa.
Ghuran ___ ni mulawa.
c. (musi) Nige ___ ni fulaanga.
Ghoori ___ ni harawa.
d. (qanbii) Nige ___ ni hojiraja.
Tawun ___ ni xnina.
e. (Huui) Nige ___ ni xuusangga.
Ghoorini ___ losinga.
f. (Qidari) Nige ___ qorana. Ghoori ___ ni nadina.

g. (dide kun) Gan shge tigii ___ ga.
Tehgi shge na.
h. (nine kun) Nige ___ ni gershdiwa.
Ghoori ___ ni zuuhandiwa.
i. (bulai) Nige ___ ni ulaana. Ghoori ___ ni guaina.
j. (huni) Tengi ___ wusi rdena. Te ___ hgi qaaja.
k. (muuxi) Tengi ___ yiilanga. Te ___ hgi qighaanga.

(96) Make sentences using “this is” and “these are” correctly.
a. footballs.
b. a football.
c. pencils.
d. a pencil.
e. Mongghuls.
f. a Mongghul
g. classroom.
h. classrooms.
i. horse.
j. horses.
k. child.
l. children.

(96) “Nehgi” da “tehgi” la duilasan ugongi zola.
a. zuuqiuhgi.
b. zuuqiungi.
c. qanbiihgi.
d. qanbiingi.
e. Monggghulhgi.
f. Monggghulgi.
g. Joshi.
h. joshihgi.
i. mori.
j. morihgi.
k. bulai.
l. bulaihgi
(97) Make sentences using “that is” and “those are” correctly.

a. a cow.  
  b. cows.  
  c. pen.  
  d. pens.  
  e. a football.  
  f. footballs.  
  g. a Tibetan.  
  h. Tibetans.  
  i. an American.  
  j. Americans.  
  k. an umbrella.  
  l. umbrellas.  
  m. an egg.  
  n. eggs.  
  o. child.  
  p. children.

(97) “Tengi” da “tehgila” duilasan ugonj zola.

a. wuunengi.  
  b. wuuneehgi.  
  c. gangbii.  
  d. gangbihghi.  
  e. zuuqiungi.  
  f. zuuqiuhghi.  
  g. Tiiwarigi.  
  h. Tiiwarihghi.  
  i. Miigui kungi.  
  j. Miigui kunhgi.  
  k. yuusangi.  
  l. yuusanhghi.  
  m. digengi.  
  n. digehghi.  
  o. bulai.  
  p. bulaihghi.

Lesson Twenty-Six

(98) Use the following words correctly in the sentences.

*a. that--those
b. it--they
c. is--are

a. ___ is a tree. ___ are trees.  
  b. ___ man is a Mongghul. ___ men are Mongghuls.  
  c. ___ is a camel. ___ are camels.  
  d. ___ egg is bad. ___ eggs are bad.  
  e. ___ is an airplane. ___ are airplanes.  
  f. ___ it a tree? ___ they trees?  
  g. Is ___ the train? Are ___ the trains?  
  h. Is ___ a ship? Are ___ ships?  
  i. Is ___ apple on the table? Are ___ apples on the table?  
  j. What is ___? What are ___?  
  k. Where ___ the home? Where ___ the homes?

Hurin-Jirighundari Kijeel

(98) Duragu pujihgila ne ugohgini duilagu giji jiuri.

*a. ne--nehgi
b. te--tehgi
c. yii, nii, na, ni--wa, sa, nii

a. ___ xjuusinga. ___ xjuusiwa.  
  b. ___ dide kun Mongghul kungra. ___ dide kunhgi Mongghulwa.  
  c. ___ timeenga. ___ timeenna.  
  d. ___ dige muudaxja. ___ digehghi muudaxja.  
  e. ___ fiijinga. ___ fiijiwa.  
  f. Te xjuusinga ___? Tehgi xjuusiwa ___?  
  g. ___ jiu te ghal tirigawani? ___ jiu te tirihgahgiwani?  
  h. ___ chuanngiwan? ___ chuanhgiwani?
What...? expects a noun—usually a thing for the answer.

a. What is that? It is a tent.
b. What are those? They are books.
c. What is Mr. Niima? He is a farmer.
d. What is on the plate? Some cheese.

Who...? expects a person for the answer.

a. Who is Mrs. Lamulu’s daughter? Gaaxijin.
b. Who are those students. Mongghul. Those students are Mongghul.
c. Who are in the classroom. The students.
d. Who are playing? The children.

d. Who are playing? The children.

Read this text and then answer the questions.

This is a classroom in a language school. There is a teacher in the room and there are some other men and women in the classroom. They are students. The teacher’s name is Niima. The students are Mongghul. There is a table in the room. The teacher is near the table. The door is behind the teacher. There are two windows in the room. The window on the left is open, but the window on the right is closed. There is a clock on the wall, near the door. The door is closed but one window is open. There are some pencils and some flowers on the table. The students are sitting. They are looking at Mr. Niima. Mr. Niima is teaching English. The students want to learn English. They like English. The students have a book. The book’s name is “English for Mongghuls.”

Nengi kuwuwnni rjegula dii wuncigingini huidala.

Ne ugo surighuajin xuutanggini joshinga. Ger tura losini yiina, joshi tura darang ahangi dide kun da nine kun yiina. Tehgi xuusangna. Te losini nirani Niimawa. Te xuusanghgi

- Where is the classroom?
- Where is Mr. Niima?
- Where is the door?
- Where are the two windows?
- Where is the clock?
- Where are some pencils?
- Where are some flowers?
- What do the students want?
- What do the students like?
- What book do the students have?

- Te joshi anja?
- Niima Aaga anja?
- Te ude anja?
- Te ghoori qangguang anja?
- Te denzhun anja?
- Qanbiihgi anja?
- Qijiuhgi anja?
- Te xuusanghgi amagugunii gina?
- Te xuusanghgyan duralana?
- Te xuusanghgidyan pujiungi yiina?

(102) Months of the year.

- January
- February
- March
- April
- May
- June
- July
- August
- September
- October
- November
- December

(102) Fanni sara.

- Xni Sara
- Ghoori Sara
- Ghuran Sara
- Deeran Sara
- Tawun Sara
- Jirighun Sara
- Duluun Sara
- Niiman Sara
- Shzin Sara
- Haran Sara
- Haran-Nige Sara
- Haran-Ghoori Sara

- Spring=March, April, May
- Summer=June, July, August
- Autumn=September, October, November
- Winter=December, January, February

- Hawurishdi=Ghuran Sara, Deeran Sara, Tawun Sara
- Yeri=Jirighun Sara, Duluun Sara, Niiman Sara
- Namuri=Shzin Sara, Haran Sara, Haran-Nige Sara
- Rguli=Haran-Ghoori Sara, Xni Sara, Ghoori Sara

Now answer these questions.

- a. What month were you born in? (In what month were you born?)
  I was born in March.
b. What are your favorite months?

Do ne wunchgini huidala.
a. Qimu alingi saradini turaja? (Qimu alingi saradini turaja?) Nda Ghuran Saradini turaja.
b. Qi zui duralajin sarani alingiwa?

Lesson Twenty-Seven

(103) *A: What month is it?
B: It is March.
A: Is it winter?
B: No, it isn’t. It isn’t winter. It is spring.
A: Is it hot in Lhasa?
B: No, it isn’t hot. Sometimes it is cold.
A: Is it windy today?
B: It is often windy.
A: Does it often rain in spring in Lhasa?
B: No, it doesn’t often rain in Lhasa in spring. Sometimes it rains.

Hurin-Duluundari Kijeel

(103) *A: Do alingi sarawa?
B: Ghuran Sarawa.
A: Rguliwani?
B: Puja, te puja. Rguli puja.
Hawurina.
A: Lasaa halangnani?
B: Gua, tiri halang gua. Amangihai kuidenna.
A: Niuduri kii tiunani?
B: Kijeeda kii tiuna.
A: Lasaa hawurishdi kijeeda ruana?
B: Gua, Lasaa hawurishdi kijeeda ruan gua. Amangihai ruana.
A: Where do you come from?

B: I come from China. My home is in Huzhu, Qinghai.
A: What is the climate like there?
B: It’s very pleasant. It is not very cold and it is not very hot.
A: What’s the weather like in spring?
B: It’s often windy in March. It’s always warm in April and May, but it rains sometimes. The sun shines often.
A: What’s it like in summer?
B: It’s hot sometimes in June, July, and August. The sun shines every day.
A: Is it cold or warm in autumn?
B: It’s always warm in September and October. It’s often cold in November and it rains sometimes.
A: Is it very cold in winter?
B: Sometimes its cold in December, January and February. It snows sometimes.

A: Qi anjisa rwa?
B: Bu Zhunguisa rwa. Muni kudi Qinhai Huzhuu yii.
A: Tiriigu qihuu amahgiinga?
B: Hudi saina. Yixi kuidenda gua yixi halangda gua.
A: Hawurishdi qihuuni amahgiinga?
B: Ghuran Sarani kijeeda kii tiuna.
Deeran Sara, Tawun Sarani kijeeda halangna, amangihia ruana. Nara kijeeda haina.
A: Yerishdi amahgiinga?
B: Jirighun Sara. Duluun Sara, Niiman Sarani amangihia halangna. Nara guadindi haina.
A: Namuridi halangnani kuidenna?
A: Rgulidi hudi kuidennani?
B: Haran-Ghoori Sara, Xni Sara, Ghoori Sarani hgengii kuidenna.
Amangiha qaazi ruana.

(104) My home is in Funaniraa. In spring, in March, April, and May, it is often windy and cold. It rains sometimes.


In summer, it’s sometimes hot in June, July, and August. The sun shines every day.

Yerishdi, Jirighun Sara, Duluun Sara, Niima Sarani amangiha halangna. Nara guadindi haina.

September, October, and November is autumn. In Funaniraa it is sometimes cold. It rains sometimes.


December, January, and February is winter. In Funaniraa it snows sometimes. There is little snow in Funaniraa. Sometimes it is cold.


(105) Niima: What is your nationality?
Limudanzhuu: I am Mongghul. I come from Tianzhu.
Niima: Is your home in Qinghai?
Limudanzhuu: No, my home is not in Qinghai. My home is in Gansu. I come from Tianzhu.
Niima: Does that old man come from Qinghai?
Limudanzhuu: No, he doesn’t. He is American. He comes from America.
Niima: Is that short man American? Does he come from America?
Limudanzhuu: No, he isn’t American. He’s Brazilian. He comes from Brazil.
Niima: Does that tall woman come from Qinghai?
Limudanzhuu: No, she doesn’t. She comes from Tibet.
Niima: Where do those women in beautiful robes come from? Are they from Qinghai?
Limudanzhuu: They are Tibetan. Their nationality is Tibetan. They come from Tibet. They do not come from Qinghai. Their homes are in Tibet.
Niima: Where do those two short fat men come from?
Limudanzhuu: They come from Gansu.

(105) Niima: Qini szaribatin yannii?
Niima: Qini kudi Qinhaiwani?
Niima: Tengi shdugu kun Qinhainani?
Niima: Tengi mula baidii kun ya Miigui kunnani? Gan Miiguisa rsanani?
Niima: Tengi shge baidii nine kun Qinhaisa rsanani?
Limudanzhuu: Puja, te puja. Te Ghuaisangsa rja.
Niima: Te saighan deel musisan nine kunghi anjisa rsana? Tehgi Qinhaisa rsanani?
Niima: Te ghoori tarighuan dide kun anjisa rsana?
Limudanzhuu: Tehgi Gansuusa rsana.

(106) Use “come” or “comes” in the sentences that follow.
I/ you/ they/ we/ come
he/ she comes
I/ you/ they/ we/ don’t come
he/ she/ doesn’t come

(106) Duragu ugohgira ne “ra” ni yangladii.
Bu/ qi/ tehgi/ budahgi/ ra
gan/ te ra
bu/ qi/ tehgi/ budahgi/ lii ra
gan/ te/ lii ra

a. He ___ from Wuuzin.
b. They ___ from Qinghai.
c. He doesn’t ___ from Golox.
d. They don’t ___ from Tibet.
e. We ___ from China.
a. Gan Wuuzinsa ___ ja.
b. Tehgi Qinhaisa ___ ja.
c. Gan Guluusa ___ sanni puja.
d. Tehgi Ghuaisangsa ___ sanni puja.
e. Budahgi Zhunguisa ___ sanna.

(107) Use “like” or “likes” in the sentences that follow.
I/ you/ they/ we/ like
he/ she likes
I/ you/ they/ we don’t like
he/ she/ doesn’t like

(107) Duragu ugohgira “durala” da “duralan” ni yangladii.
bu/ qi/ tehgi/ budahgi/ durala
gan/ te durala
bu/ qi/ tehgi/ budahgi lii durala
gan/ te/ duralan gua

a. We ___ butter but we don’t ___ cheese.
b. He ___ cheese but he doesn’t ___ butter.
c. They ___ milk but he doesn’t ___ milk.
d. She ___ oranges but she doesn’t ___ apples.
a. Budahgi qighaan tuusi ___ nijida budahgi nailuuni lii ___ ni.
b. Gan nailuuni ___ najida gan qighaan tuusini ___ n gua.
c. Tehgi sun ___ najida gan sunni ___ n gua.
d. Te juuzi ___ najida te piingu ___ n gua.

(108) Use “want” and “wants” in the sentences that follow.
These two words are used in the same way as “like” and “likes.”
a. I like butter and I ___ some butter.
b. He likes tea and he ___ some tea.
c. They ___ some tea, too.
d. We ___ some salt in our tea.
e. We don’t ___ sugar in our tea.
f. They don’t ___ sugar, they ___ salt.
g. He doesn’t ___ salt, he ___ sugar.

(108) Dura ukgahira “muula” ni saighangi yanglagi.
Ne ghoori pujuni jiu xang ne “durala” da “duralan” ni yanglagula nigehua yangla.

a. Bu qighaan tuusi duralani, bu qighaan tuusimangi ___ ni.
b. Gan qa duralana, gan qamangi ___ na.
c. Tehgi da qamangi ___ na.
d. Budahgi qarina dashizimangi ___ ni.
e. Budahgi qarina garaa lii ___ ni.
f. Tehgi garaa ___ n gua, tehgi dashizi ___ na.
g. Gan dashizi ___ n gua, gan garaa ___ na.

Lesson Twenty-Eight

(109) Qinghai Lake is north of Xining. It is a big lake. Many Tibetans live there. In winter, Qinghai Lake is cold. The days are short and the nights are long. The sun rises late and sets early.

Hurin-Niimandari Kijeel


Xining is often windy. In winter Xining is cold. But it is not very cold. There is little snow. The climate of Xining is good.


Yunnan is south of Xining. It is not cold. In winter, Yunnan is not cold. It is warm. Tibetans live in Yunnan.


Haixi is west of Xining. It is not wet. The sun shines every day. Many Tibetans live in Haixi.


(110) Niima: Where do you come from?
Limudanzhuu: I come from Qinghai, China.
Niima: What’s your nationality?
Limudanzhuu: I am Mongghul. What’s your nationality?
Niima: I’m Mongghul, too.
Limudanzhuu: Where do you come from?
Niima: I come from Huzhu Mongghul Autonomous County. Where does that tall man come from?
Limudanzhuu: He comes from Japan. He’s Japanese.
Niima: Where does that short woman come from? Is she Japanese, too?
Limudanzhuu: She isn’t Japanese. She’s Indian.
Niima: Where does that fat man come from? Is he Indian?
Limudanzhuu: No, he isn’t Indian. He’s Nigerian. He comes from Nigeria.
Niima: Where does that tall woman come from? What is her nationality?
Limudanzhuu: She’s Turkish. She comes from Turkey.

Niima: Where do those two short men come from? What nationality are they?
Limudanzhuu: They’re Danish. They come from Denmark.

(110) Niima: Qi anjisa rwa?
Limudanzhuu: Bu Zhunguini Qinhaisa rwa.
Niima: Qini szaribatin yannii?
Limudanzhuu: Bu Mongghul yii. Qini szaribatin yannii?
Niima: Bu ya Mongghul yii.
Limudanzhuu: Qi anjisa rwa?
Niima: Bu Huzhuu Mongghulxansa rwa. Tengi shge baidii die kun anjisa rja?
Limudanzhuu: Gan Rbinsa rja. Gan Rbin kunna.
Niima: Tengi mula baidii nine kun anjisa rsana? Te ya Rbin kungani?
Limudanzhuu: Te Rbin kun puja. Te Yinduu kunna.
Niima: Tengi tarighuan die kun anjisa rsana? Gan ya Yinduuni?
Niima: Tengi shge baidii nine kun anjisa rsana? Teni szaribatinni yana?
Limudanzhuu: Te Tuuaiqina. Te Tuuaiqa rja.
Niima: Te mula baidii die kun ghoorila anjisa rsana? Tehgini szaribatinni yana?
Limudanzhuu: Tehgi Danmiina. Tehgi Danmiisa rsana.

(111) north/ south/ east/ west
a. Beijing is ___ of Qinghai.
b. Xi’an is ___ of Sichuan.
c. Tibet is ___ of Qinghai.
d. Qingdao is ___ of Qinghai.
e. Xinjiang is __ of Qinghai.
f. Yunnan is __ of Qinghai.
g. Gansu is __ of Tibet.
h. Qinghai is __ of Xinjiang.
i. Lhasa is __ of Beijing.
j. Shanghai is __ of Lhasa.
k. Inner Mongolia is __ of Nanjing.

(111) biimengog/nanmengog/dunmengog/xiimengog
a. Biijin Qinhan i __ na.
b. Xiinan Schuangni __ na.
c. Ghuaisang Qinhan i __ na.
d. Qindog Qinhan i __ na.
e. Xnjiang Qinhan i __ na.
f. Yunnan Qinhan i __ na.
g. Gansuu Ghuaisangni __ na.
h. Qinhan Xnjiangni __ na.
i. Ghuaisang Biijinni __ na.
j. Shanghai Ghuaisalgni __ na.
k. Nuiminguu Nanjinni __ na.

(112) Mr. Niima and his wife, Gaaxijin, and their children live in Shgeayili. The children, Lamulua and Njiuyaa, go to school. Their father takes them to school every day.


Mrs. Gaaxijin stays at home every day. She does the housework. She makes bread and she cleans the home. She eats her lunch at noon. She likes bread. She likes tea, too.

Gaaxijin Aayi guadindi kudina sona. Te kudigu larihjani warina. Te shdimaa xragu kudinima arighagu gina. Te durihundini wuqina. Te shdimaa duralana. Te qa ya duralana.

In the afternoon, Mrs. Gaaxijin usually visits her friends. They often drink tea together.

Xruudini Gaaxijin Aayi zhonihgina tadani xna. Tehgi handiladi qamangi wuqigu gina.

In the evening the two children come home from school. They arrive home early.

Suanini te ghoori bulaini xuutangsa rana. Tehgi kudina raguni shdewa.

Mr. Niima comes home from work. He arrives home late.

Niima Aaga larihga rana. Gan kudina rsa daana.

At night the children always do their homework. They like learning Mongghul, Chinese, and English. Then they usually go to bed. Mr. Niima usually reads his newspapers and magazines, but sometimes he and his wife watch television.

Suanini te bulaihjini jatiin zuniina zukina. Tehgi Mongghul, Qidari, da

(113) Write out answers to these questions: What do you usually do?
   a. in the morning (In the morning, I usually get up.)
   b. in the afternoon
   c. in the evening
   d. at noon
   e. at night

(113) Ne wunchgini daananniini jiuri gharighadii: Qi tunchangha amaginii?
   a. shdeji (Shdeji, bu tunchang puzinii.)
   b. xruudi
   c. suanini
   d. durila
   e. suanini guandini

I go to school in the morning. Now do the following in the same way.

f. study English
   g. make my bed
   h. clean my dormitory room
   i. wash my face
   j. brush my teeth
   k. comb my hair
   l. go to class
   m. read a magazine
   n. go to bed
   o. do some exercises
   p. put on my clothes
   q. take off my clothes

Bu shdeji xuutangdi xnii. Do duraguni nige sanbala jiuri.

f. Yinyii surinii
   g. yikangna wulanii
   h. qaajin gerna arighanii
   i. niurina ghuanii
   j. shdina fakinii
   k. rawaana sanlanii
   l. xuutangdi xnii
   m. zaazingi rjenii
   n. qaani
   o. zuniina zukini
   p. deelhgina musinii
   q. deelhgina tiilini

Lesson Twenty-Nine

(114) It is eight o’clock. The children go to school by horse every day. But today, they are going to school on foot. Their school is a big school. Many Mongghul children go there.

Hurin-Shzindari Kijeel


It is ten o’clock. Mrs. Lamulua usually stays at home in the morning. But this morning she is going to the shops. Mrs. Lamulua wants to buy some potatoes and round onions.


It is four o’clock. In the afternoon, Mrs. Lamulua usually drinks tea in the living-room. But this afternoon,
she is drinking tea in the garden. Mrs. Lamulua likes tea. She likes to drink black tea with some salt.


It is six o’clock. In the evening, the children usually do their homework. But this evening, they are not doing their homework. At the moment they are playing in the garden. They are playing with a ball. It is a small blue ball.


It is nine o’clock. Mr. Niima usually reads his newspaper at night. He likes to sit in his big green chair. But he’s not reading his newspaper tonight. At the moment, he’s reading an interesting book.


Look at these examples: I drink. You drink. They drink. We drink. She drinks. He drinks. They are drinking. You are drinking. We are drinking. He is drinking. She is drinking. I am drinking.


Now write in the correct word.

a. (goes/ go/ going) We are ____ to school. They ____ to school. You ____ to school. I ____ to school, too.

Duilasan puiula jiuridii.

a. (xi/ xi/ xii) Budahgi xuutangdi __. Tehgi xuutangdi __. Qi xuutangdi __. Bu ya xuutangdi __.

b. (watches/ watch/ watching) We usually listen to the radio at night but tonight we are ____ television. He ____ television. I ____ television, too.

b. (rjena/ rjenii/ rjenii; rjenii) Budahgi amangiha shuuyinzi qanglanii suanidindi, niusuani budahgi densi __. Gan densi __. Bu ya densi __.

c. (drink/ drinking/ drinks) She ____ tea in the garden. They are ____ tea in the garden. You ____ tea in the garden.

c. (wuqina/ wuqina; wuqinii/ wuqina) Te yansuuri qa ___. Tehgi yansuuri qa ___. Qi yansuuri qa ___.

d. (read/ reads/ reading) They ____ Mongghul newspapers. They are ____ Mongghul newspapers in the
evening. I _ Mongghul magazines at night.

d. (rjenii/ rje/ rjena) Tehgi Mongghul boozi __. Tehgi suanidindi
Mongghul boozi __. Bu suanidindi
Mongghul boozi __.

e. (makes/ making/ make) Those Mongghul women are __ tea. They
are __ tea. Those Mongghul men are not __ tea. Those Mongghul
herdsmen are drinking tea. You __ tea. I __ tea, too. She __ tea.

e. (shda/ shdana: shdanii/ shda) Te Mongghul nine kunhgi qa __. Tehgi
qa __. Te Mongghul dide kunhgi qa __ n gua. Te Mongghul huni
dilajinigi qa wuqina. Qi qa __. Bu ya qa __. Te qa __.

(116) Gaaxijin: I want some envelopes please.
Stationer: Do you want the red ones or the blue ones?
Gaaxijin: I want the red ones.
Stationer: Do you want the large size or the small size?
Gaaxijin: I want the small size please.
Do you have any writing-paper?
Stationer: Yes, we have some writing-paper. I haven't any large
pads.
I only have small ones. Do you want a pad?
Gaaxijin: Yes, please. Do you have blue pads?
Stationer: No, we don't have any blue pads. We only have yellow pads.
Gaaxijin: I want two yellow pads.
And I want some blue ink and some glue.

Stationer: A bottle of blue ink and a bottle of glue.
Gaaxijin: And I want a small box of chalk, too.
Stationer: I only have large boxes.
Do you want one?
Gaaxijin: No, thank you.
Stationer: Is that all?
Gaaxijin: That's all, thank you very much.
Stationer: What else do you want?
Gaaxijin: I want my change.

(116) Gaaxijin: Bu xn haalizimangi
hgilegunii.
Dalidijin: Qi yiilan neni duralani hansu
fulaan neni duralani?  
Gaaxijin: Bu fulaan neni duralani.
Dalidijin: Qi shge te sanbani duralani
mula te sanbani duralani?
Gaaxijin: Bu mula te sanbani
duralani. Qimu jiurijin qaalizimangi
yiu?
Dalidijin: Yu, nda jiurijin qaalizi
luannii. Nda te shge yintai gui. Nda
mula tigiini yiu. Qi yintaingi duralani?
Gaaxijin: Ghin, ghua. Qimu yiilan
yintaimangi yiu?
Dalidijin: Gui, nda yiilan yintai
nigiijida gui. Nda jang xra
yintaimangi yiu.
Gaaxijin: Bu xra yintai ghooori
hgilegui. Bu darang yiilan miifii da
jofii kidi hgilegui.
Dalidijin: Nige langhua yiilan miifii da
nige langhua jofii.
Gaaxijin: Bu darang nige huuzi finbii
hgilegui.
Dalidijin: Nda jinjin shge huuzinii
zhog. Qi nige hgilegu niu?
Gaaxijin: Aghin, hgalii giwa.
Dalidijin: Dii ligunani?
g. (drink/ drinks/ drinking) I usually ____ coffee but tonight I am ____ tea with butter and salt. She doesn’t like ____ tea at night, she only likes ____ tea in the morning. I ____ beer. You ____ whiskey. They are ____ beer. She isn’t ____ beer.

h. (doing) I ____ my homework in the evening. She is ____ her homework. They ____ their homework. They are ____ their homework. We ____ our homework. We are ____ our homework. You ____ your homework.

(120) Nari

a. Limudanzhuu: Where’s Niima?
   Lamulua: He is in his bedroom. He’s in bed.

Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with him?
   Lamulua: He feels ill.
   Limudanzhuu: He looks ill.
   Lamulua: We must call the doctor.
   Niima is ill. He is not well.

Limudanzhuu: Yes, we must. Our son is ill. Can you remember the doctor’s telephone number?
   Lamulua: Yes, I can. It’s 775277.
   Doctor: Open your mouth, Niima. Show me your tongue. Say ‘ah.’
   Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with Niima, doctor?
   Doctor: He has a bad cold
   Limudanzhuu, so he must stay in bed for a week. He must drink tea and eat good food. He must not play outside. He must not ride his horse.
   Lamulua: That’s good news for Niima.
   Doctor: Good news? Why?
   Lamulua: Because he doesn’t like school! Niima is ill. He must not go to school.

(120) Illness

a. Limudanzhuu: Niima anja?
   Lamulua: Gan qaajin gershdinawa.
   Gan yikangrnawa.
   Limudanzhuu: Ganni tjesa narilaja.
   Limudanzhuu: Ya, tingiya. Budahgini bulai narilaja. Qi te smanbani denhuaa homaaniini jila giijani?
   Lamulua: Ghin, bu shdan. Te duluun duluun tawun ghoori duluun duluunwa.
   Smanba: Amana nii, Niima. Qini kileeningi rjeya. “Ghai” giij kile.
   Limudanzhuu: Smanba, Niima amakija?
   Smanba: Limudanzhuu, te hudi kundingi lengchuulaja, gan nige xnqii

Lamulua: Tingisa darang gandi saina. Smanba: Saina amaga?
Lamulua: Gan xuutangdi xgu duralan gua! Niima narilaja. Gan xuutangdi dii bii xlahgi.

b. Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with you, Niima?
Niima: I am ill. I have a headache.
Limudanzhuu: You must take an aspirin.

b. Limudanzhuu: Niima, qi amagiwa?
Niima: Bu narilaxja. Muni tarighui yidini?
Limudanzhuu: Qi aasipiliingi rde.

c. Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with you, Niima?
Niima: I have an ear-ache.
Limudanzhuu: You must see a doctor. I will telephone the doctor. Do you know the doctor’s telephone number?
Niima: Yes, I do. It’s 331777.

c. Limudanzhuu: Niima, qi amagiwa?
Niima: Muni qigi yidini.
Limudanzhuu: Qi amagisada smanba tada xi. Bu smanbadi denhuaangi pughaya. Qi te smanbani denhuaaniini mudeni?
Niima: Ghin, bu muden. Te ghuran ghuran nige duluun duluunwa.

d. Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with you, Niima?
Niima: I have a toothache.

Limudanzhuu: You must see a dentist.

d. Limudanzhuu: Niima, qi amagiwa?
Niima: Muni shdi nigeni yidini.
Limudanzhuu: Qi amagisada shdi rjejin smanbani rjela xi.

e. Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with you, Niima?
Niima: I have a stomach-ache.
Limudanzhuu: You must drink this medicine. It is good medicine. My mother gave me this medicine.

e. Limudanzhuu: Niima, qi amagiwa?
Niima: Muni kiile yidini.
Limudanzhuu: Qi amagisada ne smanni rde. Ne saini smanga. Ne smanni muni aama nha ghuwa.

f. Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with you, Niima?
Niima: I have a temperature.
Limudanzhuu: You must go to bed. You must stay in bed for one week.

f. Limudanzhuu: Niima, qi amagiwa?
Niima: Nda saari gharija.
Limudanzhuu: Qi amagisada qaa. Qi amagisada chuangrna nige xnqii qaa.

g. Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with you, Niima?
Niima: I have the flu. I feel ill.

g. Limudanzhuu: Niima, qi amagiwa?
Niima: Bu lengchuulaxja. Bu narilaja.

h. Limudanzhuu: You have a temperature, too. You must stay in bed. You must not go to school. You must take some medicine.

Lesson Thirty-One

i. Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with you, Niima?
Niima: I have the measles. I feel ill. I have a temperature. I do not want to eat. I do not want to drink.
Limudanzhuu: We must call the doctor. You must stay in bed. You must not go to school.

Hujin-Nigedari Kijeel

i. Limudanzhuu: Niima qi amagiwa?
Limudanzhuu: Budahgi amagisada smanbani dodaya. Qi amagisada yikangri so. Qi amagisada xuutangdi bii xi.

j. Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with you, Niima?
Niima: I have the mumps. I have a fever, too. I am not well.
Limudanzhuu: We must call the doctor. You must go to bed. You must not play outside on the mountain. You must stay at home.

k. Limudanzhuu: What’s the matter with you, Niima?
Niima: I have a cold. I can’t go to work. I am not well. I feel ill. I must see a doctor.
Limudanzhuu: Yes, we must call a doctor. You must stay in bed. You must not go to work. You must stay at home. You must eat good food.

l. My name is Niima. Today, I am ill. I have a bad cold. I am not well. I feel ill. I must not go to school. I must play outside. I must stay at home.

j. Limudanzhuu: Niima, qi amagiwa?

k. Limudanzhuu: Niima, qi amagiwa?

Doctor: How’s Njiuyaa today?
Lamulua: He’s better today, thank you, doctor.
Doctor: Can I see him please, Lamulua?
Lamulua: Certainly, doctor. Come upstairs. Njiuyaa is in bed in his bedroom.
Doctor: You look very well, Njiuyaa. You are better now, but you must not get up yet. You must stay in bed for another three days. The boy must not go to school yet. Lamulua: And he must not eat rich food.
Lamulua: Has he a temperature, doctor?
Doctor: No. He has no temperature.
Lamulua: Must he stay in bed?
Doctor: Yes. He must remain in bed for another three days. He can get up for about two hours each day but you must keep the room warm. The bedroom must not be cold. Where’s Rashidan this evening?
Lamulua: He’s in bed, doctor. Can you see him please? He has a bad cold, too!
Doctor: Certainly!

m. Smanba: Njiuyaa, niuduri qi amahgiinga?
Lamulua: Gan niuduri nigiiji saina, qimu hgali giwa ju, smanba.
Smanba: Lamulua, bu teningi sgasa ligunani?

Answer these questions.
a. How is Njiuyaa today?
b. Where is Njiuyaa?
c. Is Njiuyaa in the garden?
d. Must Njiuyaa get up?
e. Must Njiuyaa go to school?
f. Must Njiuyaa eat rich food?
g. Does Njiuyaa have a temperature?
h. Must Njiuyaa get up?
i. How many hours can Njiuyaa get up every day?
j. Must the bedroom be cold?
k. Where is Rashidan?
l. Is Rashidan working?
m. What’s the matter with Rashidan?
n. Is Rashidan ill, too?

Ne wuncihgini huidala.
a. Njiuyaa niuduri amahgiinga?
b. Njiuyaa anja?
c. Njiuyaa yansuurwani?
d. Njiuyaa amaszada puzadigu?
e. Njiuyaa amaszada xuutangdi xgu?
f. Njiuyaa amaszada tarighuan zamaa rdegu?
g. Njiuyaaadi saari yiinani?
h. Njiuyaa amaszada puzigu?
i. Njiuyaa guadindi kidi zhuntuu puzi shdana?
j. Qaajin ger amaszada kuidenligu?
k. Rashidan anja?
l. Rashidan larigha warinani?
m. Rashidan amakija?
n. Rashidan ya narilajani?

n. Rashidan: Don’t call the doctor.
Lamulua: We must call the doctor! You have a temperature and you have a bad cold!
Rashidan: No, you mustn’t call the doctor. I don’t like doctors. I don’t like to take medicine.

n. Rashidan: Smanbani bii doda.
Lamulua: Budahgi amagisada te smanbani dodagii! Qimu saari niigijingi yina qimu hudi kundi lengchuur kuri!
Rashidan: Gua, qi amagisada te smanbani bii doda. Bu smanbahgini yii duralani. Bu sman rdegu lii duralani.

a. Does Rashidan want Lamulua to call a doctor?
b. Does Lamulua want to call a doctor?
c. Does Lamulua have a temperature?
d. Does Lamulua have a bad cold?
e. Does Rashidan like doctors?
f. Does Rashidan like to take medicine?

a. Lamuluadi hudi kundi lengchuunga kurijani?
b. Rashidan smanbahgini duralanani?
c. Rashidan sman rdegu duralanani?

(121) Zhumaaqog: Gaasan, don’t play with matches. Play on the mountain. Play with your friends!
Gaasan: I like to play with matches! I want to play with matches!
Zhumaaqog: I am your mother! You must not play with matches.

(121) Zhumaaqog: Gaasan, yanghuula bii nadi. Ghadari nadila xi. Zhoniihgilina nadila xi!
Gaasan: Bu yanghuula nadigu duralani! Bu yanghuula nadigu duralani!
Zhumaaqog: Bu qini aamawa! Qi amagisada yanghuula bii nadi.

a. Is Zhumaaqog playing with matches?
b. Is Zhumaaqog playing on the mountain?
c. Is Gaasan Zhumaaqog’s mother?
d. Does Gaasan like to play with matches?
e. Does Gaasan not want to play with matches.
f. Must Gaasan play with matches?

a. Zhumaaqog yanghuula nadigu duralanani?
b. Zhumaaqog ghadari nadinani?
c. Gaasan Zhumaaqogni aamanani?
d. Gaasan yanghuula nadigu duralanani?
e. Gaasan yanghuula nadigu duralan guani?
f. Gaasan amagisada yanghuula nadigu gulagunani?
(122) Begin each sentence with *Njiuyaa.*
I mustn’t take any aspirins.---Njiuyaa mustn’t take any aspirins.

a. I watch television. I study English in bed.
b. I feel ill. I can get up for three hours.
c. I talk to my mother, Lamulua, and my father, Rashidan.

(122) *Njiuyaa alinga ugonida kaisila.*
Bu amagisada aasipilinnia lii rden.---Njiuyaa amagisada aasipiliinni nigijida lii rden.

c. Bu muni aama, Lamulua, muni aaba Rashidanla gulegunii.

Lesson Thirty-Two

(123) *Zhunmaa.* What are you going to do this evening, Njiuyaa?
*Njiuyaa.* I’m going to meet some friends, Dad.

*Zhunmaa.* You mustn’t come home late. You must be home at half past ten.

*Njiuyaa.* I can’t get home so early, Dad! Can I have the key to the front door? please.

*Zhunmaa.* No, you can’t.

*Lamulua.* Njiuyaa is 18 years old, Zhunmaa. He’s not a baby. Please give him the key. He always comes home early.

*Zhunmaa.* Oh, all right! Here you are. But you mustn’t come home after a quarter past eleven. Do you hear?

*Njiuyaa.* Yes, Dad. Thanks, Mum.

*Lamulua.* That’s all right, dear. Good-bye. Enjoy yourself.

*Njiuyaa.* We always enjoy ourselves, Mum. Good-bye.

Hujin-Ghooridari Kijeel

(123) *Zhunmaa.* Njiuyaa, niusuani qi amagugunii?

*Njiuyaa.* Aaba, bu zhoniihgina tadani xgunii.

*Zhunmaa.* Qi kudirsa yixi bii daa. Qi amagisada shdenbanri kudi kuri.

*Njiuyaa.* Aaba, bu tigji shde kudi kuri adaguna! Qi nda shge rdergu yiuixini ghusa ligunani?

*Zhunmaa.* Aghin, qi bii wari.


*Zhunmaa.* Ya, liguna! Qimu ghuya. Qi amagisada shyiidenbanri kudi kuri. Sunishdawu?

*Njiuyaa.* Ghin, aaba. Aama hgali giwa.


*Njiuyaa.* Budahgi kijeeda saighan nadinii, aama. Siida sgaya.

a. What is Njiuyaa going to do this evening?
b. Is Njiuyaa going to school this evening?
c. Must Njiuyaa come home late?
d. What time must Njiuyaa be home?
e. Can Njiuyaa get home at half past ten?
f. Can Njiuyaa get home at half past nine?
g. How old is Njiuyaa?
h. Is Njiuyaa 19?
i. Is Njiuyaa a baby?
j. Does Njiuyaa want the key?
k. Does Zhunmaa want to give Njiuyaa the key?
l. Does Lamulua want Zhunmaa to give Njiuyaa the key?

a. Njiuyaa niusuani yamagugunii gina?
b. Niusuani Njiuyaa xuutangdi xgunani?
c. Njiuyaa amagisada kudina rsa daagunani?
d. Ali sghududini Njiuyaa amagisada kudina kurigu gulguna?
e. Njiuyaa shdenbanri kudina kuri shdagunani?
f. Njiuyaa jiudenbanri kudina kuri shdagunani?
g. Njiuyaa kidi nesilija?
h. Njiuyaa haran-shzinnani?
i. Njiuyaa mula bulaingiwani?
j. Njiuyaa te yixina hgilegu duralanani?
k. Zhunmaa Njiuyaadi yixina ghugu duralajani?
l. Lamulua Zhunmaa yixini Njiuyaadi ghusa dayinlanani gua?

(124) Limudanzhuh: When is your birthday, Sangriji?
Sangriji: My birthday is July 24th.
Limudanzhuh: When is your birthday?
Limudanzhuh: My birthday is January 6th.

When is your birthday?
My birthday is ___.

(125) Use “in,” “at,” and “from” in the following sentences.
a. It’s wet __ spring and dry __ summer.
b. Are there many Mongghuls __ your county?
c. I always study English __ the evening.
d. I always study Mongghul __ night.
e. I come __ Danmaa. Do you come __ Danmaa?
f. I go to school __ 8:30.
g. I will go shopping __ 1:00.

a. Hawurishdi ___ niittena yeri ___ huusinja.
b. Qini xan ___ ahangi Mongghul kun yiinnani?
c. Bu kijeeda suani ___ Yinyii surinii.
d. Bu kijeeda suani ___ Mongghul surinii.
e. Bu Danmaa ___ rwa. Qi Danmaa ___ rwu?
f. Bu baadenban ___ xuutangdi xnii.
g. Bi yiiden ___ yama awula xgii.

(126) His home is in Jilohhua. He is a Mongghul student and he studies at
Huzhu Nationalities Middle School. He studies math, English, Mongghul, and Chinese. He likes studying English. English is interesting. His name is Njiuyaa and he is 20 years old.


Today, he and his friend, Rashidan, are going to the shops. Njiuyaa wants to buy a book. Rashidan wants to buy a new hat.


Today is hot. It is summer. It is not raining. The sun is shining.


Yangsu: Friday, Saturday, and Sunday in the countryside! Aren’t you lucky!
Lamulua: Yes, we are. Our family enjoys the countryside. My mother has many horses and the children like riding horses. The children like to herd the animals, too.
Yangsu: We’re going to spend two weeks at my father’s home in Qaaghuali in summer. The children enjoy going to Qaaghuali and playing in the countryside. And I like to see my mother and father. They are old now.
Lamulua: How old are your mother and father?
Yangsu: My father is 68 and my mother is 67. But they are very well.
Lamulua: I must go home now and cook dinner. The children like to eat dinner at 6 o’clock. Now, it is half past five. Good-bye Yangsu.
Yangsu: Good-bye Lamulua.

(127) Lamulua: Ghai, Yangsu. Qi niuduri amahgiinga?
Yangsu: Bu saina, qimu hgali giwa. Qi amahgiinga?
Lamulua: Bu hudi saina, hgali giwa? Qi muha denri xwu?
Yangsu: Gan hudi saina, qimu hgali giwa.
Lamulua: Muxi xnqii gan xuutangdi xi shdaji guani?

Yangsu: Ghin, te shdaji gua. Gan Xnqiyii, Xnqiai, Xnqisani, Xnqisidi xi shdaji gua. Qi amagiji dawagunii?
Yangsu: Xnqiiwu, Xnqiiiliu, Xnqiiiriid luncunri! Qi xnyunnani gua!
Yangsu: Yerishdi budahgi muni aaba tada Qaaghualishdi ghooori xnqii dawagunii. Ne bulaihgi Qaaghualidi xgu duralan, tirii luncunri nadjigu duralan, tirii bu aaba da aamana sgagu duralan. Tehgi do shdulija.
Lamulua: Qini aaba da aama kidihangi nesilija?
Yangsu: Muni aaba jiran-niimanna muni aama jiran-duluun nesiwa. Tehgi darang hudi saina.
Yangsu: Lamulua, siida sgaya.

(128) Gaasan: Limudanzhuu, where were you on Sunday, January first?
Limudanzhuu: I was at my friend’s home. My friend lives in Tangraa. Where were you on Tuesday, March third?
Gaasan: I was at Huzhu Nationalities Middle School. I was studying.
(128) Gaasan: Limudanzhuu qi Xni Sarani xni nigedi, jiusi Xnqiiitendi anjii? 
Limudanzhuu: Bu zhoniina kudinii. Muni zhonii Tangraa soja. Qi Ghuran Sarani xni ghurandi, jiusi Xnqiiiaidi jiu tirii yiit? 

(129) Put in “the” where necessary.
a. I was at park on Sunday.
b. Niima was at office on Friday.
c. My daughter was at school on Wednesday.
d. Lamulua was at grocer’s on Thursday.
e. I was on grassland in summer.
f. My son was in country on Saturday.
g. I was at market on Wednesday, May 1st.
h. She was at stationer’s on Thursday, December 12th.
i. We were at home on Sunday, August 8th.
j. The two boys were at dairy on Saturday, July 7th.

(129) “Ne” anjini yanglaniiha tiighuadii.
a. Bu Xnqiiiridi gunyuani yii. 
b. Niima Xnqiiwudi bangunshirnawa. 
c. Xnqiiisandi muni xjun xutangdiwa. 
d. Lamulua Xnqiiiaidi cai dalidijin denrwa. 
e. Yerishdi bu coyuanri yii. 
f. Xnqiiiludi muni kuu luncunrwa. 
g. Tawun Sarani xni nigedi jiusi Xnqiiisandi bu schangri yii. 
h. Xnqiiiaidi ya jiusi Haran Ghoori Sarani haran-ghoorishdi te dalidijin te dennawa. 
i. Niiman Sarani xni niumandi ya jiusi Xnqiiiridi budahgi kudina yii. 
j. Duluun Sarani xni duluundi te bulai ghoorila sun dalidijin gershdiwa.

Lesson Thirty-Three

(130) THE BIG HORSERACE
There is a big horserace on the grassland near our village every year. In 1995 in spring, there was a very big race.

Hujin-Ghurandari Kijeel

(130) TE SHGE POMAAHUI
Ndani ayilini tadagu tengi shge wusi talaari ali fandida shge tigii pomaahuingi yiina. 1995 faJmi hawuishdi, tirii hudi shge tigii huichanggi yiina.
There were hundreds of people there. Many Mongghul people were there. My wife and I were at the horserace. Our friends, Limudanzhuu and Zhumaaqog were there, too. You can see us in the crowd. We are standing on the left. My wife, Lamulua, has a long beautiful brown Mongghul robe. My Mongghul robe is also brown. My Mongghul robe is short, it is not long. Lamulua and I are wearing Mongghul hats, too. They are brown hats.

Tindixi kidi jang kun yiina. Ahangi Mongghul kun tirii yiina. Muni beerida buda ghoorilana pomaahuir yii. Budahgini zhonii Limudanzhuu

There were three hundred horses in the race. There were brown horses, red horses, white horses, big horses, and small horses. Children were riding the horses. Children are small. They can ride horses and the horses are not tired. The horses can run for a long time and not feel tired.


It was an exciting finish. The children’s families were waiting for the children. The race was two hours. The children were tired and the horses were tired, too. It was an exciting finish. The winner was Gaasan. Gaasan is eight years old. He was riding a big black horse. The horse was number seventy-seven. Gaasan’s mother and father said, “Gaasan, aren’t you lucky!” The horse was hot. Seven other horses were just behind him.


On the way home, my wife said to me, “Don’t run so quickly on your horse! You are excited. You are not Gaasan!”

Kudina radilani, muni beeri nda kilena, “Morina yixi malii bii yiuqha! Qi tigii baisiji. Qi Gaasan puja!”

a. Where is there a big horserace every year?
b. When was there a big horserace?
c. Was the horserace small?
d. Was the horserace in winter?
e. Who are Limudanzhuu and Zhumaaqog?
f. Where are Lamulua and her husband standing?
g. Is Lamulua’s robe blue?
h. What color is Lamulua’s robe?
i. Is Lamulua’s robe short?
j. Is Lamulua’s husband’s robe long?
k. How many horses were there in the race?
l. Were there five hundred horses in the race?
m. What color were the race horses?
n. Who were riding the horses?
o. Was the finish interesting?
p. Who were waiting for the children?
q. How long was the race?
r. Who were tired?
s. What did Gaasan’s mother say?
t. Was Gaasan lucky?
u. Is Gaasan 18 years old?
v. Was Gaasan’s horse white?
w. What number was Gaasan’s horse?
x. Was Gaasan’s horse cold?
y. How many horses were just behind Gaasan?
z. What did Lamulua say to her husband on the way home?
aa. Was Lamulua’s husband excited?

a. Anji ali fandida shge tigii pomaahuingi yiinani?
b. Ali sghuudini tiri shge pomaahuingi yiina?
c. Te pomaahui mulawani?
d. Te pomaahui rguulidiwani?
e. Limudanzhuu da Zhumaaqog ghoorila kenna?
f. Lamuluada liuhan ghoorilana anjini puzija?
g. Lamuluani narinangni yiilangani?
h. Lamuluani narinangni amahgii udogga?
i. Lamuluani narinangni hguariwani?
j. Lamuluani liuhanniini snbaini shduriwani?
k. Te pomaahuiru kidingi mori yiina?
l. Pomaahuiru tawun jang mori yiinani?
m. Te guaijin morihgini udogni amahgiinga?
n. Te morihgini ken funija?
o. Buradilani xoixiannani?
p. Te bulaihgni ken sgaa soja?
q. Pomaahuini guaiji buraghasa kidihangi sghuu gulaguna?

r. Ken yidaja?
s. Gaasanni aamani yan kilena?
t. Gaasan xnyunnani?
u. Gaasan haran-niiman nesilijani?
v. Gaasanmorini qighaangani?
w. Gaasanmorini homani kidihanga?
x. Gaasanmorini kuidenrajani?
y. Gaasan huinani kidihangi mori lailaja?
z. Kudini radilani Lamulua liuhandina yan kileja?

aa. Lamuluani liuhanni baisijani?

(131) Lamulua: What’s Rashidan like, Yangsuu?
Yangsuu: He’s awful! He telephoned me five times yesterday and three times the day before yesterday.
Lamulua: He telephoned the office yesterday morning and yesterday afternoon. My boss, Mr. Niima, answered the telephone.

Yangsuu: What did your boss say to him?
Lamulua: He said, “Miss Lamulua is typing letters. She can not speak to you now!” Then I arrived home at six o’clock yesterday evening. He telephoned again. But I didn’t answer the phone!

Yangsuu: Did he telephone again last night?
Lamulua: Yes, he did. He telephoned at nine o’clock.

Yangsuu: What did you say to him?
Lamulua: I said, “This is Lamulua’s mother. Please don’t telephone my daughter again!”

Yangsuu: Did he telephone again?
Lamulua: No, he didn’t!
a. What is Rashidan like?
b. Who telephoned Lamulua yesterday?
c. How many times did he telephone yesterday?
d. Did he telephone the day before yesterday?
e. How many times did Rashidan telephone the day before yesterday?
f. Who telephoned the office yesterday morning?
g. Who telephoned the office yesterday afternoon?
h. Who answered the telephone?
i. What did Lamulua’s boss say to Rashidan?
j. Who was typing letters?
k. Who could not speak to Rashidan?
l. Who arrived home at six o’clock yesterday evening?
m. What time did Lamulua arrive home yesterday evening?
n. Did Lamulua arrive home yesterday in the morning?
o. Who telephoned Lamulua yesterday evening?
p. Did Lamulua answer the telephone?
q. Who telephoned Lamulua last night?
r. What time did Rashidan telephone Lamulua last night?
s. What did Lamulua say to Rashidan when he telephoned last night?
t. Did Rashidan telephone Lamulua again?
u. Does Rashidan like Lamulua?
v. Does Lamulua like Rashidan?

a. Rashidan amahgiinga?
b. Quguduri Lamuluadi ken denhuaa pughaja?
c. Quguduri gan kidi hui denhuaa pughaja?
d. Gan juduri denhuaa pughajani?
e. Juduri Rashidan kidi hui denhuaa pughaja?
f. Quguduri mogxijini ken bangunshirji denhuaa pughaja?
g. Quguduri xruudini ken bangunshirji denhuaa pughaja?
h. Ken denhuaani harilija?
i. Lamuluani loobanni Rashidandi yan kileja?
j. Ken xn pughana?
k. Ken Rashidandi harili shdan gua?
I. Quguduri suanini ken liudenri kudina kurija?

m. Quguduri suanini Lamuluua ali sghuudini kudina kurija?

n. Lamuluua quguduri shdejini kudina kurijani?

o. Qugulang suanini ken Lamuluadi denhuaa pughaja?

p. Lamuluua te denhuaani harilijani?

q. Qugusuani ken Lamuluadi denhuaa pughaja?

r. Qugulang ali sghuudini Rashidan Lamuluadi denhuaa pughaja?

s. Lamuluua qugulang suanini Rashidanni denhuaarni yamakiji harilija?

t. Rashidan dii Lamuluadi denhuaa pughajani?

u. Rashidan Lamuluani duralanani?

v. Lamuluua Rashidanni duralanani?

(132) MRS. MILLS VISITS HUZHU

The week before last, Mrs. Mills, a fifty-seven year old American woman, went to Huzhu. She wanted to see Youning Temple and learn about Mongghul culture. Mrs. Mills thinks Mongghul culture is very interesting. She does not know Huzhu very well and she lost her way. Suddenly she saw a woman near a bus-stop. “I can ask her the way,” she said to herself.

(132) MIYOG AAYI HUZHUU RJA


“Excuse me,” she said. “Can you tell me the way to Youning Temple please?”

“Nige lusiliya,” te kileguni. “Qi Rgulang xjin moorini ndangi kilesa ligunani?”

The woman smiled pleasantly. She did not understand English! She spoke Mongghul. She lived in Huzhu with her family and was a housewife.

Very slowly the woman said, “I’m sorry. I do not speak English.”

Te nine kun saighangi xnina. Te Yinyii muden gua! Te Mongghul gulena. Teni kudini Huzhuuwa, jinani kudina warijin larihgaqinga.

Mrs. Mills saw a young man also standing by the bus-stop. She asked him, “Do you speak English?” He also smiled pleasantly and said, “Yes. I speak a little English.” The young man was a Mongghul student from Huzhu Nationalities Middle School. Mrs. Mills was very happy. Mrs. Mills said, “Can you please tell me the way to Youning Temple? I want to go to Youning Temple but I don’t speak Mongghul. I do not know the
way.” The young Mongghul man, Niima, said, “Yes, I am going to Young Temple. We can go together!” Mrs. Mills said, “Thank you very much!”


A bus came to the bus stop. Mrs. Mills and Niima went to Young Temple together. Mrs. Mills liked Young Temple. She saw many lamas and many beautiful paintings.


Lesson Thirty-Four

a. Who went to Huzhu?
b. What was Mrs. Mills’ nationality?
c. Was Mrs. Mills English?
d. How old was Mrs. Mills?
e. What did Mrs. Mills want to do?
f. What was interesting?
g. Did Mrs. Mills know Huzhu very well?
h. Where is Young Temple?
i. Who did Mrs. Mills ask first?
j. Who did Mrs. Mills ask second?
k. Why did the woman not tell Mrs. Mills the way to Young Temple?
l. Who was the young man?
m. Where did the young man study?
n. Was the young man a policeman?
o. What did the woman tell Mrs. Mills?
p. Where did Niima and Mrs. Mills go?
q. What language did Mrs. Mills speak?
r. Did Mrs. Mills speak Mongghul?
s. What country was Mrs. Mills from?
t. Who speaks Mongghul and English?
u. Who smiled pleasantly?
v. Who were standing at the bus-stop?
w. Was Niima an awful young man?
x. What did Mrs. Mills like?
y. What did Mrs. Mills see?

Hujin-Deerandari Kijeel

a. Ken Huzhuu xja?
b. Miiyog Aayi anjisa rsana?
c. Miiyog Aayi Yingui kunnani?
d. Miiyog Aayi kidihangi nesilija?
e. Miiyog Aayi yan dundogi amaszada galagu gulaguna?
f. Yandi hudi duralana?
g. Miiyog Aayi Huzhuuni saighangi mudenani?
h. Rgulang Rgunbaa anja?
i. Miiyog Aayi kendi zui muxi szaghaja?

j. Miiyog Aayi huinayangdi kendi szaghaja?

k. Amaga tengi nine kun Rgulang Rgunbaadi xjin moorini te Miiyog aayidi kileja gua?

l. Te lalang kun kenna?

m. Te lalang kun anji surina?

n. Te lalang kun jincaangani?

o. Te nine kun Miiyog Aayidi yan kileja?

p. Niima da Miiyog Aayi ghoorila anji xja?

q. Miiyog Aayi yan ugo gule shdana?

r. Miiyog Aayi Mongghul gule shdanani?

s. Miiyog Aayi ali lussa rsana?

t. Ken Mongghul da Yiniini gule shdana?

u. Ken saighangi xniina?

v. Ken gungun qiichairi puza soja?

w. Niima muu tigii kungani?

x. Miiyog Aayi amahgiinga?

y. Miiyog Aayi yan sgaja?

Salesman: We had some shoes like those a week ago but we haven’t any now.

Lamulu: Can you get a pair for me please?

Salesman: I’m afraid that I can’t. They were in fashion last year and the year before last. But they’re not in fashion this year. These shoes are in fashion now. Do you like them?

Lamulu: They look very uncomfortable.

Salesman: They are very uncomfortable. But women always wear uncomfortable shoes!

(133) Lamulu: Qimu ne sanba fulaan hai yiu? Bu ne sanba haini duralani, bu ne sanba haini luan awugii.

Dalidijin: Qi jiihogni duralani?

Lamulu: Bu qiihogni duralani.

Dalidijin: Yan udog?

Lamulu: Fulaan.

Dalidijin: Dii amahgii. Budahgidi ne sanba fulaan hai gui.

Lamulu: Muni aajii muxi sara jiu ne sanbani nige fang awuja.

Dalidijin: Te tehgini jiu diriisa awujani?

Lamulu: Gua. teni te Biijinsa awuja.

Dalidijin: Budahgi te sanba haini nige xngiisa muxi darang yii. doha nigeda guiraxja.

Lamulu: Qi nda nige fang shdula gii shdagunani?

Dalidijin: Bu muulasu ada kua. Tehgini shdanangda rjang hudi musilidina. Tehgini nanggu fandi yixi musilidin gua. Ne haihgni nang yixi luan musilidina. Qi nehgni duralani?

Lamulu: Tehgini rjesa yixi futan gua.
Dalidijin: Tehgi hudi futan gua. Dansi nine kunhgi kijeeda futan guijin haini musina!

a. What does Lamulua want?
b. Does Lamulua want to buy a hat?
c. Does Lamulua want to buy black shoes?
d. What size shoes does Lamulua want?
e. Does Lamulua want size five shoes?
f. What color shoes does Lamulua want?
g. Who bought shoes last month?
h. Did Lamulua’s mother buy shoes last month?
i. Where did Lamulua’s sister buy the shoes?
j. Did Lamulua’s sister buy the shoes in Huzhu?
k. Does the salesman have the shoes Lamulua wants?
l. When did the salesman have the shoes Lamulua wants?
m. Can the salesman get the shoes Lamulua wants?
n. When were the shoes Lamulua wants in fashion?
o. Are the shoes Lamulua wants in fashion this year?
p. Are the shoes that are in fashion now comfortable?
q. Who always wear uncomfortable shoes?
r. Do women always wear comfortable shoes?

a. Lamulua yan duralana?
b. Lamulua haingi awugi duralanani?
c. Lamulua hara haingi awugii ginani?
d. Lamulua amahgii shge haingi awugii gina?
e. Lamulua wuuhogni haingi awugii ginani?
f. Lamulua amahgii udogdii hai duralana?
g. Muxi sara ken hai awuja?
h. Lamuluani aamani muxi sara hai awujani?
i. Lamuluani aaiini anjisa hai awuja?
j. Lamuluani aaiini Huzhuusa te haini awujani?
k. Dalidijindi te Lamulua duralajin hai yinani?
l. Ali sghududini te dalidijin kungi Lamulua duralajin te hai yiina?
m. Te dalidijin Lamulua duralajin te sanba haini gharishdini rua shdagunani?
n. Lamulua duralajin te sanba hai ali sghuudini xnsiwa?
o. Lamulua duralajin te sanba hai nengi fandi xnsiwani?
p. Do xnsilajin te sanba haini musisa futannani?
q. Ken jiisindi te sanba futan guijin haini musina?
r. Nine kun jiisindi te sanba futan haini musinani?

Niima and Lamulua live on a tall mountain with many trees. They are very poor. They have no animals. They do not have any sons and daughters. They have no children. They work very hard. Now, Niima and Lamulua are old. Niima says, “Lamulua, what are we going to do? We are old now and we have no children.” Lamulua says, “We must go to the temple. We will ask Buddha to give us a child.”
Niima and Lamulua go to a temple. They ask Buddha to please give them a child. Two months later Lamulua’s knee is very big. Niima and Lamulua do not know why Lamulua’s knee is very large. After nine months, Lamulua’s knee is very very big. Niima takes a knife. He cuts the knee. A bawog (frog) jumps out. Niima does not like the frog. Lamulua says, “Niima. I am this frog’s mother. You must like the frog.”


The frog says, “You are my mother and father.” Niima and Lamulua are very happy. The frog can speak Mongghul!

Te bawog kileguni, “Tehgi muni aama aabawa.” Niima da Lamulua hudi baisija. Te bawog Mongghul ugo gule shdana!

Lamulua and Niima like the frog. The frog is their son. They give Bawog some good food every day. They like Bawog.


Three years later Lamulua and Niima are very old. Bawog is not happy. His mother and father must work very hard. Bawog says, “Mother, I want to marry. I want to marry that rich man’s daughter.”


Lamulua says, “Bawog, you are a frog. You are not a man. The rich man does not like frogs. He does not
want you to marry his daughter. He may kill you. Do not go to his home. Do not ask to marry his daughter.” Bawog says, “Mother, don’t worry. Now, I am going to the rich man’s home. I want to marry his daughter.”


Bawog goes to the rich man’s home. He goes to the rich man’s door. He says very loudly, “Rich Man, I want to marry your beautiful daughter! Please give her to me!” The rich man sees Bawog. He laughs. You are a frog. You are not a man. You can’t marry my daughter!”


Bawog says, “You must give me your daughter! If you do not give me your daughter, I will weep!” The rich man says, “Weep if you want to. You can not marry my beautiful daughter!” Bawog weeps. The sky is black. There is much rain. The rich man is afraid. He says, “Please stop weeping! You may marry my daughter!” Bawog stops weeping. The rain stops, also.


The rich man’s daughter sees Bawog. She says, “I do not like you. I do not want to marry a frog. I am a woman. I want to marry a handsome young Mongghul man!” Bawog says, “OK. If you do not want to marry me, I do not want to marry you!”


Bawog says to the rich man, “Your oldest daughter does not want to marry me. She does not like me. I do not like her. I do not want to marry her. I want to marry your second daughter.” The rich man says, “No, you can not marry my second daughter.” Bawog says, “I will hop.” The rich man says, “Hop if you want.
Lesson Thirty-Five

Bawog stops hopping. The mountains stop shaking. Second Daughter sees Bawog. She does not like Bawog. She says, "I do not like you. You are a frog. I do not want to marry a frog. I want to marry a handsome young rich man!"

Hujin-Tawundari Kijeel


You can not marry my beautiful second daughter." Bawog hops. Mountains shake. The rich man is afraid. He says, "Please stop. You can marry my second daughter!"


Bawog says, "I do not like you. I do not want to marry you!"

Bawog kileguni, "Bu qimu lii duralani. Bu qimula yii jihihulun!"

Bawog says to the rich man, "Your first daughter and your second daughter do not want to marry me. I do not want to marry them. Please give me your third daughter."

Bawog te bayan kundi kileguni, "Qini loda da loai xjun ghoorila ndala jihihunlagu duralan gua. Bu tehgilada jihihunlagu yii duralani. Qi nda losan xjunna ghua."

The rich man says, "No! No! No! You cannot marry my third daughter. She is very beautiful. She does not want to marry you! You are a frog. Girls do not want to marry frogs! They want to marry handsome young men!"

Bawog says, "I want to marry my third daughter. I do not want to marry you! I am a frog. I do not want to marry a frog. I want to marry a handsome young rich man!"


The rich man says, "Aghin! Aghin! Aghin! Qi muni losan xjunla jihihunla adan. Te hudi saighanna. Te qimula jihihunlagu duralan gua! Qi bawoggala. Xjunhgi bawogila jihihunlagu duralan gua! Tehgi zanjin tigii saighan kunla jihihunlagu duralana!"

Bawog kileguni, "Bu xniigii." Te bayan kun kileguni, "Qi xniil!"

Bawog laughs. The rich man's house walls shake. The rich man is afraid!
d. Today I plays.
e. What are you does?
f. What is he did?
g. What did he doing?
h. What was Niima did?
i. What am the teacher doing?
j. What are I doing?
k. What are the students did?
l. What is they did?
m. Where is he went?
n. When did you going home?
o. When are your birthday?
p. Yesterday I seeing my horse.
q. Today I studies English and Mongghul books.
r. Yesterday I studying Chinese.
s. He is buying a black horse.
t. She is bought a big black yak.

(136) Ne ugohginin duilasangin jiuri.
a. Bu qugudurishdi nadigunii.
b. Quguduri, bu nadina.
c. Niuduri, bu nadighana.
d. Niuduri, bu nadina.
e. Qi amagina?
f. Gan mukaha amagija?
g. Gan amagija giniigunaa?
h. Niima amagija gala?
i. Te losi amaginiiyii?
j. Bu amaginaniinii?
k. Te xuusanghgi muka amagija?
l. Tehgi muka amagija?
m. Gan muka anji xja?
n. Qi kudina kijeeni zhin xwa?
o. Qini tushizog muka kijeeva?
p. Quguduri, bu morina sganii?
q. Niuduri bu Yinyii da Mongghul pujuhginin surina.
r. Quguduri bu Qidari puju surinii.
s. Gan hara morigi avu.
t. Tendi shge hara musingi muka awuja.

(137) Answer these questions.
a. Who are you?
b. How are you?
c. Are you a student?
d. Are you a man, a woman, a boy, or a girl?
e. What are you all?
f. Is that right?
g. How many students are there in the class?
h. How many books are there on the table?
i. How many windows are there in the room?
j. Is this right, “Six and four are nine?”

(137) Ne wuncihginin huidala.
a. Qi kenniisa?
b. Qi sainiisa?
c. Qi xuusanggi yiu?
d. Qi dide kunji yiu, nine kunji yiu, kuu bulaiungi yiu, xjungi yii?
e. Qi yiigulaa kennii?
f. Te ninbani?
g. Joshiririi kidihangi xuusang yiu?
h. Xrai dira amahangi pjuu yiu?
i. Ger tura amahangi qangguang yiu?

(138) Make these sentences plural.
The sheep is running on the mountain.
The sheep are running on the mountain.
a. The man is sitting at the table.
b. A child is playing near the tree.
c. Is the man eating an apple?
d. The woman is not smoking a cigarette.
Ne ugohgini fufuudi furagha.
Te huni ghadara guaina.
Te huni ghadara guaina.

a. Te kun xraira soja.
b. Bulaingi xjuzi tada nadina.
c. Te kun piingungi rdenani?
d. Te nine kun yangi qidan gua.

Niima: What are you doing this morning Lamulua?
Lamulua: I’m making a long shopping list, Niima.
Niima: What do we need?
Lamulua: We need a lot of things this week. I must go to the store. We haven’t got much tea and we haven’t got any sugar or salt.
Niima: What about vegetables?
Lamulua: We haven’t got many tomatoes, but we’ve got a lot of potatoes. I must go to the butcher’s, too. We need some mutton. We haven’t got any mutton at all.
Niima: Have we got any beer and wine?
Lamulua: No, we haven’t. And I’m not going to get any!
Niima: I hope that you’ve got some money.
Lamulua: I haven’t got much.
Niima: Well I haven’t got much either.

Budahgini dashizi, qa, da garaa giji yamada gua.
Niima: Saihgila?
Niima: Budahgini piju ju da putoju giji yinani?
Lamulua: Gua, budahgidi gua. Bu awugii giji muulan gui!
Niima: Bu muulasas qimu te awugu seeri yiiba.
Lamulua: Nда luan gui.
Niima: Ndada luangi gui.

a. What is Lamulua doing?
b. Is Lamulua reading a book?
c. Is Lamulua making a shopping list?
d. Who is Lamulua?
e. Who is Niima?
f. Is Lamulua Niima’s husband?
g. Is Niima Lamulua’s wife?
h. Is it evening?
i. Is it morning?
j. Where is Lamulua?
k. Where is Niima?
l. Where are Lamulua and Niima?
m. Do Lamulua and Niima have much tea?
n. Is Lamulua going to buy some tea?
o. Where must Lamulua go?
p. Must Lamulua go to school?
q. Must Lamulua go to the butcher’s?
r. What is Lamulua making?
s. Where is Lamulua going to go?
t. Is Lamulua sleeping?
u. Does Lamulua have many tomatoes?
v. Does Lamulua have many potatoes?
w. Where must Lamulua buy meat?
x. Does Lamulua have much mutton?
y. Does Lamulua need some meat?
z. Does Lamulua want to buy some beer and wine?
aa. Does Niima want Lamulua to buy some beer and wine?
bb. Do Lamulua and Niima have any beer and wine?
cc. Does Lamulua have much money?
dd. Does Niima have much money?
eee. Do Lamulua and Niima have much money?

a. Lamulua amagina?
b. Lamulua pujiungi rjenani?
c. Lamulua yama awuguni mulanani?
d. Lamulua kenna?
e. Niima kenna?
f. Lamulua Niimani liuhannani?
g. Niima Lamuluanani beerinani?
h. Do suaniwani?
i. Do shdejiwani?
j. Lamulua anja?
k. Niima anja?
l. Niima da Lamulua ghoorila anja?
m. Niima da lamulua ghooriladi qa luannani?
n. Lamulua qamangi awula xgunani?
o. Lamulua anji amagisada xgu gulaguna?
p. Lamulua amagisada xuutangdi xgunani?
q. Lamulua amagisada muha dalidijin denri xgunani?
r. Lamulua amagina?
s. Lamulua anji xna?
t. Lamulua qaajani?
u. Lamuluadi ahangi xiihunsi yiinani?
v. Lamuluadi ahangi saayog yiinani?

w. Anji Lamulua amagisada muha awula xgu gulaguna?
x. Lamuluadi ahangi muha yiinani?
y. Lamuluadi muhamangi gulagunani?
z. Lamulua piiju da putojumangi awugu duralanani?
aa. Niima ne Lamulua piiju da putojumangi awusa duralanani?
bb. Lamulua da Niima ghooriladi piiju da putojumangi yiinani?
cc. Lamuluadi seeri luannani?
dd. Niimadi seeri luannani?
ee. Lamulua da Niimadi seeri ahangi yiinani?

Rashidan: Hello, Lamulua!
Where's Niima?
Lamulua: He's upstairs. He's having a bath. Niima!
Niima: Yes?
Lamulua: Rashidan is here.
Niima: I'm nearly ready.
Niima: Hello, Rashidan. Have a cigarette.
Rashidan: No, thanks, Niima. I don't smoke.
Niima: Have a glass of whisky then.
Rashidan: OK. Thanks. I like whisky and I'll have a small glass.
Niima: Is dinner ready, Lamulua?
Lamulua: It's nearly ready. We can have dinner at seven o'clock.
Niima: Rashidan and I had lunch together today. We went to a restaurant.
Lamulua: What did you have?
Niima: We had roast beef and potatoes.
Lamulua: Oh!
Niima: What's the matter, Lamulua?
Lamulua: Well, you're going to have roast beef and potatoes again tonight!
Rashidan: Ghai, Lamulua!
Niima anja?
Lamulua: Gan liuzi dirawa. Gan baina ghuanana. Niima!
Niima: Ghai.
Lamulua: Rashidan diriiwa?
Niima: Bu muka shdawa.
Niima: Nige langhua wuisikii durasiha lai.
Lamulua: Muka shdawa. Budahgi qidenri suaniguni wuqiya.
Lamulua: Tehgi yan rdewa?
Niima: Budahgi saayog da aasi muha rdewa.
Lamulua: Ghog!
Niima: Lamulua, dii yama yiu?
Lamulua: Ghog, qi yang saayog da aasi muha zhunbiila, yang rdelidiya!

**Lesson Thirty-Seven**

a. Is Lamulua taking a bath? Is Rashidan taking a bath?
b. Is Lamulua upstairs? Is Rashidan upstairs?
c. What is Niima doing? Is Niima reading a book?
d. Does Rashidan want a cigarette? Does Rashidan like cigarettes?
e. Does Rashidan like whisky? Does Lamulua drink some whisky?
f. What is Lamulua doing?
g. Is Niima cooking dinner?
h. Is it morning? Is it afternoon?
i. Who had lunch together?
j. Did Niima and Rashidan have lunch together yesterday?
k. What did Niima and Rashidan have for lunch?
l. Did Niima and Rashidan have mutton for lunch?
m. What is Lamulua cooking for dinner?
n. Is Lamulua cooking mutton for dinner?
o. Is Rashidan cooking dinner?
p. What are they going to have for dinner tonight?

**Hujin-Duluundari Kijeel**

a. Lamulua baina ghuanani? Rashidan baina ghuanani?
b. Lamulua liuzi dirawani? Rashidan liuzi dirawa?
c. Niima amagina? Niima pujungi rjenani?
d. Rashidan yangi qidagu duralajani? Rashidan yan duralanani?
e. Rashidan wuisikii duralanani? Lamulua wuisikiimangi wuqinani?
f. Lamulua amagina?
g. Niima suaniguni shdanani?
h. Xruudinani? Shdejina?
i. Ken handiladi durihgun wuqija?
j. Quguduri Niima da Rashidan ghoorila handiladi durihgun wuqijani?
k. Niima da Rashidan ghoorila durihgundini yan wuqija?
l. Niima da Rashidan ghoorila durihgundini huni muha rdejani?
m. Lamulua suanini yan shdana?
n. Lamulua suanini huni muha qinanani?
o. Rashidan suanini shdanani?
p. Niusuani ganhgi yan wuqilidiguna?
(144) **Correct these sentences.**

a. Where are Tom?
b. What is you doing?
c. What did you done?
d. Yesterday, I go to class.
e. They is ill.
f. I likes studying English.
g. They sees 20 yaks on the mountain.
h. Tomorrow, I goes home.
i. Yesterday, I goes home.
j. They were reads the books.
k. We enjoys the party Saturday night at Huzhu Nationalities Middle School.
l. I like to drank whisky.
m. They are eats mutton.
n. She taking her child to the park.
o. Last week, you was looking at the beautiful grassland.
p. He likes to gave children money.
q. She is going to staying at home, she is not goes to the party.
r. They likes to driving their new cars.
s. I standing for three hours on the bus.
t. He is empties the bowl.
u. He likes to climbing mountains.
v. I am going to calls him tomorrow.
w. Yesterday, Lamulua boiling some mutton.
x. Please listening to these new words.
y. That little girl can turning on the radio.
z. The day before yesterday, I sharpens three red pencils.

aa. Every morning, Lamulua cleaning the room.
bb. I like to aired my room in the morning.

cc. She is going to arrives the day after tomorrow.
dd. Please answering the telephone.

ee. When are you going to telephoned the doctor?

ff. In summer, I like to swam in the Yellow River.

gg. I enjoying riding horses and yaks.

hh. He working in the morning.

ii. We are going to meeting this evening.

(144) **Ne ugohgini duilagha.**

a. Tangmuu anjii?
b. Qi amagina?
c. Qi yamagijawa?
d. Quguduri, bu joshirna xgii.
e. Tehgi narilajawa.
f. Bu Yinyii surigu duralanna.
g. Tehgi ghadara hurin musi sgaja.
h. Malang, bu kudina xguna.
i. Quguduri, bu kudina xguna.
j. Tehgi lengi puijuni rjeja.
k. Budahgi te Xnqiiiluni suanini Huzhuu Mongghulxan Miinzuu Zhunxuurgu lengi wanhuini duralana.
l. Bu wuisikiini wuqiwa duralani.
m. Tehgi huni muha rdenii.
n. Te bulaina dura gunyuanri xi.
o. Muxi xnqii qi saighan te coyuanri rjena.
p. Gan te bulaihgidi seeri ghuwa duralana.
q. Te kudina sola xna, te gunyuanri xi gua.
r. Tehgi te xni tirigahgina kaigigu duralani.
s. Bu gunqun qichairi ghuran zhuntuu puziwa.
t. Gan te yighaani arighawa.
u. Gan ghadari palanii gharigu duralana.
v. Bu gandi malang denhuaa
pughana.
w. Quguduri, Lamulua huni muha
ahangi xjualighanii.
x. Ne xni ugohgini qangla.
y. Ne mula xjune shuuyinzini dog
gharigha shdana.
z. Juduri bu ghuran qanbii xuki
shdana.

aa. Guadi mogxiji, Lamulua te gerna
zhin gharighana.
bb. Shdeji bu gershdiina wuuri
rghawa.
cc. Gan qinada kuriija shdaguna.

(142) Answer these questions using
the correct forms of “write.”
a. What did he do?
b. What is he doing?
c. What was he doing?
d. What were they doing?
e. What did they do?
f. What are they doing?
g. What am I doing?
h. What was I doing?
i. What did I do?
j. What did she do?
k. What was she doing?
l. What is she doing?
m. What did he do?
n. What was he doing?
o. What is he doing?
p. What did we do?
q. What were we doing
r. What are we doing?
s. What was Niima doing?
t. What is Niima doing?
u. What did Niima do?
v. What is the teacher doing?
w. What did the teacher do?
x. What was the teacher doing?

(142) Ne “jiuri” ni duilasan loglani
ne wrechigni huidala.
a. Gan amagija?
b. Gan amagina?
c. Gan amaginiiguna?
d. Tehgi amaginiiguna?
e. Tehgi amagija?
f. Tehgi amagina?
g. Bu amagina?
h. Bu amaginiiguna?
i. Bu amagija?
j. Te amagija?
k. Te amaginiiguna?
l. Te amagina?
m. Gan amagija?
n. Gan amaginiiguna?
o. Gan amagina?
p. Budahgi amagija?
q. Budahgi amaginiiguna?
r. Budahgi amagina?
s. Niima amaginiiguna?
t. Niima amagija?
u. Niima amagina?
v. Te losi amagina?
w. Te losi amagija?
x. Te losi amaginiiguna?
Lesson Thirty-Eight

Figures

Hujin-Niimandari Kijeel

Tuuhgi

(1) Balloons
a. What are in the picture?
b. How many balloons are in the picture?
c. How many light-colored balloons are in the picture?
d. How many dark colored balloons are in the picture?

(1) Qiiqiuhgi
a. Tuuri yana?
b. Tuuri kidihangi qiiqiu yiina?
c. Tuuri udogni kunguanhan qiiqiu kidi yiina?
d. Tuuri udogni guanhan qiiqiu kidi yiina?

(2) Arrow
a. In what direction is the arrow pointing?
b. Is the arrow pointing south?
c. Is the arrow pointing west?

(2) Smu
a. Smu ali rogshdiji furaja?
b. Smu nanmengogdiji furajani?
c. Smu xiimengogdiji furajani?

(3) What’s in the picture?

(3) Tuuri

(4) Certificate
a. When do people get certificates?
b. Do you have any certificates?
c. When did you get a certificate?

(4) Shnfinzhin
a. Kun ali sghuudini shnfinzhinni awu shdana?
b. Qimu shnfinzhinma yiu?
c. Qi kijeeni shnzhihingi turilawa?

(5) Magnifying glass
a. How many magnifying glasses are in the picture?
b. What are magnifying glasses used for?
c. Who use magnifying glasses?

(5) Fangdaajin
a. Tuuri kidihangi fangdaajin yiina?
b. Fangdaajinla yamagina?
c. Ken fangdaajinini yanglana?

(6) Printer
What are printers used for?

(6) Yinfaazi
Yinfaazila yamagina?

(7) Bulb
a. When did you last buy a bulb?
b. Why did you buy it?
c. How much do bulbs cost?
d. How many bulbs are in your classroom?
e. Are all bulbs the same?

(7) Dinpog
a. Qi muxi yang kijeeni dinpoggi awuwa?
b. Qi amaga teni awuwa?
c. Dinpogghi nemni kidihanga?
d. Tehgini joshira kidihangi dinpog yii?
e. Dinpog yiiguala salidanani?

(8) Checkmark
When do people use checkmarks?

(8) Jencalajin
Kun kijeeni jencalajinla yanglana?

(9) Disk
a. What are disks used for?
b. What do disks store?
c. How much does a disk cost?
d. Where can disks be bought?
(9) Diisiki
a. Diisikila amagina?
b. Diisikiri yan cunkina?
c. Diisikingi kidihangi nemna?
d. diisikihgini anjisa awu shdanna?

(10) Mail
a. What are in this picture?
b. How many letters are in the picture?
c. How many mailbags are in the picture?
d. Where do you get your mail everyday?

(10) Xn
a. Tuuri yana?
b. Tuuri kidihangi xn yiina?
c. Tuuri kidihangi xn fuuda yiina?
d. Qi guadindi anjisa xnhgina hura shdani?

(11) Scales
a. What are scales used for?
b. Who use scales?

(11) Warima
a. Warimaala amagina?
b. Ken warimaani yanglana?

(12) This picture means that something has burst.
a. What kinds of things burst?
b. When do they burst?

(12) Nengi tuura yangi xangmog hgara szan tigii.
a. Amahgii dangxi hgaraxja?
b. Tehgi ali sghuudini hgarana?

(13) Clock
a. What do clocks do?
b. What time is it?

(13) Denzhun
a. Denzhunla amagina?
b. Do ali sghuudiwa?

(14) Gavel
There is a gavel in the picture. A gavel is used in a meeting. The leader of the meeting hits the table with the gavel when he wants other people to listen to what he says. A gavel is made of wood. It looks like a hammer.

a. What is a gavel?
b. Who use gavels?


a. Muudi chuingi yana?
b. Ken teni yanglana?

(15) Bicycle
a. What are bicycles used for?
b. How much does a bicycle cost?

(15) Ziixinchayla. Ziixinchhaihgilaa magina?
b. Nige ziixin chaihgi kidihangi nem gharina?

(16) Newspaper
a. What is a newspaper?
b. How many newspapers are in the picture?
c. Do you read newspapers?
d. What newspapers do you read?

(16) Boozi
a. Boozi yana?
b. Tuuri kidihangi boozi yiina?
c. Qi boozimangi rje niu?
d. Qi ali sanba boozini rjeni?

(17) Star
a. How many stars are there? (countless; innumerable)
b. When do you see stars?
c. Where are stars?

(17) Fuudi
a. Tiri kidihangi fuudi yiina? (kajang gua; tulaji gharigha adani)
b. Qi kijeeni fuudihgingi sgani?
c. Fuudihgi anja?
(18) **Butterfly**
a. What are butterflies? (insects)
b. What color are butterflies?
c. Do you see butterflies in winter?
d. Where do you find butterflies?

(18) **Xanbalaxji**
a. Xanbalaxji yana? (huarighii)
b. Xanbalaxjira amahgii udogdiini yiina?
c. Qi rgu idi xanbalaxji sgawu?
d. Qi anjisa xanbalaxjini sgani?

(19) **Contract**
a. What do you see in the picture?
b. Where is the pen?
c. What is the hand doing?
d. What is a contract?

(19) **Huutun**
a. Tuuri tehgi yan sgawa?
b. Te gangbii anja?
c. Te ghari amagina?
d. Huutunni yana?

(20) A globe shows the world. In this globe we can see North America, South America, Africa, Europe, Asia, and Australia. These places are called “continents.” Where is North America? North America is located/ situated north of South America.
a. Where is Africa situated?
b. Where is South America situated?
c. Where is Australia situated?

a. Fiizhiu anjini soja?
b. Nanmengog Miiguini anjini soja?
c. Nodaliyaa anjina soja?

(21) What is in the picture? What is it used for?
(21) Tuuri yana? Tela amagina?

(22) There are three things in the picture. What are they?

(22) Tuuri ghuran dangxi yiina. Tehgi yana?

(23) This is a calendar. How many days are in a month? year? week?

(23) Ne rlinga. Nige sara kidihangi duriwa? Nige fandini kidihangi duri yiina? Nige xiqidini kidihangi duri yiina?

(24) Hands
   a. What are in the picture?
   b. How many fingers do you have?
   c. Where are your fingers?
   d. What are the hands doing? (clapping; applauding)
   e. When do people clap/ applaud?

(24) Gharihgi
   a. Tuuri yana?
   b. Qimu kidihangi huri yiia?
   c. Qini hurihgi anjii?
   d. Gharigila amagina? (pughana; gharina pughaji huanyinlana)
   e. Kunhgi ali sghuudini pugha/ gharina pughaji huanyinlana?

(25) Tell what are in the picture.
   a. What is the woman doing?
   b. What is the woman holding? (pointer)
   c. In which hand is the woman holding the pointer?
   d. What is the woman pointing to?
   e. What is the woman wearing?
   f. Where is the blackboard?

(25) Tuuri yana kile.
   a. Te nine kun yamagina?
   b. Te nine kun yan warija? (rjeghajin)
   c. Te nine kun ali gharishdina te rjeghajinni warija?
   d. Te nine kun yan rjeghana?
   e. Te nine kun yan musija?
   f. Te hiiban anja?
(26) **Trophy**
   a. When is a trophy given?
   b. Have you ever been given a trophy?

(26) **Jangbii**
   a. Kijeeni jangbiini ghuana?
   b. Qimu jangbiimangi ghuwu gui?

(27)
   a. Is this face happy? Why? (smiling)
   b. When are you happy?

(27)
   a. Nengi niuri baisijani? Amaga? (xniina)
   b. Qi kijeeni baisini?

(28)
   a. Is this face happy? Why?
   b. When are you sad?

(28) a. Nengi niuri baisijani? Amaga?
   b. Qi kijeeni pofanlani?
Part Eight
ENGLISH - HUZHU MONGGHUL & MINHE MANGGHUER
WORDLIST

Key
no brackets = Huzhu Mongghul
{ } = MINHE MANGGHUER
C = Chinese
QD = Qinghai Dialect
T = Tibetan

A

accomplish--buragha, {BURAGHA}
accustom--darisuu (T:dar srol), suri, {SUER, XIGUANRA}
(C:xiguan 習慣)
ache--yidi, wudi {BIETU}
achievement--sgaghaguni,
acid--hajin, {KHEZHENG}
acquire--ruagha (T:reg pa),
abundant--luandii, luangi, {WULANG}
actor--nadtjin, {NADUQIN}
across--duwa, dawa, {NUOQI}
act--dangla, nadi, {GE, DANGLA} (v), (C:dang 擦)
affair--dundog, {KHERE}
afraid--ayi, {AYI} (be afraid of)
after--huina, dighaji, {KUAI, KHUINUO, KHUO},
abhor--jiila, {WUJIDA}
ability--ziliu
about--bangjen, hgengii {BANGJIAN}
above--jighadi, durishdi {ZHAGHA}
abstract--sgaghagu, {KUANTAI}
absurd--xniighagu tigii,
{TULANG}
accompany--handiladi, nukuari {NUKUERBER}
{RENAR AO BANG, DIANDONG BANG} (C:renao 熱鬧)}
access--tadadi, {TADA}
accommodate--hudagha,
{KONGDU SAOKU GER HU}
accomplish--buragha,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>again--yang (T:yang), dii nige hui, {PUZA}</td>
<td>amble (horse)--malii yiu, {HUE RLI} (to go at a fast amble); mori jana yiu, {MORI ZOU YAO} (slow amble)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afresh--sangdi, yang (T:yang), {PUZA}</td>
<td>among--budahgini jirihgari, {TUDURUO, DUNDA, JIURA}; {DASINI DUNDA} (among ourselves)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>age--nesi; {NASI} shduli (v); shdugu kun, {NASITAIKONG} (aged people, elders)</td>
<td>analyze--dang pugha, sana {SANA, HUNXI} (C:fenxi 分析)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agitate--ghudiligha, {HUOSHENDA, SHUAIBULA, HUANGLA}</td>
<td>ancestor--shduguhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agrarian--ghajarini, {GH AZHERNI, ZHUANGJIAQINI} (C:zhuangjia 草稼)</td>
<td>and--gan, da, {MA, HAN, DAI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agreement--ligua, {DAYINGLA} (C:daying 答應)</td>
<td>anger--jiila, {WER}; jiilaxja, {WER KUER} (to become angry)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agriculture--taraani wuile, {ZHUANGJIA WEILIE} (C:zhuangjia 草稼)</td>
<td>animal--kashida aasi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aha--ha, {HAA}</td>
<td>animated--amindii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air (gas)--kii, {KAI}; kuiden kii, {KUITIAN KAI} (cold air)</td>
<td>anniversary--tushizog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alone--nigela, xghala, {KHEZHIGHER}</td>
<td>ant--xrigujiang, {MAYIER} (C:mai 螞蟻)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>along--yiizhi, {HANGTU} (along with)</td>
<td>appearance--logni, yiudalini, {WOSISANGNI} (of a person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all--yiigua, {YIGUA}; nigeuguadi (all at once, once and for all)</td>
<td>appendix--juri {JINJISHIBAO}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all right--ninba, {ZHA, BERN}</td>
<td>apply--yangla, {KERLI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost--shgengii, {PUZA DIGERSHI}</td>
<td>appoint--nigera, {PAILA, NANPAI} (C:pai 排)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alpine--{WENDUER WULANI}</td>
<td>appreciate--durala, {POHUANLA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also--darang {HANSHI} (C:haishi 還是)</td>
<td>approach--tadadi, {TADATU, KUERJI RI} (v); tadadiji (approaching)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alternate--raliji, {ARUERJI} (v)</td>
<td>approximate--shgengiini, bangjen {BANGJIAN}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always--kijeeda, yiidda, {YILAO, ZI, JIAOHUI}</td>
<td>apricot--sbii alimaa xjuzi, {REALIMA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are--wa, niu, yiu, {BANG, MUBANG}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
area--ruan, ghajari, {WURUANG; ZHAI}
argue--jangla, {JIANGLA};
jangladi (argument)
(C:jiang 議)
argue--wuusi, {GHAR, BOSI}
arm--qimuga, {GHAR HANSHI};
tiiri (armful); suul, {SUDURO}
(armpit)
around--tadadi, {TADA, KHERGHA}
arouse--sariga, {XIERRI, XIERGE, XIERRIGHA, DAOADA BOSIGHA}
arrive--kuri, {KUERRI}
arrogance--log shge,
{MULIANGLADA}
arow--smu, {LONGMU SIMU}
artery--qizi shdazi, {JIN, XIEGUER} (C:xueguan 血管)
article--pujiu
artisan--jangrin
(C:jiangren 匠人)
ash--funiisi, taxja (T:thal skya),
{HUNISI}
ashamed--xjee, {XIJIE}
aslant--murii snburii, {MURI}
awl--shuuga, {SHUBIGE}
awry--tnurii, {MURI, MERDEGH}
ax--sugua, {SUGUO}
aye--ninba, ghangla, {BERNI, MUBANG}

astonish--hgari ghari,
{GAIHARA}
astride--funi, {SHIGHAINANG ERCHALA WUNI}
astute--guairijigii ziliu, {JILIUNI, JIANJIANI}
attractive--duralaghagu,
{DURALAKUNI}
audience--qanglajin, sunisijin,
{CHENLIQIN, NAOQIN}
aversion--jiilaghagu tigii,
{kHEZHA} (to have an aversion)
await--sgaa, {XIGE}
awake--sari, {XIERRI, DAOADA BOSIGHA}
avoid--ghuja, {JIANG HU}
(C:jiang 獎)
awl--shuuga, {SHUBIGE}
awl--muusan,
{ZHANGWANGLA}
assemble--handi, nige shdaari,
{CHUOLA, NANLA}
assist--nukuari gi, {NUKUER BER}
associate--nukuari, {NUKUER}
(of a person)

B

back--huina, nurixjii, {NURU, KHAUINUO}; huinasanni
(backing); huinaji,
{KHAUINUOJI} (backwards);
yiuwa harili, {KHARI YAO} (step back)
bad--muu, {MAO, LAIDUIKUNI, MAOTUSANGNI} (C:dui 對)
bad (sack)--fuuda, kuabog
{SHUDA, CHUCHUER}; arasi
kuabog, {ARASI KUABAO, DADER} (of leather)
balance (scales)--warimaa, {BERMA}
balk--{DUSHI, DANGLA} (C:dang 擋)
brank--{MAODAN}
bamboo--huluzi, {KHULEGHSI}
bamboozle--{HUERGHUR, YOUKE}
bangle--bughuu, {BAGHAO}
bank (of a river)--murun, {ARUER CHEBIE, MIERAN CHEBIE}
banish--jiragharigha, {GUIDAGHA}
banquet--qa wari, {KHURONG}
bare (one's teeth)--shdina, {HUOHUER SHUDU}
bareback--yimeeli gua, {NUER}
base--xjiu, {ZHUER, DUORO}
basket--qalang, {ARUO, LUNLUER, CHULER} (woven, for dung collecting)
bat--xnlisuu, {AMI SARA} (animal)
bathe--ghua, {PAOLA, GHUA}
battle--pughalidi
be--yii, wa, ni (T:ni), {BANG, BI, MUBI, MUBANG}
bead--manii, {MANIE} (T:ma ni) (prayer beads)
beak--huji, {KHZHU}
bean--shge pujog, {PIJIEGH}
bear--haxun, {HAXIONG} (C:xiong 熊) (animal)
beard--sghali, {SIGHER}
beat--pugha, {BEGH, PEGH} (v)
beautiful--saighan, {SEIHANG, ZAIHANG}
because--tinga, dii, {TUOLI}
beckon--doda, {DAODA}
become--chinla, {BER}
bed--yikang, {HEGANG} (C:kang 炕) (T:gyis khang)
bee--zangnaa, {SHAZUONO}; xruu zangnaa, {SHAZUONO} (bumble-bee)
before--muxi, {MIESHI}
begetter--hgileqin, {KERLIQIN}
begin--muxini, {TERGHAI} (beginning); tulighui ghuanjisi, {TERGHAI XIER} (beginning and end)
behind--huina, {KHZUINO, KHUINUO; huina laxja, (to fall behind)
belch--kigirii, {GER BEGH} (v)
belief--xrai; {XINHUOLUO} (believe)
bell--shhua, {KHZUANGGHUANG}
bellow--qora, {MERRILI} (v);
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Sino-Platonic Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bellows</td>
<td>finxa, {HONGXIA}</td>
<td>(C: fengxiang 风箱)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belly</td>
<td>kiile, {GEDIESI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belongings</td>
<td>jinani dangxi, {JIANNI BIKUNI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beloved</td>
<td>duralajja, {DURUALAJI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below</td>
<td>duraji, {DUOROJI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belt</td>
<td>puzai (to wear); puzaila, {HUYA, PIJILI}</td>
<td>(V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bench</td>
<td>bandang, {BANDIN}</td>
<td>(C: ban 板)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend</td>
<td>murii snbrii, {WANKE}</td>
<td>(V); {WANKEGHA} (V); (C: wan 微) tulighuina pugiija (bend the head)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benefit</td>
<td>zinlasan seeri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>besides</td>
<td>tadadi, {NINSA GUORINI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best</td>
<td>lamanqan, {ZUI GEZAI}</td>
<td>(C: zui 最)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>betray</td>
<td>fura</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>better</td>
<td>sainidja, {GEZAITU} (to get better)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between</td>
<td>xjii, jiura, {JIURA, GHUERJIAN DUNDA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bind</td>
<td>bangla (anything which binds, fetters, ties); bangladii, {HUYA, BANGLA, HUIYA, ZHAKE} (C: bang 锚, zha 扎) (V)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birch</td>
<td>jariai xjuusi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bird</td>
<td>xuu, {SHIBAO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birth</td>
<td>turua, {TUER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit (horse’s)</td>
<td>mori ghadari, {KHAZHER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>jiu, {GHAZHA, ZERDI, ZHAO} (V); nughui jiuna (biting of a dog)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>hara, {KHARA}; hudu hara, {KAKHARA} (very black)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blade</td>
<td>qidighuani ama, {QIDUGHUO AMA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleat</td>
<td>miila, {KHUONI MERLA}</td>
<td>(V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleed</td>
<td>qizi ghari, {CHUZI GHER} (to bleed someone)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blind</td>
<td>sughua, manii, {SUGHUER} ; suruuxja, {SUGHUORO} (become blind)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blood</td>
<td>qizi, {CHUZI}; hgolasan qizi, {CHUZI GEDA} (C: geda 疡) (coagulated blood)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloom</td>
<td>qijiula, {QIJIEGHLI} (V)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blossom</td>
<td>qijiulaja, {QIJIEGHLI, QIJIEGH}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>piila, tiu, {TAO, HUlLI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue (color)</td>
<td>yiilan, {KUGUO, KUGUONI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blunt</td>
<td>moshidi, {MOGHUODUO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blush</td>
<td>xjai, {XIJE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board</td>
<td>banbanzi, {BANBER} (C: ban 板)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boast</td>
<td>hguai gi, {JIEKANG KUALA} (boasting) (C: kua 夸)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body</td>
<td>bai, {BIE}; ruu, {HUGUSANG BIE} (corpse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boil</td>
<td>xjuali, qina, {CHINA, PIJIERGHA} (V); yaara, {YARA} (ulcer)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bolt</td>
<td>udeshang, {SHUANGLUO} (bolt the door)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
bone--yaasi, {YEGHCI}
book--pujiu
border--lus qirai, {CHAIBAI, CHEBIE} {LENGANG} (of farmland)
boring--lii durala, {KONGNI KEGZHAGHAKUNI}
born--tura, huina jiijkunla turasan, {TUER} {KHUONO TUERSANGNI} (late born children of a second marriage) (C:jiehun 結婚)
borrow--asighua, {JIELIE} (C:jie 借) (v)
bosom--yerishdi, {KANGZI}
boss--tulighui, {TERGHAI}
both--ghoori, ghula, {GHUER}
bottle--langhua, {LANGHUO}
bottom--xjiu, {ZHUA, ZHUER, DIAXIER}; (C:dizi 底子) guan hguai, {GHUANGZHUOSI} (bottomless)
boulder--jarima taari, {TUOGUORI TASHI}
bounce--duuli, diuli, {DIAOLI}
bow--tulighuina denki, {TERGHERNANG DIANKI} (C:dian 點) (v); smu nuri, {GEDA} (bow-string) (C:geda 纔
bowl--yigha, {YIGHA, GHA}; yighari suri, {WEI} (put into a bowl)
box--xaxazi, hahazi, {HAHER, GUANGGUER, XIAXIER}
boy--kuu bulai, {BULAI, ZHALER}
bracelet--bughuu, {BAGHAO}
braid--wankija (braided); rawaa guri, {ZERME} (braid of hair); guri, {GURU} (v)
brain--loshiha
bran--kayog, {KHEBEGH}
branch (tree)--ralog (T:ra lag), sala, {SALA}
brand new--chusan xni, {SHISHINI}
brandish--ghudiligha, hariguli, {SHUAIBULA}
brass--xra zangma, {SHA TIERMER}
brave--batiri, {KHEGHDOUT}
brazier--luzang
bread--shdimaa, manti, {DIMEI, MANTEN} (steamed bread) (C:mantou 餃頭)
break--hguai (v); {KHUGHUER} (break in two); hguadadija, {BEGH} KHEGHERJANG (get broken); hguaraxja (break down); hguara, {KHEGHERA} (vi); {KHEGHER} (vi)
breakfast--nangsa (T:nang ja, nang zas), {SHIDIEKUNI, ZAOHUAN} (C:zaofan 早飯)
breast--xjiuniu, kugua, {KUGUO, KANGZI}
breath--xiiki, {WER HEGH} (breathe)
bréed--jilijigha, {ZHUZHUERLA} (swine); huarighala, {KHUERGLA} (sheep); tola, {BURERLA, TUGHUERLA}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English (or) Meaning</th>
<th>Huzhu Mongghul</th>
<th>Minhe Mongghul</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(calves); dahala, {DAGHERLA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(donkeys)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bribe--darishibala</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bride--xniu aagu, {SHINI FSHINAGHU}; xni aagu tigii, {SHINI SHINAGHU SHENGE} (to act like a new bride)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bridle--randan, {NUOTO}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brim--qurai, {CHEBIE} (of a bow or cup)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring--awa ra, {HEGH RI, DUER RI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brisket--xjiuniu, {KANGZI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bristle--hadang ghuasi, {BAI GHERRI, KHEDENG WUGHUASI} (y); zingang, {ZENGANG} (of a pig)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broad--wushuu, {KUANZHAN}; wuudiji, {KUANZHANTUGHA} (broaden)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bronze--kugua zangma, {KUGURU TIERMER}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brook--raali, {ARUER}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother--aaghadiu; aawu, {GAGA} (elder brother); diu, {DIAO} (younger brother)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brown--buruun, {KUGURU}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush--fazi, {SHUAZI} (writing or painting)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bubble--sngunog, {MOMOZI}; xjuali (bubbling)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buck--narishiba</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bucket--tiidang, suuligha, {SERGHUO}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buckle--texji kuiri, {TUJILA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bud--yaazi, naazi, {NIAZI, NIANIER}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bug--huarighii, {KUERGHAII}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buddha--purghan, {PUGHANG}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build--xuuki, {SA, BAIGHA, GER BARI} (y); sza, {GER} (building)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bulge--kuu (v); kuugha, {KUOGHA} (vi); {KUO, KHA PUTU, KHA T U} (vi)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bull--hguari, {HUGUER}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bully--muri kuni, {MOJELEIE}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bump (swelling)--pingi (n): {PENKE, DUNKE} (C:pen 碰) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bunch--sluzi, chuula, {CHUAOLA} (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bundle--kuabog</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{baohu}(C:baofu 包袱): zakidii, hujadii, {HUIYA, BAOKE, KUNLA} (C:bao 包， kün捆) (v)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burglar--hualighii, {KU ERGHAIQI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burial--bula, {BULA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn--gurai (v); dille, {BERDUGHA, XIDA} (make something burn)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burrow--tulii foori, {TAOLAIH UER}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst--hgara, {ZH ALA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bury--bula, {BULA}; yasi kurigee (bury the dead); bulajin ghajari, {HUER} (burial place)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy--mangda, {HUANGLA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but--jida</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Mongolian</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butt--murigu, {MERGU} (with forehead); murigulidi (with horns)</td>
<td>Illurigu, {MERGU}</td>
<td>Illurigu, {MERGU}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butter--qighaan tuusi, {CHIANG TUOSI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butterfly--xanbalaxji (phye mal tze), {HERBIC, DADANER}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buttocks--guanjisi, {GUANGZHUOSI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>button--texji, {TEGHJI, TUJI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capture--wari, {BARI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care--sanqangla (care for); dayiila, {DAYILA} (careless); (C:dayi 大意); {GER XIGEIQIN} (caretaker)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpenter--muqi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpet--zitan, {ZAIMER TANZI, ZAIMER RUZI} (C:ditan 地毯)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car--fulaan tirima, {SHATUERMA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c--banki, daila ra, {ZHUO} (to carry); denja (carrying pole); {DANKE} (C:dan 擔) (carry a load on a pole); rgu, {BEILA, DIALNI, KUERGE} (C:bei 背) (to carry on one's back)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cart--tiriga, {TIERGE}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case--kimuhga, {HERBE, GUIGUER} (C:guizi 柜子)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cast--lashida, {TIERLA, HEGERLA} (Y.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castle--bazari, {BAZER}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castrate--arigha, shanla, {SHANLI}; shanlasan, {SHANLI HESANGNI} (castrated)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat--muuxi, {MIAORI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch--lari, {BARI, JIELIE} (C:jie 载) (Y.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cattle--hguari, {FUGUER, HUGUER};</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caution--sanqanglahan, {AZHUGHUER} (cautiously); sanqangla, {NAOSER} (cautious)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cave--nukua, yudang
(T:yodong), {NUKUANG}
center--xjii (T:dkyil), jiura,
dunda, {DUNDA}
cemetery--fuuri ghajari, {HUER
RUANG}
ceremony--{KEQIRA} (C:keqi
客 气) (stand on ceremony)
certain--yiidang, {YAGESA}
chain--xnjiri, {LIANLIER}
( C:lian 鎖)
chair--bandang, {BANDIN,
BAYI} (C:yi 椅)
change--raliji (y); {ARUERJI}
( mt)
channel--xuugulang, {CUDUER,
TUDUER}
chap--hgarigii, hgarigii hgar
(y); {HUO} (fellow)
character (disposition)--sgili,
xjiiIog
charge (order)--guala,
charm--duralagha,
{BIETUKUNI}
chase--jira, {ZHUA} (y)
chat--tangxada, {GANHUADA}
cheap--nem mula, {XIANGYIN}
cheat--kuidegha, {HUERGHUER}
(y) {GHUDEROI} (person) {ni}
check--jencala, {CHALA}
(C:cha 查 ) (y)
cheek--qirai, {QIRAI}; niuri
bangzi, {KHEZHER} (lower part
of the cheek)
cheerful--baisangi, {BAYASI}
cheese (sour)--qura, {QURA}

chest--xjiu, {KANGZI} (body);
kimuhga (storage)
chew--jiiji, {ZHAIHER}
chicken--tighuu jilijigha,
{TEGHAI}
chief (person)--shgeda, shge
kun, {NUOYAN, TERGHAI}
child--bulai, {MULANI};
bulaihi, {MULANISI}
(children); mulani sghuudi,
{MULAYANDU} (childhood)
chill--kuidenra, {KUITIERE} (y);
dari, {SHUKUTU} (suffer from
cold)
chime--duu ghari, {ZHONG
DAOGHER} (y) (C:zhong 鐘)
china--wajog, warima,
{WAZHEGH}
chip--jaja, {ZHAIHER}
(QD:zha)
choke--qangla, {YEKE} (C:ye
噎) (y); qanglaxja (ailment
characterized by a choking
sensation in the throat)
choose--ligha, {ALIGHA,
TAOKE} (C:tao 挑) (y)
chop--qaxji, {DUOKE} (C:duo
垛) (y)
chopsticks--xuuri, {SHUER}
churn--shdughua,
{KHUUDOHERGO} (y)
cinder--{TAN ZHAIHER} (C:tan
碳)
circle--moluu, {TUOGUORI}
(circular): moluudi (encircle)
circumstances--kama,
{KHERE}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>bazari, BAIZER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claim</td>
<td>linki, KERLI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clap</td>
<td>gharina pugha, PIESHI (รก)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clasp</td>
<td>wari, BATOU BARI, CHENGHA BARI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>taiga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>arin, ARUERGHA (รก), aringhula, ARONGSHIRONG, ARONGNI (very clean)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear</td>
<td>szaliu (รก); arin, GEIGAN (water)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleft</td>
<td>-hghara, ZHAHUN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clever</td>
<td>-ziliu, JILIU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>click</td>
<td>-XIEKE (the tongue in praise or admiration)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cliff</td>
<td>ula tulighui, GHADANG, ERGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climate</td>
<td>tingere, TIANGERE (C: tian 天)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climb</td>
<td>palaji ghari, GHER, SANGBA (รก)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clinging</td>
<td>-huazila, NIA, CHENGHA TIERBER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clip</td>
<td>qirogshdi, QIERGHA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clock</td>
<td>-denzhun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>ha, KHA, HANI; ha gisang (closed); kengini nudiniini hadii, NUDUNANG HANI (one's eyes); tada, TADA (near); zhoni, GEZAI NUKUER (close friend)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colleague</td>
<td>nukuari, NUKUER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect</td>
<td>hura, KHURA, KHURASANGNI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collide</td>
<td>murigu, MERGU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>udog, YANSHEI (C: yanse 颜色); udogdii (coloring)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column</td>
<td>tuligha, TUE RHA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comb</td>
<td>san, SANG; xrin san, BOSI SHUER (fine comb); sanla, SANGBULA (รก)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B: stick |
CH: CHUNBENNI |
BARI: BARI |
SHURUN GUANG: (of animal skin) |
BIKE: (C: bi 逼) |
HUNHUNZI: |
KUITIAN: |
DARA: (feel cold) |
SHIGERI: (feel pain from extreme cold) |
WUNA, HUERBA: (C: ta 場) |
DIER ZHAGHASA SAIKE: (grab by the collar) |
NUKUER: |
KHURA, KHURASANGNI: |
MERGU: |
YANSHEI: (C: yanse 颜色); udogdii (coloring) |
TUE RHA: |
SANG; xrin san, BOSI SHUER (fine comb); sanla, SANGBULA (รก) |
come--ra, {RI}; ghara ra,
{GHADA RI, AORI} (to come out)
comet--tiuji fiudi, {SAOCHU HUOTU}
comfort--xjiribu, {SHOUHUO, WOYE} (comfortable)
commoner--ranka kun, {YIBAN KONG} (C:yiban 一般)
compact--hadang, {BATONG}
companion--dighajin, handilagu, {NUKUER, AGHADIAO}
company--nukuari, {NUKUER BER}
compare--sarila, {BILA} (C:bi 比)
compassion--niizhang, {BIERE}
compel--rghangla, {BIKE} (C:bi 逼)
compensate--harili, piila, {PEILI} (C:pei 赔)
compete--sarila
complain--gudinii, {KUIQIAN KELI} (complaint)
complete--yiigua; buragha, {BURAGHA, BURA} (v); yiigualani, {QD: YIGUA} (completely)
complicated--madani, {MADANI, PIGENI}
comply--digha, duura, {SUILA}
composition--jiuri
comprehensive--mudegha, {MIEDIEKUNI WULANGNI}
concave--wuwuzi, {WOWERTAI}
conceal--niu, {NIU, KHA}
conclude--buragha, {BURAGHA}
condemn--madala, {MADA ZHAOKE}
condition--kama
confer--ghuja, {HU, ARUERJI}
conflict--macala
congeal--hgola, {KHUERDIE} (from cooling)
conifer (tree)--szuanba, szunba, {SUZUBEHE}
conjecture--shgengii, {TA}
connect--jirigha, {JIERGHA} (v); jirighaxja (be connected)
consciousness--lindira, {MIEDIEDER}
consider--muulaguni, {MULA} (considerably)
constantly--kijeeda, {YILAO, JIAOHUI}
construct--wari, sza, pugha, nidi, {SA, BAIghA}
contact--pingilidi
container--sawaa
contented--hudagha, {DURUANGDU XIGHA}
contest--sarila
continue--jirigha, {JIERGHA}
contradict--kama gua
contract--tTIuladi, {MULATU} (become smaller)
control--guala, {GUANLI} (C:guan 管)
conversation--guledi, xerila, {XUANKE} (QD:xuan)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Chinese Pinyin</th>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
<th>Chinese Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>convex--puza ra</td>
<td>{KUO}</td>
<td>北瓜</td>
<td>北瓜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convey--kurigee</td>
<td>{KUERGE, BANKE}</td>
<td>唯里桂</td>
<td>唯里桂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convince--xrii</td>
<td>{XIERGE}</td>
<td>信里</td>
<td>信里</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cool--srin</td>
<td>{XIEREN}</td>
<td>凉</td>
<td>凉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copper--zangma</td>
<td>{SHA TIERMER, HULANG TIERMER}</td>
<td>铜</td>
<td>铜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy--hguaria</td>
<td>{TENKE, CHAOLA}</td>
<td>复</td>
<td>复</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coral--xuri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cord--shdasi</td>
<td>{ZHAKOU, BIEDONG DASI, NAREN DIESI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>core--jingirog</td>
<td>{AMULA ZHUERGE}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corn--xjii</td>
<td>{TARA}</td>
<td>玉米</td>
<td>玉米</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corner--bulang</td>
<td>{JUELER, GUOLER}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpse--ruu</td>
<td>{FUGUSANG KONG}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct--ninba</td>
<td>{ZHuo, MUBANG, GAILA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corridor--mindozi</td>
<td>{MENDER, ERMENDAO}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost--nem</td>
<td>{JIARI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cottage--ger</td>
<td>{WOPER}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cough--hana</td>
<td>{KHANIA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country--lus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtyard--xaaizi</td>
<td>{KHUORANG, KHUORAN}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover--ama, pugari, hajin</td>
<td>{GHADER, AMA}; ha, {KHA}</td>
<td>覆盖</td>
<td>覆盖</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cow--ayimali</td>
<td>{SULATAI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crack--lgarigii</td>
<td>{ZAHUN}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>craft--lgara</td>
<td>{PENKE}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crafty--lenben</td>
<td>{JIANJI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crane--turilang</td>
<td>{TUGHURONG}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crash--pingilidi</td>
<td>{PENGKE}</td>
<td>撞</td>
<td>撞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crawl--palawa yiu</td>
<td>{SANGBA}; pala, {PABULA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crazy--ghaliu</td>
<td>{HUNHANRASANGNI, DIANDONGNI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crease--chuchura</td>
<td>{CHUKE}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create--sza</td>
<td>{SA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>criminal--neriwadi</td>
<td>(T:nyes ba), {MAO KONG}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cripple--dangni</td>
<td>{QUEQUE}</td>
<td>瘫痪</td>
<td>瘫痪</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crisis--mada</td>
<td>{MADA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>criticize--sghuu</td>
<td>{SUGUO}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crooked--muri</td>
<td>{MURI, MERDEGH}, muriinda</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross--duwa, dawa</td>
<td>{NUOQI}</td>
<td>越</td>
<td>越</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crotch--{LIANGCHALER, SHIGHAIRURA}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crouch--dundii</td>
<td>{DANDAI}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
crow--kirai, {LAOWA}
(C:lao 老)
cruel--ruari, {RUALA}
crumble--julandigha,
{KHEGHERAGHA} (¥)
crutch--giiguri, {GAIGUN}
(C:gun 桶)
cry--ulaa, {YILA, KHAILA}
cub--nula finiga,
{ZHUZHUGHUER} (of a beast)
cuckoo--gugu xuu, {GUGU}
(T:khu byug)
cuddle--tiiri, {TIERBER}
cuff--hanqi, hanji, {KHANQI AMA}
cunning--alog, {JIANJIA}; ugo,
{SAIHANG WUGE} (cunning words)
cup--qogxja, {BAZHONGZI}
curb--randan
curd--qura, {QULA}
cure--hanagha, {BERGHA} (¥)
curse--zhiu; zhiu tiina,
{SUGUO} (cursing constantly)
curtain--qangguang basi,
zhama basi
curve--muriingi (¥); {MERKE}
(¥); wankigha, {WANKEGHDA}
(¥) (C:wan 彎)
cushion--yimeeli denzi,
{XIEXIER} (saddle cushion)
cut--hiqila, shduli, {SUDUER,
QIERGHA, KEZHI,} (¥)

d

daft--ghalijiu, {DIANDONGNI}
dagger--qidighua, {QIDUGHO}
daily--duri, {JIAODUER}
damage--buragha,
{BUDERAGHA, BUDIER}
damp--niiten, {NIUTIAN}
dance--qinjuri, {DIAOLI} (¥);
qan duuli {perform a masked religious dance} (T:'cham)
dandruff--{QUIERMA}
danger--janzi, {DANJIN}
dangle--ghudili, {DIAOZILI}
(C:diao 掉)
dark--hara, {KCHARUNGHU,
KCHARANI}; haralaxja,
{KCHARUNGHUDA} (darken)
darling--nukuari, qarii
date--duri, {DUER}
daughter--xjun, {XUJUN,
AGUER}
daughter-in-law--beeri, yiri,
kuu yiri, {KAOBIERI}
dawdle--guangdangla,
{XIANXIA HERGE}
dawn--wuqii, {DUERCHAIJI XIII}
day--duri; durihgundini,
{WUDIER, DUER} (daytime);
qinada, {CHINAIDA} (day after tomorrow); xii nige (first day of the lunar month); juduri,
{WUJIDUER} (day before yesterday)
daze--tulighui xrigi,
{DIANDIERE}
dazzle--nudi alogdaxja, {NUDU KHUERMU} (dazzled)
dead--huguxja, {HUGUSANGNI}
defaf--dili, {DULAI, LONGGUAI} (C:long 長); diliidina (to grow deaf)
debaucing--muudina, {ADEGHNANG BURA}
dead--hugudija, {HUGU}
debt--asighuasan, {ZHANG} (C:zhang 借)
decay--muudi, {HU, MAOTU}
deceit--hunla, {HUEGHUER}
decide--nigera tii, {HULA}; {DINKE} (C:die definitely)
decoration--dabang, {ZHUANGXIOU} (C:zhuang 装)
decrease--quguandi, {CHUANGTUGHA}
deed--logni, {XINGWEI}
deep--guan, {GONG}
deer--xa (T:sha); lashizi (T:gla rtzi), {PAOLU} (C:lu 麂) (musk deer)
defeat--yala, xuu, {SHOU, NAGHU} (¥)
defect--qida
defend--haruuli, {KHA}
deficit--kuangshidang, CHUANGDALANG
definitely--jubda
degenerate--muundina
delay--digha, {DANGUOLO}; dangula, {WUDAGHA} (delayed)
deliberate--sgili tiiji, {NANXIERNANG} {XIANGXI MULA} (¥) (C:xiangxi 詳細)
delicious--funushidi, {ANGTUDONG}
deliver--kurigee, {KUERGE}; alida (set free)
den--foori, {HUER}
dent--ruan, {NUKUO}
depend--kola, {KAOLA} (C:ka 靠)
descend--naa, {BAORI, BAO}
deserted--kuangshidang (T:tang stong)
desire--duran, {DURANG}; muulasan, {DURALA} (¥)
desk--xrai, {SHIRI, BAXIAN} (C:baxianzhuo 八仙桌)
despise--rje ada, {WUJIDA}
despondent--moqida, {MAOTU}
despotic--ruari hguai
destiny--amin, {KHUOBI}
destroy--jaasi gharigha, {KHEGHER, BUDIER}
determined--yiijiula, {JIULASANGNI}
detest--jiila, {QIBUHENDA, KHEZHA}
develop--npeela (T:'phel la), {WOSI}
devil--yiilie, {DUGHULI, ABULIN}
dexterity--ziliu, {JILIU}
diarrhea--tiugha, {GEDIESI TAO} (to have)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Mongghul</th>
<th>Minhe Mongghuer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>die--bura, hugu, guila, {FUGU, HUGU}</td>
<td>dishonest--jiidog gua, {GHUDER KELIKUNI, LAOSHI GUIKUNI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difference--nigera gui, {AIXIDERAKUNI}; salidan gua, {XIDERALAGUANG}</td>
<td>disobey--fanka, {AICHENLI} (disobey custom)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(differentiate)</td>
<td>disordered--luanla, {LUANLUO}; kama gua, {LUANLUOGHA} (cause disorder) (C:luan 亂)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult--mada, {MADANI, PIGENI}; lusawa (difficulty)</td>
<td>displeasure--baisin gua, {BAYERGUANG, WERKUER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig--manta, {MANTA, WAIJ, HUERBER} (C:wa 挖)</td>
<td>disperse--saji, {SEGHJI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>digest--xngii, {SHANGE}</td>
<td>dissatisfied--duralan gua, {DURUANGDU LAIXIKUNI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diminish--quguandi, {CHUANGTU}</td>
<td>dissolve--xndiriri, {SHENTUERGHA} (vt), {SHENTUER} (vi)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dip--nuurigha, {PAOLA} (C:pao 泡)</td>
<td>distant--hula, {KHUOLO}; huladija, {KHUOLOTU} (to become more distant); hula tada (distance)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direct--nigeguai</td>
<td>distil (liquor)--xuu, {DURASI SA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirt--guuja, {GOUJIA, KASHA, SHAO}; (QD:oujia) zang, {ZANGNANG} (C:zang 脏) (dirty); zangdina, {ZANGNANGRA} (become dirty)</td>
<td>distort--muriidi, {MERDEGHTUGHA} (distorted)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disagreeable--lii durala, {TAOYANNI} (C:taoyan 討厭)</td>
<td>distress--xngaha, {POHUAN, MAOTU}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappoint--pofan, {ZHUERGE SULUJUANG}</td>
<td>dissatisfied--yanglan gua, {LAJJIARIKUNI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disagree--fanka, {AIBER}</td>
<td>distribute--hgua, {KHUBA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappear--bura, guira, {GUIDA, BURA}</td>
<td>distrust--lii xraigu, {YINXINRA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disease--nari (T:nad), {BIEQIN}</td>
<td>disused--yanglan gua, {LAJJIARIKUNI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disgrace--xjeegu tigii, {XIJEKU KHERE}</td>
<td>ditch--qida, tuda, {TUDUER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disgust--bolijagu tigii, {KHEZHA}</td>
<td>dive--minzi boxi, {KHANI} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish--sai, {PIELA}</td>
<td>divide--hgua, {KHUBA} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dishevelled--luanla, {LUANLUO}</td>
<td>dizzy--tulighui xrigi, {DIANDIERE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do--gala, {GE, SA}</td>
<td>drink--wuqiguni, {WUKUNI};</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doctor--smanba, {MANBA}</td>
<td>sushidu, {DURASI} (strong</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(T: sman pa)</td>
<td>drink); wuqi, {WU} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dodge--dola, {DUOLO}</td>
<td>drive--kuala, {JIALA} (drive in,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C: duo 躲)</td>
<td>pound)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dog--nuhui, {NUGHUAI, HAPER}</td>
<td>drop--dola, {DEGHLA} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domestic--kudigu, qinsangni</td>
<td>drought--han</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(T: khyim tshang), {GERNI,</td>
<td>drum--kingahga, {PANDAI};</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GERKU}</td>
<td>pugha, {PANDAI PEGH} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donkey--jige, {ERJIGE}</td>
<td>drunk--sushidu, {SUODO} (to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don't--bii, lii, {BAO, AI, LAI,</td>
<td>become)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WULIE}</td>
<td>dry--huusinni, {KHUOSUNNI};</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>door--ude, rde, {YIDI, DI, DIAN,</td>
<td>huuhga, {KHUOSUNTUGHA} (v);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIAMANG}; ude haligha, {DI</td>
<td>narala haigha, {XIE} (dry in the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOSIHO} (doorsill)</td>
<td>sun or by the fire); xrigi,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double--xuang, ghuila, ghoori,</td>
<td>huuxja, {KHUO} (dry out)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{GHUER}; xuangdii (to double)</td>
<td>dumpling--findin (stuffed and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doubt--yinaila</td>
<td>boiled in water); xumii (stuffed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dough--jirasanguruili,</td>
<td>and steamed)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ZHUASANG GHURU}</td>
<td>dun (color)--nige udog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down--duraji, {DUOROJI}</td>
<td>dung--basi, {KHAGHER}; mori</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>downstairs--duraji bo, {LOULER</td>
<td>basi, {MORI KHAGHER} (horse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUORO} (C: lou 楼)</td>
<td>dung); {KHUO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dragon--liu {LU}</td>
<td>during--ne jiura, {JIURA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw (to pull)--qida, {LAKE}</td>
<td>dust--pudira, {SHAO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C: la 拉)</td>
<td>dwarf--mula bai, {MULA BIE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawer--xaxazi, {CHOUHA,</td>
<td>dye--budi, {YANLIAO};</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIAXIER} (C: chou 抽)</td>
<td>(C: yanliao 颜料) budina,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream--jiudi, {JIAODONG};</td>
<td>{BUDU} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiidila, {JIAODONGLI} (v)</td>
<td>dress--musi, {MUSI} (v);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{DABANLA} (dressy)</td>
<td>{DABANLA} (dressy)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C: daban 打扮)</td>
<td>drill--shuuga, {SHUBIGE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
eager--sana, \{SANA\}
eagle--xuuqari, \{HELIULIU\}
ear--qigi, \{QIGE\}; hunghua,
\{KHUERGUOSI\} (ear wax);
\{BUDI TERGHAI\} (of grain)
early--shde, \{SHIDIETAI\}
earn--zinla, \{ZHENGGLA\}
(C:zheng 擝)
earth--ghajari, \{SHAO,
GHAZHER, YANGSHI\}
ease--suladigha, \{SULATU\}
easy--quwari, \{CHIBER\};
quwarihan, \{CHIBERDA\} (easily)
eat--rde, \{YIDI, DI\}; qidirigha
rde (eat rice); nige rde (have a meal)
eaves--ger molii, \{GER MANLAI\}
economy--seeri (saving);
seeridii, \{NAREN\} (economical)
edge--qidighua qirai, \{CHEBIE\}
\{QIDUGHUO AMA\} (of knife)
edible--yanglajin, \{DIJI
eriker\}
edication--surighua
\{SUERGA\}
efface--moki, \{BUDIER HEGH\}
effort--xahai, \{XIACHA\}
effrontery--xjeeglu gui, \{ARASI
ZHUZUANG\}
eg--dige, \{ANDIGE\}
egio--jina, \{JIENANG,
JIANJINANNANG\}
either--nigeni, \{ALIBERSA\}
eject--jira gharigha, \{ZHUA,
ZHUA GHERGHA\}
elastic--\{SUNIAKUNI\}
elbow--qimuga, \{TUGHAUL,
GHERZHOWJIA\}
elder--shdugu, \{SHUGUONI,
NASI SHUGUONI\}; nesi shgehan,
\{NASITAI KONG, XIDIERSANG
KONG\} (elders)
elect--righa, \{XUANKI\}
(C:xuank 選)
elegant--zantjin, \{ZAIHANGTAJ\}
element--dangxihgini
elephant--langwuqii (T:glang
bo che)
elm--\{YOUXIER BEGHE\}
elope--qida yiujia, \{TIDA
YAOJANG\}
est--guura, \{GUORI\}
elude--niu, \{NIU, DUOLO\}
(C:duo 躲)
emaciate--hgala, \{MAODA\}
embankment--\{BA\}
embrace--tiiri, \{TIERBER\}
embroider--larila, duuki,
shdee, \{SHIDI, DUOKE\}
emlomy--kiilendi
emperor--rjawu (T:rgyal bo),
niwan
employ--jari, yangla, \{JIARI,
ZHALER\}
empty--huusin, \{KHUOSUN,
KUANTAI\}; huusin ligha (to
empty out)
enclose--wuiki, \{WEIKE\}
(C:wei 範)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English word</th>
<th>Equivalent</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>encore</td>
<td>dii nige</td>
<td>{PUZA NIGE, PUZA YIBIAN} (C:yibian — 邊)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>juri, suul</td>
<td>{XIER, ZHUEI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enemy</td>
<td>duituu</td>
<td>{DUITOU} (QD:duitou)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>energy</td>
<td>kuji</td>
<td>{KUJI, JINGDAO}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engrave</td>
<td>Inanta</td>
<td>{KEKE} (C:ke 刻); {WAKE} (C:wa 拥) (engraving)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>baisija</td>
<td>{BAYASI} (enjoyment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enlighten</td>
<td>-mudugha</td>
<td>{BAYASIGHA}; mudughana (englightenment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough</td>
<td>kuri, kuija</td>
<td>{KUER, KUIQI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enraged</td>
<td>-piiji nadi</td>
<td>{WERKUERGA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enroll</td>
<td>jila</td>
<td>{KHURA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entangle</td>
<td>-laka rua xi</td>
<td>{GEDALA} (C:geda 疙瘩)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enter</td>
<td>rua xi</td>
<td>{RUOXI}; jila, {ZHANG JILA} (make an entry in an account or register)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enthusiasm</td>
<td>sgili</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entire</td>
<td>yiiguala</td>
<td>{YIGUALA} (entirely)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrance</td>
<td>ruaqin ghajari</td>
<td>{DIAMANG}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entreat</td>
<td>yangjila</td>
<td>{YANGJILALANG, GAODAOLALANG}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envelope</td>
<td>xn halizi</td>
<td>{XINFER} (C:xin 信)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English word</th>
<th>Equivalent</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>envy</td>
<td>xariba, xarishidang, {QIBUHENDA}; {NIANHEI} (envious person)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equal</td>
<td>-salida, nigehua, {ADALING, XIDERAWA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equate</td>
<td>-salidan, {XIDERAGHA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equilibrium</td>
<td>nigehua, {WENDANG} (C:wen 穩)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equipment</td>
<td>sawaa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erase</td>
<td>-saki</td>
<td>{BUDIER HEGH}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>err</td>
<td>-suula</td>
<td>{ERDA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>errand</td>
<td>-kilein</td>
<td>{KELIQIN} (ask to run an errand)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escape</td>
<td>-qida, tuda, guai, {CIDA, TIDA, PUDRA} (逃)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esophagus</td>
<td>-fulaan huula, {KHUOLO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>especially</td>
<td>-guairijigii</td>
<td>{GUORITEGH}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eternal</td>
<td>-kijeeda</td>
<td>{KEJIEA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eve</td>
<td>-qaszar, nangang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>even</td>
<td>-tingisada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evening</td>
<td>-suani, xulang, haraliji, {KHARUNGHUJAAK}, {SHULIANDU, SUONI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event</td>
<td>-dundog (don dag), {KHERE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eventual</td>
<td>-zhunzhuu</td>
<td>{ZUI KHUAIYONGNI} (C:zui 最)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every</td>
<td>-alingida</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evidence</td>
<td>-mudeghaguni</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evil</td>
<td>-yiile</td>
<td>{MAO, MAOYAMA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exact</td>
<td>-jub jubni, {ZANG, ZHUONI} (exactly)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine</td>
<td>-szagha (in court); sarila, {KAOKE} (C:kao 考) (考)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>Mongolian Equivalent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>except</td>
<td>nensa mindii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excessive</td>
<td>luanhan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exchange</td>
<td>raliji</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excrement</td>
<td>basi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhale</td>
<td>piila gharigha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhaust (use up)</td>
<td>yida</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exist</td>
<td>yiina</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excite</td>
<td>baisangi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercise</td>
<td>qalizi, qalisi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>ghari</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>muula (expect eagerly)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expense</td>
<td>yangla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experience</td>
<td>tulighuisa duwasan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explode</td>
<td>hgara; zala</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expose</td>
<td>gharag soja</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extend</td>
<td>shgedigha, wuudiji</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterior</td>
<td>ghadaghu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent</td>
<td>shduridigha, shgedigha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fable</td>
<td>nantari (T:nam thar)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face</td>
<td>niuri, haja, qirai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facility</td>
<td>suri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factor</td>
<td>xjuan (T:ryen)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>xuugha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faint</td>
<td>szaliu gua</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>naa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fairy</td>
<td>hudu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fallow (land)</td>
<td>xiidi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>jadi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fame</td>
<td>nira; niradii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Mongolian Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fable</td>
<td>nantari (T:nam thar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face</td>
<td>niuri, haja, qirai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facility</td>
<td>suri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factor</td>
<td>xjuan (T:ryen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>xuugha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faint</td>
<td>szaliu gua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>naa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fairy</td>
<td>hudu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fallow (land)</td>
<td>xiidi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>jadi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fame</td>
<td>nira; niradii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(famous)
familiar--surisan, siriwa, {JIAO DUER QIGEKUNI, CHENLI SUERSANGNI}; surina, {TANI KUNI, MIE DIE KUNI} (to become familiar with)
family--qinsang (T:khyim tshang), kudi, {JIAWU}; qinsangni kun (family member)
far--hula, {KHUOLO}
farm--tari, {TARI} (y)
fart--ghusi, {HUNGHUSI}; ghusi alida, {HUNGHU} (y)
farther--yuhuada, {NINSA KHUOLO}
fast--malii, {MALI, CHENG GHA, CHENG GHADA}; maliihan (go faster); maliiiti, {MALITU} (become fast)
fasten--chula, {HUY A} (to fasten with thread or cord passed through a hole)
fat--tarighuan, fuugu, {WUOKO, TERGHONG}; tarighula, {TERGHONGRA} (to be fat); marilija (fat and flesh adhering to just-skinned animal hide)
fate--amin, {AMI}
father--aaba, aada, {ABA, ADA, ADI} (T:aa pha)
father-in-law--ghadin aaba
fatigue--yida, {YADA}
fatuous--szaliu gua, {DIANDONG}
fault--saini guiguni, {ERDA}
favor--duralasan, {DURUALA, NUKUER}
fawn--{GAODAO} (y)
fear--ayi, {AYI, NAOJIAN}
feast--hurin, {KHURUN}
feather--fuudi, {WUGHUASI}
feature--rjegundi {DAMA}
feeble--julanghula, {RANG}
feed--tjee, {TIEJIE} (y)
feline--muuxi tigii, {MIAORINI}
felt (wool)--xjang, {SHIZHANG}
fellow--nukuari, {NUNKONG, ZHALER, NUKUER} (T:nang ‘khor)
female--nine kun, xjun kun, {XIUJUN KONG, SHINAGU} (woman)
fence--quankisan walighasi, {CHABANG}
fertilizer--fog, ngualii, {KHUO}
fetter--xnjiri
fever--saa, {SHAOKE} (C:shao 燒 ) (T:tsha)
few--quguan, {CHUANG}; kidihan, {JI KUER HER, Digerher} (only a few)
fiction--huu muuliji, {BHUANG}
fidget--jiisura, {PUOHUAN}
field--ghajari, ruan, {GHAZHER, RUANG}
fierce--ruari, {MAONINI} (of animals)
fight--bughalidi, {BAGUERDI, PEGH}
file (rasp)--{CUO}
fill--kuri, {DUER, CHIGE DUER}; diuri, {DURAN} (full); qadi, {CHUDU} (eat one's fill)
filter--dinla, {LUKE} (C:guolü)
fluffy--zangnaa, {ZANGNANGNI}
final--huina, {ZUI KHUONONI}
find--laxji ra, mude, {LU, YERRI, MIEDIE}
fine--saina, {BERKUNANG, GEZAI}
finger--huri, {KHURU}; mula huriqi (little finger)
finish--buragha, {BURAGHA} (y)
fire--ghal, {GHAR}; dile, guraigha, {XIDA} (set fire to);
ghal tii, {GHAR BERDUGHA} (make a fire); poda (shoot a
firearm); shdaghua, {DAGHU}
(firewood)
firecracker--pozhangzi,
{PAOZHER, PAOZHANGZI}
(f: pao 炮)
firm (strong, hard)--hadang, qirog, {CHENGAH, BATOU}
first--muxini, {ZUI MIESHI, XIAN MIESHI} (C:zui 最, xian 先)
fish--jighasi, {YUER} jighasi wari, {YUER BARI} (y)
fist--nudigha, {CHUI}
(C:chui 捶)
fit--hushi (C:heshi 合適),
{PUDA} (to fit in); {BER, BERKUNANG} (to be fit for)
five--tawun
fix--sza, {SA, NANLA}
flag--daxjog (T:dar lcog), {QIQIER} (C:qi 旗)
flame--ghal kile, {GHAR};
guraigha, {WUNGURI, GHAR BERDU} (flame up)
flank--nige rogszani,
{SUDUORONI}
flap--hanqi tirui, {ANGE} (of a
garment)
flat--texjin, {ZHULONG}
flavor--funuri, {HUNIER}
flea--bohga, {BERGE}
fling--tarishida, hgal, {HEGERLA, KERLA}
float--tiu, {TAO, PIAOKE}
(f: piao 漂) (y)
flock--dila, {CHUOLA, HANGTULA} (y)
flood--qidog (T:chu tog),
{CHAO} (C:chao 潮)
floor--liuzi, {KUJIER}
flour--ghurili, {GHRU}
flourish--npeela (T:’phella)
(fLOURishment); jujuan,
{ZHUZHUGHUER, GANSAN} (crops)
flow--rusi, tiu, {TAO, TANGKE}
(C:tang 淌) (y)
flower--qijiu, {QIJIEGH}
fluent--sainimama, {MAZHAO}
flush--texjin, {DAMA HULAI}
flute--ziganzi, {BEIBER, CHUER}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flutter</td>
<td>flutter--pugha, {DIAOLI, JILA} (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>fly--nasi, {MUSI} {to fly up}; fedaa {insect}; haminzi, {SHIMER} {DINGMAHUER} (horsefly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foal</td>
<td>foal--mori daha, {DAGHER}; jige daha {donkey}; dahala, {DAGHERLA} (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fork</td>
<td>fork--saladii, {CHACHER} (C:cha 查)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>former</td>
<td>former--muxiguni, {DAGELIEKUNI, DAIGENI, MIESHIKUNI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortune</td>
<td>fortune--qirogdigha, fortune-telling--gua, {AMI SANA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forty</td>
<td>forty--tijin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forward</td>
<td>forward--muxiji; muxiji yiu, {MIESHIJI} {move forward}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foul</td>
<td>foul--humugii, {HUMUGHAINI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fox</td>
<td>fox--finiga, {HUNDUGHAI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fraction</td>
<td>fraction--zazazi, {ZHAZHER}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fracture</td>
<td>fracture--hgara, {KHUGHUER}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragile</td>
<td>fragile--hagaragu tigii, {CHIBER KHEGHERKUNI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frail</td>
<td>frail--narighii, {MAODASANGNI, RANGNI, ZHUOLIANNI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame</td>
<td>frame--garihgang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frayed</td>
<td>frayed--qura dola, {GANGKE KHEGHERSANGNI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>freeze--kuara, {KUERDIE} (C:xian 閏)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh</td>
<td>fresh--xni, {SHINI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fried (bread)</td>
<td>fried (bread)--tuusi shdimaa, {PUZIGHO}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend</td>
<td>friend--zhonii; sain zhonii, {NUKUER} {friendship}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fright</td>
<td>fright--ayigha, {JINGKE} (C:jing 慿); {AYIGHA} {frightened}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frog</td>
<td>frog--bawog (T:sbal ba), {MANDEGHAI, LAIGUAGUER}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front</td>
<td>front--muxi, {MIESHI}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
frontier--jiixan
garden--xikuairi, {YANZI}

frost--xuutira, {SHOUDIERE}
garlic--srinsog, {SANPEZEGH}
froth--kusizi, {MOMOZI}
gas (intestinal)--ghusi, {HUNGHUSI}
fruit--alimaa, {ALIMA, AMULA}
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI};
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
fry--tuusila qina, {TVOSILA
(fu
CHINA)
garden--xnkuairi, {YANZI}

fuck--mule, {MULI}
gas (intestinal)--ghusi, {HUNGHUSI}
fuel--shdajin, shdaghua,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
full--diuri, {DURAN, YIGUA}
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
fumigate--funiidigha, {XUNKE};
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
fulfill--banki, {GE}
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
full--diuri, {DURAN, YIGUA}
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
(gateway)
fun--natigu, {NADUKUNI}
geld--arigha, {SHANLI}
(fun)
funeral--rgai, {ERGU}
general--qiruu tulighui,
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
(DC;)
get--ruagha, hgile, {LU, HEGH,　BI, DUER}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
(DC;)
get--ruagha, hgile, {LU, HEGH,　BI, DUER}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
(DC;)
get--ruagha, hgile, {LU, HEGH,　BI, DUER}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
(DC;)
get--ruagha, hgile, {LU, HEGH,　BI, DUER}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
(DC;)
get--ruagha, hgile, {LU, HEGH,　BI, DUER}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
(DC;)
get--ruagha, hgile, {LU, HEGH,　BI, DUER}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
(DC;)
get--ruagha, hgile, {LU, HEGH,　BI, DUER}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
(DC;)
get--ruagha, hgile, {LU, HEGH,　BI, DUER}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gather--hura, handilaghag,
gate--shge rde, {SHUGUAIDI}~
{DIAMANG, YIDIAMANG}
{JIANGLIN} (C:jiang 將)
gentle--juluan, {XIAN,
glacier--malizi tang, {MERSI ARUER}
glad--baishi, {BAYER, SHINIKER}
glance--murii rje, {QILIJI NAO}
glare--murii rje, {MURIJI NAO}
gleam--girigilija, {GEGERE}
glide--suura, {SANSER}
glory--shdurila
gloves--lariguu, {WUZHO}
glow--ghal sziri, {KHALUN} (of fire)
glue--jangzi, {JIANGZI} (C:jiang 漳); nagha, {NIAGHA} (v)
gnaw--ghaja, {GHAZHA}
go--xi, {XI, YAO}; ajingi xi (go to a place)
goat--yimaa, {YIMA}; sadiri (castrated); yimaanigu, {YIMANUGUER} (kid)
go-between--wariwa, {DUNDA KONG}
gobi--zhog
god--purghan, {PUGHANG}
gold--szari, halidan, {ERTANG}
goldfish--szari jighasi, {JINYUER} (C:jinyu 金魚)
good--saina, {GEZAI}; hudu saina, {GANSAN} (quite good); rjegundi saina, {ZAIHANGNI} (good-looking)
goose--turilang, {TUGURUN} (wild goose)
gorge--jiangmu, {KUOLO}
gossip--xarishidang, xarishiba, {MAOGE, MAOWUGE}; xarishidanglajin, {XIANHUADAQIN}
(grace) (person)
gown--{BANSHI}; narinang (long sleeveless garment worn by women over a gown on formal occasions); {DALIAN} (especially worn by old people)
grab--buli, {QIANGKE}
(grape) (v)
grace--saihan, {ZAIHANG}
(grain)
grain--taraa, {TARA, BIDI}
grandmother--aanee, {NIANA, WEININI}
grandson--chuangsun, {CHUNSUN} (great grandson)
grasp--wari, {BATOU BARI}
grass--yisi, wusi, {BIESI}; yisi qidii, {BIESI TIEJIE} (to feed cattle with grass or hay)
grasshopper--qaxijog, {MAGHZAHA} (C:mazha 螞蚱)
gravel--xaxi, {NANCHANGRAGHA}
graze--dila, {DANGLA} (to graze sheep, etc.)
graze--dila, {DANGLA} (to graze sheep, etc.)
grave--flugu, {MUGHA TUOSI}
great--shge, {WULANNI, GEZAI}; miidangdii, {BURUN} (greatly)
greedy--duralaghagu
green--nughuun, {NUOGHUANG}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Mongghul</th>
<th>Minhe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>greet</td>
<td>ziile, [JIELIE]</td>
<td>ZHIYINLA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C:jie 借)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ziilena, [ZHIIYLNA]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ERJEGH] (greeting)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grey-haired</td>
<td>qighaanhan,</td>
<td>SUZU CHIHAI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{SUZU CHIHAI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grief</td>
<td>pofan, [MAOTU]</td>
<td>MAOTUGHA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(vi), pofanra,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[MAOTUGHA] (vt)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(grieve)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grind</td>
<td>tirilna (y);</td>
<td>BULIAO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>buliu,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{BULIAO} (grindstone); buliuda,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[BULIAODI] (sharpen a knife on a grindstone)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grip</td>
<td>padidi wari,</td>
<td>CHENGHA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{CHENGHA BARI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gristle</td>
<td>mingasi,</td>
<td>MERGHERSII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{MERGHERSII}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>groan</td>
<td>yiile, [SHENHUA]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grope</td>
<td>tandili, [KHARUNGHUDU MOKE] (C:mo 摸)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grove</td>
<td>shdangra, [BEGHE TANGZI]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{BEGHE TANGZI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>wuusi, [WOSI, SHUGUOTU]; shgedi (growth); shgedija (to grow up); shduli,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{TARI} (to grow old)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grunt</td>
<td>xjurii, [KUIQIAN KELI, MAOKOU]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guaranty</td>
<td>yadaju</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guard</td>
<td>sgajin, [BAKE, XIGE, NAO, SHOU] (y)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guess</td>
<td>ta, [TA] (y)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guest</td>
<td>zhiwa, [WURUO]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guide</td>
<td>moori durijin,</td>
<td>MERDUEQRIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{MERDUEQRIN}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gulp</td>
<td>malii rde, [ZHERKE]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gullet</td>
<td>huula, [KHOULO]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gun</td>
<td>poog; [HUOYUE]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C:huoyao 火藥) (gunpowder)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guy</td>
<td>lalang kun, [HUO, KONG, MULA BULAI]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### H

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Mongghul</th>
<th>Minhe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>habit</td>
<td>darisuu, [ERDIAN]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hail</td>
<td>qashizog, [DANDANZI]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair</td>
<td>rawaa, [SUZU]; ghuasi,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[WUGHUASI] (of horses, goats, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half</td>
<td>jantog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hall</td>
<td>shge ger, [TIANSHE, SHUGOU GER]; dughuang, laghang, smeek, [ZANKANG] (for a Buddha)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halter</td>
<td>noshidu, [NUOTO]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hammer in</td>
<td>xna pughu, [NIEDU]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>ghari, [GHAR]; ghua,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[HU] (to hand over)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handfull</td>
<td>hayog, [HAYA]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handle</td>
<td>babazi, gharishdi,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[BALER, HANS] (C:ba 把)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>diuza, gual, [GUALA]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C:gua 挂), [DIAOZILI] (C:diao 挙)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>xjiribu, [BAYER]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(happiness); xjirbura (to be happy)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>hadang, [KHEGHDEN, DAMEI]; niizhang (hardship)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harm</td>
<td>muu, [MAO]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
harmony--bali; zholadija, {GANSAN} (become harmonious)
harvest--ghadi, {KHURA, GHADU} (y)
hasty--mamaliili, {HUANGLAJI, DAIGUO, MALI} (C:huangman 慌忙)
hat--malighaa, {MERGHA}
hatch--jilijigha dari, {DARI}
hate--jiila, {JIDA}; Inuu kile, {WERKUER, QIBUHENDA} (hatred)
haughty--hguai gi, {SHUGUOTU}
have--yii, {BANG, BI, DI}
hawk--xuuqari, {HELIULIU}
hay--shdaghua, {CHIGHANG BIESI}
hazard--janzi, {DANJIN}
haze--snaghua, {WU} (C:wu 雾)
he/she--gan, te, {GAN}
head--tulighui, {TERGHA}; tulighui durijn, {TERGHA} (headman)
health--kunguan, miidang
heap--duiduizi, {DUIZILI} (C:dui 堆) (y)
hear--sunisi, {SUONOSI, CHENLI}; sunisina (hearing)
heart--jirigha, {ZHUERGE, TUDUORO}
hearth--zuha qirai, {ZAOHA CHEBIE}
heat--halang, {KHALEN, KHALA}; xragha, {KHALAGHA} (v)
heavy--kundin, {DAMEI}
heel--jooja, {KUER ZHOUJIA}
height--warimaa, {WENDUER}
hell--{GHAZHER DUORO}
help--nukuari gi, {NUKUR BER}
hem--qirai, {DIERCHEBIE} (lower hem)
hemp--lusi, {MAYUE} (C:mayao 麻藥)
hen--buroxjii, {MUJI} (C:muji 母雞)
her--ganni, rganni, teni, {GANNI, GAN}
herd--dila (v); aasi dila (cattle, v); kashida aasi dilajin, {ASI DANGLAQIN} (herdsman)
here--dirii, ndirii, {NIKERDA}
heritage--lailaghasan, {LIULASANGNI}
hero--batiri, {KHEDOU KONG}; batirigii (heroic) (T:dpal rtul)
herself--gan jina, te jina, {GANJENANG}
hesitate--nigera tii ada, {MUNANGRA}
hibernation--rguli duwa
hide--niu, {NIU} (v); niughaxja (hidden); niughaguna (to be hidden)
high--duri, {WENDUER}; durihan (in importance)
highland--biima ghajari, {WULA GHAZHER}
highway -- shge moori, {SHUGUOMER}

hill -- ula, ghada, {MULA WULA, DANGBULER}

him -- ganni, rganni, {GAN}

hind -- huina, {KHOONONI}

hinder -- dangla, {DANGLA}

(C: dang 挡) ; danglajin (hindrance)

hip -- ghuanzisi, {GHUANGZHUOSI, GOUDANZI}

his -- ganni, {GANNI}

history -- luriji

hit -- puhga, {BEGH}

hither -- nendi, {NINGDU} ; nendi tendi, {NINGDU TINGDU} (hither and thither)

hive -- zangnaa foroi, {ZUONOGER, ZUONO HUER}

hoarse -- hgari wari, {DAO BARI}

hobble -- dangnii, {DERGHUO}

hold -- warii (yii) ; wardiid, {BARI, TIERBER, PUDA} (hold it)

hole -- nukua, {NUKUO}

hollow -- huusin, {KUANTAI, KHUOSUN}

home -- kudi, {GER}

homesick -- kudina sana, {GERSANAKUNI}

honest -- lohog, lenba, {WENDANG}

honey (food) -- zangna bali, {ZUONO BER}

honor -- nirandi

hoof -- qimisi, {KHUER} (animal)

hook -- guudazi, {GOUGOUDER, GHADUER} (C: gou 鉤) ; guuki (yi)

hoop -- huanhuanzi, {HUANHUE} (C: huan 璐) 

hope -- muusam, {ZHUANGWANGLA} (yi)

horizontal -- texjindi

horn -- bii-bii, {DUN} (T) (musical instrument) ; yari, {YEBER, WOBER} (animal)

horse -- mori, {MORI} ; yimeeli mori (saddle horse) ; tawun nesidii kashida aasi (5-year-old horse or ox)

hostile -- {MAO KONGNI, MAO ZHUERGETAI}

hot -- halang, tili, {TULI, KHALEN}

hotel -- zan

hour -- zhuntuu (C: zhongtou 锺头)

house -- ger, {GER} ; qinsang, qinzang, (household)

how -- amakiji, {YAGE, YAJI} ; kidihangi, {KEDU} (how much, how many) ; amakiji gigii, {YAMER} (how to act)

however -- amakisada, smagisada, {YAGESA GE, YANGBERSA BER}

howl -- moorila, {KHAILA}

hug -- tiiri, {TIERBER}

huge -- shge, {SHUGUO}

hum -- zingini, {MULA DAOGER} (yi)

hump -- xja, {GUNKE}
hunchback—biigu, {BEIGUER}
hunger—luasi; {LUOSI}
(hungry)
hunt—radog
hurry—malii, {MALI}
husband—lohan, liuhan, {KUERGAN}

I

I—bu, {BI}
icе—malizi, {MERSI}
idea—sgili, muulaguni, {MULAKUNI, SANER}
identical—salida, {XIDERAKUNI}
identify—tanni, {TANI}
if—tanghui, {DAN}
ignorant—szaliu gua, {AIMIEDIEKUNI}
il—narila, {BIEQIRE} (to fall ill); nari, {BIEQIN} (illness)
imagine—muula, {MULA}
imitate—duura, digha, {SUILA, DAGHA, SA}
immediately—ghuashidi, maliimama, {DAIGUO, ZOU, MALI}
impertinent—shge mula guiji, {ERDIAN GUANG}
implement—sawaa, {JIASHI}
important—yojin, {GUANJING}
imprison—huri, wari, {KHUORI}
in—tura, {TUDUORO, CUDUORO}
inadeable—lii yangla, {SUONOSIDAKUNI}
incapable—kuji gui, {NAGHUDAKUNI, LAIBERKUNI}
incense—szang, {GUIJ}
including—sanasa, kilesa, {SANAJI}
incomplete—tuuxii gua, {SAIBURAGHASANGNI}
inconvenience—quwari gua, {HUANGBIAN GUANG}
incorrect—puja, suula, {ERDA, LAIDUI}
increase—luandina, {WULANGTUGHA}
indeed—jub jubna, {ZHUO}
indifferent—salidana, {AIDURALAKUNI}
indirectly—harigi, {HERGEJI}
(from one to another)
indistinct—hua ada, {ADXIEGEREKUNI}
individual—jina, {JIANNI, KHEZHIGHERNI}
indoors—ger tura, {GERTUDUORO}
inexpensive—nem mula, {PIANYINI} (C:pianyi 便宜)
infecte—daila gua
inferior—bangni, {MAONI}
inflate—kuu, {KAI BEGH}
inflexible—hadang, {KHEDENGTU}
inform—kile, {KELI}
information--ugo
inherit--liukisanni,
{LIULASANGNI}
injure--nurila, {NANWEILAGHA}
in-laws--rog, {WURUO}
(through marriage of children)
inn--mula zan, {MULA LUSHE}
inner--turua, {TUDUORO, CUDUORO}
Inner Mongolia--Aloxa,
{MANGGHUER}
inquire--szagha, {ERSEGH}
insect--huarighii, {KUERGHAI}
inside--tura, {TUDUORO, CUDUORO}
insincere--hunlaji,
{HUERGHUERJI}
insist--amaszada,
{KEGDHOUISHI}
inspect--jensala, jencala,
(inspect secretly)
instant--daiguu, {DAIGUO, ZOU}
instructions--surighua,
{SUERGHA} (instructions)
instrument--sawaa, {JIASHI}
insufficient--quiquan;
quiquanra, {TIDAOA, KUIQIDA}
(to be insufficient)
insult--zhuazhila, {QIHULA} (to be insulted)
insurance--xrai,
intelligence--ziliu, {JILIU}
(intelligentsia)
intercept--dangla, qiruuda,
{CIZER}
interest--durala, {DURUALA}

intermission--hanbura,
{HANGBURA} (to have an intermission)
interpreter--ugo furaghajin,
{AMA GHUERLUO HUANYIGEQIN}
interview--sgalidi, {QIGE, JIEJIAN} (接見) (v)
intestines--gideesi, {GEDIESI}; shge gideesi (large intestines)
intimate--zhonii, tada, {TADA}
invade--subulala
investigate--shdola
invisible--sgan gui, {LAIQIGE, AIQIGE}
invite--doda, {QINGLA}
(C:qing 請)
inward--turaguni,
{TUDUOROKUNI}
iris--snaghua, {GANG}
iron--timuri, {TIERMER}
is--wa, ni, ninba, {BANG, MUBANG, BI}
isn't--puja, {PUZHANG, GUANG}
issue--hgu; gharigha,
{CHUBAN, FAKE} (C:chuban出版)
it--te, {NI, TI}
itch--jiughua, {ZHAO}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>J</strong></th>
<th><strong>K</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jacket--deel, {DIER}; {ZHAORI} (cotton-padded jacket)</td>
<td>kasaya--zan, {BANZALA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jagged--tuuxii gua, {QIRAO SHUDU SHENGGENI}</td>
<td>keen--hujadi, {KHUJIEGH}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jam--jaki, {CHIGE, JIAKE}</td>
<td>keep--hura gii, {KHURA}; hurajin, {XIGEQIN, TIEJIEQIN} (keeper)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jar--gungulog, {TANTER} (C:tan 塬) (with small opening, for liquor)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaw--jijili, {HABA} (C:xiaba 下巴)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jealousy--xarishidang, {QIBUHENDA, NUDU HULAI}</td>
<td>keen--hujadi, {KHUJIEGH}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeer--xota, {XIAOTER PEGH}</td>
<td>keep--hura gii, {KHURA}; hurajin, {XIGEQIN, TIEJIEQIN} (keeper)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job--wuile, {WEILIE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>join--jirigha, {JIALA, RUO RI} (C:jia 炎)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joke--karija, {XIAOTER, SANJI, NADU KELI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journey--Iangla, {LANGLA} (V)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joy--baisa, {BAYASI, BAYER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jug--guanguanzi, {HUHUER, GUANGGUER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juice--aliInaa kua, {SHULI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jump--diuli, duuli, {DIAOLI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just--jang, {ZHEN, JIANG}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kennel--nuhui foori, {NUGHUAI HUER}</td>
<td>knot--gida, {GEDA}; (C:geda 疙瘩) gida sza (V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key (opens lock)--yiuxi, {YUESHI}</td>
<td>know--mude, {MIEDIE, TANI}; pujiu mude, {MIEDIEDER} (knowledge)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kick--hgualida, {TIKE} (C:ti 踢) {HUEULA ZHANGGEDA} (to kick with the hind legs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kid (young goat)--yimaanigu, {YIMA NUGUER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kidney--bora, {BORI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill--ala, jari, {ALA, JIARI} (V)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind (type)--sanba; sanbahgi, {YAMERDANI} {YANGYIERDI} (all kinds of)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kindle--dile, {DIANKE, NUGURI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiss--ba, {MA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen--zuuha, {ZAOHA, ZAOHANG} (C:zao 炊)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knead--ghurili jira, nughua, {NUGHU}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knee--yiidog, {BODO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneel--suguada, {SUOGUODI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife--qidighua, {QIDUGHO}; qidighua nuri (back of a knife)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knit--wanki, {WANKE, PEGH}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock--dangtigha, qoki, {BEGH} (V)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knot--gida, {GEDA}; (C:geda 疙瘩) gida sza (V)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know--mude, {MIEDIE, TANI}; pujiu mude, {MIEDIEDER} (knowledge)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
labor--lahga, lirihga, lisiga, {WEILIE}
lace--hai daizi, {HAI DAIDER} (C:dai 帯)
lack--guira, {CIDAORA} (y); quguandi, {TIDAORA, KUIQIDA} (lacking)
lacquer--yiula, {YOULA}
ladder--kiriguu, {KUGUER}
ladle--joliu, {SHENGGHA}
lady--nine kun, {NINGER, XIJUN KONG, SHINAGU}
lama--lamadii, {LAMA}
lamb--hurigha, {KHUERGHUER}
lame--dangnii, {DERGHO}
lamp--jila, {ZHULA}; lamari (oil lamp for offerings)
lancet--qizi gharigha, {CHUZI GHERGHA} (for bleeding)
land--ghaj ari, nIan, {GHAZHER, WURUANG}
lane--giixang, {MER, HANGTOU}
language--hgaqa, ugo, {WUGE, GE}
lantern--dangliu, {DENLUER} (C:deng 燈)
lap--duuli, {DER}
lard--hgai, fuugu, {PIEYOU, KHEGHAI WOKO} (C:you 油)
large--shge, {SHUGUO}; shgedi, {SHUGUOTU} (become large)
lash--yiuyan; iyuyanda, {MEILADA} (y)

last--huinani, {ZUI KHUONO} (C:zui 最)
late--huina, {WUDA, KHUONO, GUIDA}; huinala, {WUDA SAO} (to be late); huina lailasan, {KHUAINUO} (later);
laugh--xni; {SHINI} (y); xniijn, {SHINIDER} (laughter)
lavatory--moluu, {MAOZEN, MAOLER}
layman--hara tiruudi
lazy--lan, {LANCHUN} (C:lan 懶); landija, {LANCHUNTU} (to be lazy)
lead--laki, duri, {DUER} (y); shgeda, durijin, {TERGHAII, DUEQRIN, NUOYAN} (leader)
leaf--laxji, {LEHGQI}
lean--kola, {KAOLA} (C:kao 靠)
leap--dangnii, {DIAOLI}
learn--suri, {SUER, MIEDIE}
least--zui mula, {ZUI CHUANGNI, ZUI MULANI} (C:zui 最)
leather--arasi, rasi, {ARASI}
leave--yiui, xi, {YAO, XI, HULI}
left (directional)--sulighui, {SERGHAI}; sulighui rogshdi, {SERGHAIIQI} (left-handed)
leg--shghai, xghai, gantii, {GHUYA, SHIHGAI}
legend--nantari, {BIHUANG}
leisure--xanxang, {XIANXIA} (C:xian 閒)
length--shduridini, {SHUDUER}
leopard--jinqanbozi
lessen—quguandi, muladi,
{MULATU, CHUANGTU}

lesson—kijeeel

letter—xn (C: xin 言) (that is mailed); {PIJEGH} (character)

level (equal)—nige kama,
{ADALING}

liar—ghudali, {GHUDERQI}

lick—duuli, {DER}

lid—hajin, ama, pugari, {AMA, BERGESI}

lie—guruu, {NUTA, TANGKE}
(C: tang 鞠) (to lie down);
ghudili, {GHUDER} (falsehood);
hunla, {GHUDER KELI} (ነ);
ghudaliqang, ghudaliqi,
{GHUDERQI, HUERGHUER} (liar)

life—amin, {AMI}

lift—ghudigha,
{DIANLIGHERGHA}

light—gigeen, {GEIGAN, GERE},
(not dark); kunguan,
{KUANGAN} (not heavy)
{ZHULA}

lightning—quguide, {SHANDIAN}

like—salida, {XIDERA, DURALA}

limb—ghari kol, {GHERHANSHI}
(of the body)

limit—kamala (_FIX)

limp—dangni, dughuli,
{DERGHUO, ZHUOLIAN}

line—shdasi, shdog, {DIESI,
TIERMERDASI}; shdog, {DASI}
(line in a book)

lineage—nige qizidii, {GERKU
CHUZI}

link—jirigha, {JIERGHA} ( الخي)
{HUANHUEH} (吻)

lintel—ude manglii, {DIMANLAI}

lion—sngaa

lip—huji qirai, {AMA CHIEBIE}

liquor—durasi, {DURASI}

listen—qangla, sunisi, {CHENLI}

litigate—ja, {ZHA}

little—nigiji, quguan,
{SHIZHEGH, MULA, CHUANG}

live—duri tiigi, adal la, {DIGE};
duri tiigina (living/livelihood);
amintila, {DIGESANG, WOSI}
(living)

liver—haliga, xliga, {GAN}
(C: ganzi 肝子)

livestock—kashida aasi; shge
kashida aasi, {SHUGUO ASI}
(large livestock, i.e., horses,
yaks, cows); mula kashida aasi,
{MULA ASI} (small livestock,
i.e., sheep and goats)

loathe—jila, {WUJIDA}

load—zhuangla, {ZHUANGLUO}
(C: zhuang 裝) (压)

lock—qurighua, {CHUERGHOU};
qurighula, {CHUERGHULO} (锁)

loin—sangra, {SUBIAN, NURU}

loiter—harigi, {XIANXIA HERGE}
(C: xian 隨)

lone—xghala, {JILA} (lonesome)
(C: ji 急)

long—shduri, {SHUDUER};
shdehanni, {TIEDUNDU} (long
ago); sana, {SANA, KEQIAN}
(long for)
look--rje, uje, {NAO, WUJI} (v);
saiingi rje (look attentively)
loop--huanzi; huanzi sza,
{QUANQUERLI} (C:quan 阮) (v)
loose--sula, {SULA}; sladigha,
{TAI} (v)
lose--qughua, {SANGGHA, MERLIE}; Moor qughua, {MER SANGGHA} (lose one's way);
{SHOUGHHA} (loss)
lot--luan, ahangi, yahangi,
{WULANG}
lotion--ghuajin xjari, {TUOSI}
loud--shge hgari, {SHUGUO KHAILA}
louse--bosi, {BOSI}; bosi suugi,
{BOSI SAO} (infested with lice)
love--durala, {BIETU, DURALA} (v); zazala, {DURUERDA} (show love to parents); duralaghagu,
{DURALAGHAKU} (lovely)
low--dura, boni, {BOGHOLING, DUORO}
luck--liiamin, {KHobi, AMI}
lunatic--ghalijiu, {HONGHAN, DIANDUN}
lungs--wuhsu, {HUIZI} (C:fei肺)
luxurious--bayan, {HUDU SHOUHUO}

M

macerate--chungi, {SHUNGU}
mad--ghalijiu (insane);
ghalijiu, {HUNHANRA} (to become insane)
magpie--saighai, {SAZHIGHAI}
main--shgeni
majesty--jindog
majority--shgengii, {WULANQI}
make--sza, {SA}
man--aajadii, dide kun, {BULAI, NONGKONG} (C:nan 男)
maligned--muudi, {MAONI}
man--dide kun, {NONGKONG}
{SHUGUOKONG}; kun szasan,
{KONGSASANGNI} (man-made)
mane--guangma, {MORI ZENGANG} (of a horse);
guangmani haiqila, {ZENGANGNI QIERGHA} (to cut the mane)
maniac--ghalijiu, {HUNHAN}
manner--log, {NINGGE GE} (to do in this manner) {ERDIAN}
(m)
many--luan, {WULAN}; ahangi,
{HUDU WULAN} (a great many);
hudu luan, {WULANDA} (so many)
mare--gurima
mark--shdog, {RUANG, JIHAO}
market--{GEISHANG}
marmot--hanta
marrow--hgang
marry--yiri awu (to get married); {BIERI HEHG} (to
marry a woman); kurigee,
{DAHULA}(to marry a man)
marsh--nakuariri {WOLIAN}
(extensive salt marsh)
mascuine--dide kundii,
{NONGKONGNI}
mash--sajili (♀)
mask--niuri hajin, {MIANGUZI}
masses--luan kun, {WULAN
KONG, ZHONGREN} (C:zhongren
衆人)
master--shgeda, {ZHANGGUIDI}
(C:zhanggui 掌柜)
masterpiece--niradii,
{NIERET AIINI}
mat--wuzi
match--sarila, {DIANHUER,
YANG’HUO}
mattress--wuzi
mature--bali, {KONG
PUDUSANGNI}
may--hgengii, bangjen,
{BANGJIAN}
meal--muhu, {YAMA}
meaning--kileguni,
means--kile
measles--mazi
measure--kamala, {NANLA,
LIANGLA} (C:liang 涼) (♀)
meat--muhu, {MUGHA};
kuarisan muha {KUERDIESANG
MUGHA} (frozen meat for
spring)
medicine--sman, {YUE}
meet--handila, sga, {QIGE,
PENGKE} (♀) (C:peng 砲)

melody--ayang, {DAO}
melt--xndirii, {SHENTUER}
member--kun
memory--muula, jila, {JIXING,
MULA} (C:jixing 記性)
mention--kile, tuuxa,
{TILASANGNI, KELISANGNI}
merchant--maimaiqi,
{MAIMAIQI} (C:maimai 買賣)
mere--jang, {JIANG, ZHANG, ZI}
mess--luanla, {LUANLUO}
(C:luan 亂)
messenger--ugo kurigeejin,
{WUGE DAILAQIN} (C:dai 帶)
method--faari, {MER}; qomin
(method of approach)
midnight--jarin suani, {SUONI
DUNDA}
middle--xjii, jiura, dunda,
{DUNDA}
milk--sun; sa (♀); sun arasi
(layer formed on boiled milk)
mill--tirima, {TIERMIE}
millet--{AMu}

mind--loshiba
mine--muni, {MUNI} (indicating
possession)
mingle--niilagha, {HUOLO,
HUOSHENGDA}
minor--mula, {MULAHERNI,
GUANJIAN GUIKUNI} (C:guanjian
關鍵)
minority--mula tigii,
{CHUANGQI}
miracle--guarijigii, {GAIHARA}
mirror--xel, {JIER}
misbehave--huu gala
miser--mula kun, {KHAROUQI}
mist--snaghua
mistake--suula, {ERDA}; huu yanglaja, {NAO ERDA} (take somebody or something for another)
mittens--lariguu, {WUZHOU}
mix--handila, shdughua, {HUOLO}(v); handilajin, {HUOLOQIN} (mixer); {PANLA} (mixed)
moan--yola, {SHENHUANLA} (v)
modest--mulaghula, {QIANXURA} (C:qianxu 謙虛)
molar--rashdi, {BULIAODI}
moment--jang sghuuna, {ZHANG 'HER} (right moment)
monastery--laghang
money--seeri, {QIER}
Mongolian--Hara Mongghul, {MANGGHUER, KHARA MANGGHUER}
monkey--muqin, {MIXIJUN}
monster--yiile, mangghuzi, {MANGKHUZI, ABULIN}
month--sara, {SARA}
moon--sara, {SARA}
more--xliudi, {HAN, YE}; yixida, {WULANG} (still more)
morning--shdeji, {SHIDIEDU, SHIDIENI BEIDA, GANZAO}
mortar and pestle--jarishidang, {NIEDUER}
mosque--{SERTUER XIMIE}
moss--sajighai yan

most--shgedini, yuhuada, {ZEI} (C:zui 最)
mother--aama, {ANA}; huiti aama, {KHUAYTU ANA} (stepmother)
mother-in-law--ghadin aama
motive--muusanni
motley--alog, {ZABURONG}
moult--raliji, {WUGHUASI ARUERJI}
mound--dangghuali, {DANGBULER, MULA WULA}
mountain--ghada, ula, {WULA}
mourning--rgai, {MAOTU}; haraa dura, {YILA} (person in mourning)
mouse--liuxi, loxi, {LAOCHU}
moustache--sghali, {SIGHER}
mouth--ama, {AMA}; huji bulang, {AMA ZHUER} (corner of the mouth); {KHUZHU} (mouthpiece)
move--ghudiligha, {GOOIER}

much--luan, {WULAN};
tamaingi (that much); tigii luan (this much, this many, as many as these)
mucus--hawari, {KHABER, LINPUZI}
mud--xawari; na, {SHIBER} (to apply mud or clay)
mug--warima, {BAZHUNZI}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mule—liusa, losa, {LAOSA}</td>
<td>nation—jina kun, {JIESINIKONG}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mumps—liuxi yara, {SULER}</td>
<td>native—jinani, {JIANNI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder—sanaji ala, {SANAJI ALA}</td>
<td>GHAZHERNI}; turasan ghajari, {DAGELIEKU RUANG} (native place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murmure—diudiu, {DUOBORE}</td>
<td>nature—ghajari tingere, {GHAZHER TIANGERE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscle—muha, {MUGHA}</td>
<td>naturally—diigi, dangmaasani, {DAIGAI, DAIGE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mushroom—mogu, {MAOGUER}</td>
<td>naughty—wanxan, {WAIXIAN, XIA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music—dog</td>
<td>nasea—chola, {CHAOLA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musk—larishizi, {MIANGUZI}</td>
<td>(C:chao 抄)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C:mianju 面具)</td>
<td>navel—kuizi, {KUIAI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muslim—Huuihui, {SERTUER}</td>
<td>near—tada, {TADA}; shgengii (nearly); tudadi, {SHIGHA, ZHUER} (draw nearer);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must—amaszada, yiidang, {YAGESA}</td>
<td>{BANGJIAN, PUZADIGER}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutton—huni muha, {KUONI MUGHA}</td>
<td>necessary—gulaguni, {JIARIKUNI, GUANJINNI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muzzle ( Vinci }—{KABER MA KHUZHU}</td>
<td>neck—guji, {GUJI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my—muni, {MUNI}</td>
<td>needed—gulaguna, {KERLIKUNI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myself—bu jina, {BI JIENANG}</td>
<td>needle—jiu, {ZHAI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nail—xn, {GHADASI}; xnada (fasten with a nail); qimusi, {CHENPUZI} (claw)</td>
<td>needless—murihguun, {LAJARIKUNI, AIJARIKUNI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naked—nukuqu, {NUOQIGER, CHACHAGUER}</td>
<td>neigh—mori hiila, {MORI KHAILA} ( Vinci }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name—nira, dodaguni, {NIERE, DAODA}</td>
<td>neighbor—giibiizi, {DANGJIER, LINJIER} (C:lin 鄰)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nape (of the neck)—gujini huina, {GUJI KUONO}</td>
<td>negro—hara kun, {KHARAKONG}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narrow—yiutan, narin, {HUJTANG}</td>
<td>nephew—zhiaizi (C:zhier 侄 儿 ); {CHER} (nephew or niece)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal—haw материал din, {KABERSA}</td>
<td>nerve—jirihga shdaazi, huangla, {HUANGLA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasty—muu, {RIGUI, MAO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
nest--foori, {HUER}  
net--wangwangzi,  
{WANGWANGZI} (C:wang 網)  
netherworld--Yangwangyii,  
{YANWANGYE} (C:Yanwangye 閔王爺) (the Netherworld King)  
never--zangda, {DAIGAI GUANG, DAIGAI GUI}  
nevermind--shjuan gua, xjuan gua, {KHAMA GUI}  
nevertheless--puja, {PUSA, PUZA, BUGUO}  
new--xni, {SHINI}  
next--dii nige hui, {TADA, PUZAGE}  
niche--nenghang (for Buddha image)  
niece--xjun, {CHER XUJUN}  
night--suani, xulang, {SUONI, SHULIAN}; suanigu,  
{JIAOSHULIAN} (nightly)  
nightmare--haraa dari, {MAO JIAODUN} (to have)  
nil--gua, {GUANG, WUGUANG}  
nine--shzin  
ninety--yirin  
nip--jaki, {GH AZHA}  
nippers--jakijin, {QIANZI}  
nit--jisizi, {CHER}  
no--gua, gui, {WULIE, WUGUI, WUGUANG, PUZHANG}  
nobleman--bayan kun,  
{BAYANG KONG}  
nod--denki, {DIANKE}  
(C:diantou 點頭) (nod repeatedly)  
noise--sonogla, xuudina;  
{SHUGUO DAO, CHAOKE}  
(C:chao 叫) (make noise)  
nomad grounds--sozi,  
{HERGE}  
nominate--tii ghua  
nonsense--hu kile, {HU KELI}  
(talk nonsense) (C:hu 胡)  
noon--durilgun, {DUERSUGHO}  
nose--hawari, {KHABER}  
nose--aasi xnaxja,  
{DUORI} (for cattle)  
not--puja, ghangu, lii, gua, bii, yii, {PUZHANG, WUGUI}  
nothing--yamada gua, {DIGER A GUANG, YANG A GUANG}  
novice--pogxji, {LAMA WER} (Buddhist)  
now--do, {DU, NIEBIE, NISHJIE}  
nowhere--ghajari gua, {ANGJI A GUANG}  
numb--mala, {MALA}; malana  
(C:ma 麻) (to become numb)  
number--kajang  
nun--aagu lama  
nurse--guala (v)
obliterate--moki, {MOKE HEGH} (C:mo 抹)
observe--szaliu rje, nog, {JU, NAO}
obstacle--danglajin,
{DANGLAKUNI}
obstinate--ninbinzi,
{NINGBENZI}
obstruct--bugile, {CHIGE, DUSHA}
occupy--zhanka, {ZHANKE} (C:zhan 占)
odor--niishida, {JIAORENGAI HUNTI} (of burning)
of--ni, {NI}
off--xi, {ERDA}
official--niiwandii, {NUOYAN, NUOYANNI}
oh--ghayog, ghog, {AO}
oil--tuusi, {TUOSI}
OK--ya, likuna, liguna, {ZHA, BERJIAN, BERKUNANG, GEZAI}
old--shdugu, nesidi, {XIDIER, MAO, DAIGENI, KHAOQINNI};
shdulaxja, {XIDIER} (to grow old)
omen--szanbuu
on--jighadi, dira, {DIERE, ZHAGHA, DIEGHONG}
once--nige huini, {yijui};
jiujiudi, {DAIGUO} (at once)
one--nige, {NIGE}; kungi,
{KEZHIGER} (one person)
one--kengi jina, {JIENANG}
onion--sngunog; srinsog (wild onion) {CONGYER}
(C:cong 蔣)
only--jang, {ZHANG, ZI, JIANG}
open--nii, {NI, NIE} (v);
{ZHEKE} (open by lifting up)
opinion--rjegundi
opportunity--sain sghuu
opposite--{DUIBAZI, XIANGHUAN}
oppress--dari, kundin tii,
{DARI} (oppressed)
optional--ligha, {ALIGHA}
or--dii, liguna, {BIU}
oral--kile, {KELIKUNI}
orchard--alimaa bang, {AMULA YANZI}
order--ugo bo, sang, {JIA} (v)
ordinary--hgengii, kijeeda
organ--hguaragu dangxi (bodily organs)
origin--zui muxi, xjiu, {ZUI MIESHIKUNI} (C:zui 最)
 orphan--aaba aama guijin,
{WUNIEQIN}
other--guura, {GUORI}
otherwise--dii puiiha,
{PUZHISA, TINLAIGESA}
otter--shan
our--budahgini, budasgini,
dahgini, dangghaulani, {DASINI, DATANGNI}
out--ghada, {GHADAJI, GHADA}
outlay--buragha, {HUIYONG}
(C:feiyong 費用)
outside--ghada, {GHADA, GHADABEIDA, GHADAJIJU} (external)
outstanding--niradii, {GANSANDA, SHUGUODA}
outward--ghadani, {GHADAJI}
overcast--buruun duri, {WOLIANTAI}
overcome--kujila shda, {LAGHU, NAGHU}
overhead--tulighui jighadi, {TERGHAIZAGHA}
overlook--duwaji rje, {TERGHAINANG XINKE NAO}
overnight--niguusuani, {YIGE SHULIAN, YIGE SUONI} (C:yige 一個)
owl--gugumii, {GUGUMIA (w)u}
own--jinani, {JIENI}
ox--hguari, fguari, {FUGUER, HUGUER}

P

package--wangla, furuu, {SHUDA, CHUCHUER}
packet--mula bofu, {MULA BAOBER} (C:bao 包)
packsaddle--yimeeli, {YIMIER}
pagoda--qoshiden, {TER, SUERBERGHA} (C:ta 塔)
pail--tiidang, {SERGHO}
pain--yitigha; nari, {BIETU} (to feel)
paint--yiula, {QI}; yiula, {YOUA, BUDU} (♀); yiulajin, {HUAIJANG} (C:huaijiang 畫匠) (painter)
pair--ghoorila, ghuila
palace--dughuang
palate--mula kile, {TANGLAI}
palm (of the hand)--ghari xjii, {GHAR KHERGA}
pants--wuu jirigha ada, {MODUO}
palpitait--{SHUGUTU}
paper--qalizi, qalisi, {QUIERSI, CHERSI}
pardon--diingi, yang, {RANGLA, LIANGIE}
parent--aaba aama, aana aawa, {ABANA}
parrot--ingori, {YINGGUER SHIBAO}
part--jantog, {KHUBA} (♀)
paticipate--kuri
particular--caihu, guarijigii, {GUORITEGH}
pass--duwa, dawa, {NUOQI} (♀); {MER YAOQING} (pass by)
paste--na, {NIA, NIERGA}
pasture--sozi; dila, dangla, {DANGLA} (C:dang 擋) (go to pasture)
patch--nukuuzi, {NUOGUOSI}
patrol--harigi, xrigi, {HERGE} (♀)
pattern--log, sanba
paunch--kiile, {GEDIESI}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Mongolian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pause--nigijii so, hanbura, {BAI, HANGBURA}</td>
<td>permanent--kijeeda, chinzhog, {YILAO}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay--tuula, ghua, {TUOLO, HU}</td>
<td>permission--liguna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace--zholahji, nanjin, {NANJING} (peaceful)</td>
<td>permit--liguna, {DAYINGLA} (C:daying 答應)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peach--toai alimaa, {TAO}</td>
<td>person--kun, {KONG}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peak--ghada tulighui, {WULA DIANGELAI, WULA JIANJIER}</td>
<td>perspire--kunisizi ghari, {KUERLIESI GHER}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pearl--xuri, {MANER}</td>
<td>persuade--quangi, {QUANKE, HUERGHUERJI KELI} (C:quán 勸)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peasant--lahgaqi, larihgaqi, {ZHUANGJIAQI}</td>
<td>pheasant--qurighua, {YEJIER} (C:ye 野)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peel--huuli, {KHUER} (v)</td>
<td>phlegm--kalog, {CHER}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peep--huarighaji rje, {KHULEGHJI NAO}</td>
<td>physical--baini, {BIENI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pen--sunghua</td>
<td>pick (tool)--banju, {BANJUE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penetrate--snki, nuuri, {SHENDA, NUOQI}</td>
<td>pickpocket--huarighii, liuai, {HUERGHAIQI, LIUERJIANG}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penis--buudi, jughui, {MANIER, CHIZHUO}; jijuji (little boys)</td>
<td>picture--huaai, {HUAZHI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people--kun, {KONG}</td>
<td>pierce--nukua nii, tanggharigha, {CHUER} (to pierce through); chuuki (with a spear)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percolate--dinla</td>
<td>piety--gaqanqile, {DANGREN} (QD:dangren 當人) (filial piety)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfect--saini hguai, {GANSANNI CHIMA GUANG}</td>
<td>pig--hgai, {KHEGHAI}; hgai jilijigha, {KHEGHAI ZHUZHUGHUER} (piglet); hgai pang, {KHEGHAI KHUDANG} (pigsty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perforate--nukua qula, {NUKUO CHUER}</td>
<td>pigeon--gurihga, {GUGU}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perform--nadi, gilidi, {NADU} (performance)</td>
<td>pile--duiduizi, {DUIZILI} (C:duizi 堆子) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>period--nige sghuu, jiura, {JIURA}</td>
<td>pillar--tuligha, {TUERHA}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
pillow--dira, {DIERE}; dira
dangla, {DIERE1} (use something as a pillow)
pin--jaki, {ZHAI}

pinch--niiki, {NIEKE} (C:nie
捏), {QIAKE} (C:qia 把) (v)

pipe--huangsa, qida, {YANPER} (C:yan 煙) (for smoking)

pit--nukua, {NUKUANG, HEGANG}
pity--niizhang, {NIEZHANG}

place (location)--ghajari, ruan, {WURUANG, GHAZHER}; gi, {GE, TAIBI} (v)

plain (flat land)--tala, {TALA}
plaintiff--jaji, {ZHAQIN}

plaint--guri, {GURU, ZERMER} (v)

plant--tari, zaila, {TAI} (v)

plaster--niizhang, {NIEZHANG}

plate--nukua, {NUKUANG, HEGANG}

plead--nadi, {NADU); nadi gule, {NADU KELI} (play a joke)

plea--yangjila, {YANGJILA}

pleasure--baisa, {BAYASI}

pleat--chuchubanii, {CHUCHUMER}

pledge--darajin, {DARIGA}

plenty--luan, {WULAN}

plow--jasi, {ENZHASI}; fuli
{HULU, HUERBER} (v)

plug--ama, {CHIGE} (v)

pocket--diudun, {CHUCHUER}

point--juri, {TERGHA1} (tip);

ujeligha, {RUANG} (to have a pointed top)

poker--kasog, {KEJIAO} (stir a fire with a poker)

pole--tuligha, {GANGER}

policy--turolog

politics--lusni turolog

poor--nenqang, {HUITANG} (no money); niizhang, {NIEZHANG} (poor fellow)

popularize--hanani, {DURALAKUNI}

porcelain--wajog, {WAZHEGH}

pork--hgai muha, {KHEGHAI MUGHA}

portend--szanbuu, {MIESHIKU TAOTER}

portrait--log, {KUNNI HUAXIANG} (C:huaxiang 畫相)

position--ruan, {WURUANG}

possession--bula awa, {BIKUNI}

postpone--suidahan, {DANGUOLOI}

pot--tighuu, {TUGHO}

pound (crush)--hgara, {NIEDU}

pour--suri, {DAOKE, SUER}

poverty--niizhang, {NIEZHANG}

powder--momozi, {MIANMIER}

power--rghang, {ERGHA, KUJI}

practically--yanglajin, suriji, {BANGJIAN, PUZA DIGERGESHI}
praise—shdurila, kuala,
{kuala} (C:kua 夸) (v)
pray—yangjila, {jierbari}
precipice—hugugu qirai,
{erge}
precipitate—tarishida,
{zhala} (v)
preface—muxigu ugo
pregnant—bulai rugu, {gediesi
shuguotu}
prepared—jiuyiila, {jiula}
prescription—sman fangzi,
{dingke} (C:ding 釘)
press—kundin tii, dari, {dari}
(v)
pretend—ziina tingina,
{zhuangke} (C:jiazhuang
嫁妝)
pretend—ziina tingina,
{zhuangke} (C:jiazhuang
嫁妝)
pretext—yerijj gule
pretty—saihan, hudungi,
{zaihang, burong zaihang}
prick—shdughua, {chuoke}
(C:chuo 戳) (v)
print—yinki, {yinke} (C:yin
印) (v)
prison—banfangzi,
{banhuangzi} (C:ban 板)
probably—chuang, {chuang}
problem—dundog, kileguma,
{khare}
proceed—darang gi
produce—ghariqgha, sza, {sa}
(v)
proficient—suri, {suer}
(become proficient in)
profit—zilasen, {angguo}

profound—guandi, {gunni}
prohibit—dangla, jila,
{dangla} (C:dang 擋)
promise—chhindangla,
{chendangla, dayingla}
(C:daying 答應) (v)
prompt—malii, ghuashdi,
{malii, daiguo}
prop—tuirgha, {tuerha} (pole
to prop up the house)
prosper—neela, {pudu}
protrude—jii, {kuo gher}
proud—hguai gi, {shuguosh}
to be proud of oneself)
proverb—kileguni, {kelikuni}
provisions—kolang, {hula, hu,
dikuni}
publish—gharigha
pudgy—tarighula, {huda
henda}
puff—piila, {huni huili} (v)
pull—shdii, {shudi} (pull out
hair or wool); shdiiwa, {zhui}
(pull up)
pulse—diuli, {mei}
punch—nukuua nii, {nakuo
chuer} (punch a hole)
punctual—jang kama, {zhang
kama}
puncture—chuki, {chuere}
(v)
punish—shda
pupil—mula xuusang, {mula
xueshen} (C:xuesheng 學生)
puppy--nuhui jilijigha,
{NUGHUAI ZHUZHUGHUER, HAPER}
purchase--yeri, {DUER}
pure--arindi, {CHUNCUI, ARUNNI}
purpose--muusan, {MUDI}
(C:mudi 目的)
pus--ndii, {YIDI}
push--tirigu, {TUERKE} (v)
put--gii, {GE}; zhuangla,
{ZHUANGLO} (C:zhuang 装)
(put something in a case or envelope); musi {MUSI} (put on)

Q
quake--ghudili, {GUDIER, ZHENDONG}
quality--{GEZAIDUNANG}
quarrel--kilelidi, {JIANGLA, BAGUERDU, CHAOKE}
(C:chao 叫)
queen--rjauwuni yiri
question--dundog, szaghaguni,
{ERSEGHKUNI}
quick--malii, {MALI, ZOU};
maliiti, {MALITU} (become quick)
quilt--nanbarihga,
{GUANJIELIE}

R
rabbit--tuulii, {TAOLAI}
rage--jiila, {SHUGUO WER};
ghalijiura (fly into a rage)
railway--timuri moori,
{HUOCHE MER} (C:huoche 火車)
rain--rua, huraa, {KHURA};
huraa guangshang, {KHURA WULANGNI} (rainy)
rainbow--snaghua, gang,
{GANG}
raincoat--huraa deel,
raise--gharigha, tijai, {DIANLI, TIEJIE}; tulighuina taila,
{ZHAGHA GHARGHA} (one's head)
rake--sanqa (to rake up)
ram--narishipa, arighasan huni,
{JIEYANG} (C:yang 羊)
(castrated); murigu, {MERGU} (v)
rank (class)--pailalidi
ransom--raliji, {ARUERJI} (v)
rare--quguan, quiqan, {HUHU
CHUANG}
rat--loxi, liuxi, {LAOCHU}
(C:laoshu 老鼠)
rather (somewhat)--hudu,
{DIGER}
rattle--gulog, {SHUAIBULA} (v)
ravenous--luasi, {BURUN
LUOSISANGNI, LUOSITINGGESANGNI}
ravine--jangmu, {GHUER}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>read</strong>--muxi, rje, uje, {MUSHI, NAO}</td>
<td><strong>regard</strong>--rje, nog, uje, {NAO} (ヴィ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ready</strong>--jiuyiila, {JIULA} (C:jiu救) (make ready)</td>
<td><strong>register</strong>--jila, {DENGJI, JILA} (C:dengji 登記)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>real</strong>--jub jubni, {ZHUO}</td>
<td><strong>reincarnate</strong>--xjilila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>reap</strong>--ruagha, gharishdi, tuarila, {SHUDI, GHADU, KHURA}</td>
<td><strong>reins</strong>--randan, {JIANGSHENG, NUOTO}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>rear</strong>--huina, {KHOONO}; tijai, {TIEJIE} (to be brought up)</td>
<td><strong>reject</strong>--rje ada, {KERLA XIGHA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>reason (cause)</strong>--kama, {KHAROU}</td>
<td><strong>rejoice</strong>--baisa, {BAYASI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>recall</strong>--muula, {MULA}</td>
<td><strong>relation</strong>--zhiwa, rog, {WURUO} (relatives)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>receive</strong>--hura, {KHURA}</td>
<td><strong>religion</strong>--dashiba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>recent</strong>--huina shdaari</td>
<td><strong>rely</strong>--kola, {KAOLA} (C:yikao依靠) (ヴィ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>recognize</strong>--tanni, {TANI}</td>
<td><strong>remain</strong>--laila, {HULI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>reconcile</strong>--zholadina, {HUOLUMOGHA} (be reconciled with somebody); sainidija, {RANGLA} (reconcile one's self with)</td>
<td><strong>remember</strong>--jila, {JILA} (C:ji記)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>record</strong>--jila, {JILA} (C:ji記)</td>
<td><strong>remind</strong>--szaliudi, {SANER RI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>recover</strong>--mude, gharigha, {BER, GEZAITU}; hanadija (from illness)</td>
<td><strong>renew</strong>--xniqile, {SHINITUGHA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>recruit</strong>--hura, {KHURA} (ヴィ)</td>
<td><strong>repair</strong>--xuuki, {SA, XIUKE} (C:xiu修)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>rectum</strong>--shge gideesini jurini, {SHUGUO GEDIESI ZHUER}</td>
<td><strong>repeat</strong>--sangdi, {PUZABIAN GE} (ヴィ); nige hui yang nige hui, {PUZA KELI} (repeatedly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>red</strong>--fulaan, {HULANG}</td>
<td><strong>replace</strong>--raliji, {ARUERJI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>reduced</strong>--quguandi, {CHUANGTU}</td>
<td><strong>reply</strong>--harili, {KHAROU}; hari gi, {KHAROU HU} (ヴィ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>refrain</strong>--wari, {ZHAIHENGNA}</td>
<td><strong>report</strong>--kile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>refreshed</strong>--szaliudi, {JILIUTU, SHINITU}</td>
<td><strong>ruby</strong>--fulaan boshi, {HULANG BAOSHI} (C:baoshi寶石)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>refuse</strong>--lii hgile, {BERDAGHA, LAIBER} (ヴィ)</td>
<td><strong>rumble</strong>--qugude (ヴィ); noxjili, {PANGENLA} (of thunder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>remember</strong>--jila, {JILA} (C:ji記)</td>
<td><strong>rumour</strong>--huu gule, {HU KELI} (C:hu胡)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>regard</strong>--rje, nog, uje, {NAO} (ヴィ)</td>
<td><strong>rump</strong>--ghuanzisi, ghuanjisi, {GOUZANZI}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
rumple--chuchura, 
{CHUCHURUGHA}  
run--guai, gui, {GUI, PUDERA}  
(v); jira, {ZHUA} (to run after)  
rung--{KUGUER}  
rust--jiida, {XIUME}  
(C:xiu 修 )  
rustle--sisiri, {SHARARAGE}  

sable--hara, {KHARA}  
sabotage--{NANXINNANG BUDIER}  
sack--fuuda, {SHUDA}; tuluun, 
{TULONG} (of animal skin)  
sacred--shdenchili, 
{PUGHANGNI}  
sacrifice--fuula, {JISI} (v)  
sacrum--sangra yasi  
sad--pofan, {MAOTU}  
saddle--yimeeli, {YIMIER}; 
yimeeli xiang (saddle-felt)  
saliva--kaji, {SHUERKE, LINPUZI}  
salt--darishizi, {DAPUZI, 
DABUSI}; haxin, {KU} (salty); 
yanla, {YANLI} (QD:yam)  
(season with)  
same--nige sanba, salida, 
{XIDERA}  
sand--xaaxi  
satin--tiriga, {TERGHO}  
satisfy--kuri {KUER} (v); kurija, 
{KUERGHA} (satisfied)  
saucer--diizi, tawog, diranjin, 
{PIELA}  
savage--ghalijiu, {LIEQIEGE, 
LAODAO}  
save--amin tualigha; {CUNKE}  
(C:cun 存 ) (money)  
saw--qiruu, {QIRA0} (tool)  
say--kile, {KELI}; kilena  
(saying)  
scab--ba, {JIAJIER} (C:jia 瘡 )  
scauld--xra, tangla, {TULI, 
TANGLA}  
scales--warimaa, {BERMA}  
scalp--xog, {TERGHAU ARASI}  
scandal--muu dundog, {MAO 
KHERE}  
scar--rba, {YARA, BIERSI}  
scarce--quguan, 
{TIDAORAKUNI}; quguandi, 
{CIDAORA} (to become)  
scarf--tuujin {BAOTOU}  
scatter--saji, {SEGHI}  
scholar--pujuqi, {PIJIEGH 
MIEDEQIN}  
school--xuutang (C:xuetang 学 
堂 ); xuusang bulai, {XUESHENG 
BULAI} (C:xuesheng 學生 )  
(schoolboy); xuusang xjun, 
{XUESHENG AGUER}  
(schoolgirl)  
scissors--hiiqi, haiqi, {KHAIQI}  
scold--sghuu, sguu, {SUGUO, 
MADA ZHAOKE} (v)  
scoop--timuxii, {TIAOGUER}  
{WEI} (v)
scorch--tangla, (ʊ), {XIDA}
JIAORIGHA} (ʊ), {JIAORI} (ʊ)
scorn--rje ada, {JIDALANG, NAODALANG}
scoundrel--muu kun, {MAOKONG}
scout--tangjin, {TANKEQIN}
scowl--pofanla, {DAMANANG KHARALAGHA}
scrape--guaki, {GUAKE} (C:gua 刮); qanbii (scaper)
scratch--cagi, maji, {WAJI, SUDUER, ZHAO}
script--jurisan, {ZHURUSANGNI}
scripture--huaixia, {LAN}
scum--kursizi, {KASHA, MOMOZI} (C:mo 沫)
scythe--ghadiri, {GHADUER}
sea--dalii, {SHUGUO MIERAN}
seal (stamp)--na, {NIA}
seam--qaszan, nangang, {HONGZI}
search--yeri, {YERRI} (ʊ)
seat--ruan, wuruan, {WURUANG}
secret--smugeeri; smugeeridi, {MIMI} (secretly)
secure--dangna, {BATOU}
see--rje, uje, sga, nog, {QIGE, NAO} (ʊ)
seed--furai, {HURU}; tari, {TARI} (ʊ)
seek--yeri, yiri, {YIERRI}
seize--wari, {BARI}; waraxja (seized)
select--ligha, {LIGHA, JIANKE, TIAOKE} (C:tiaoxuan 挑选)
self--jina, {JIJANG}
sell--dalidi, {DUER} (ʊ)
semen--sun, tamog, {SONG}
send--kurigee, {KUERGE}
senile--shindul, {SHUONI}
separate--hajira, hgara (ʊ), {KHJEJA} (ʊ), {KHUBA} (ʊ)
sequence--ghada tudari
servant--ghari duragu, {JIARIDER}
set--set, {TAIBI}; ghara xgha, {GE} (to set out)
settle--danglagha, {HANGBURA}
several--kidila, {JIUER}
sell--yuu, xuu, yiu, {SHIDI}
shabby--ciziras, {KHAOQINRASANGNI}
shade--srin, {XIUDIER, KHA}; {XIUDIERL} (ʊ)
shaft (of a cart)--tiriga yantos, {TIERGE QIPAI}
shake--xrigudi, ghudili, {SHUAIBULA, SHUKUTU}
shallow--diuang, {JIAN}
shame--xjee, {XUJE}
shank--mula xghai, {mula SHIGHAI}
shape--log
sharp--huja, {KHUIJEGH}; buliuda, {BULIAODI} (sharpen)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shatter</td>
<td>sajili</td>
<td>PEGH KHEGHER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shave</td>
<td>qirigha</td>
<td>{GUAKE} (C:gua 刮) (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>gan, te</td>
<td>{GAN}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shear</td>
<td>hiiqi, haiqila</td>
<td>{QIERGHA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hiiqila</td>
<td>{SHUGUO KHAIQI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheath</td>
<td>xoxozi</td>
<td>{QIDUGHO XIAOZI} (C:xiaozi 铫子)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shed</td>
<td>mula ger, {MULA GER, WOPER} (C:wo 窩)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>huni, hunimaa, {KHUONI}; narishipa, {KHUJIA} (male sheep); nikii, {NEKAI} (sheepskin coat)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shell</td>
<td>halizi</td>
<td>{ZANGGHERE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shelter</td>
<td>ha, dangla</td>
<td>{KHA} (V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shift</td>
<td>ghudili</td>
<td>{ARUERJI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>ghal qugude, {RAOKE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shiver</td>
<td>xrigudi</td>
<td>{SHIGERI} (shivering from extreme cold)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shock</td>
<td>puga, naa, {GAIHARA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>qanhai, qarog, {HAI}; lutii, {LUOTI} (type of leather shoe)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>smuda, poda, (with a firearm)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shop</td>
<td>huzushai, {HUOZUOSHE, PUPUER, DAIXIAO} (C:hezuoshe 合作社, puzi 鋪子)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shore</td>
<td>raali qirai, {MIERAN CHEBIE} (river shore)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>hguari, {KUHGUER, TADA, MULA, BOGHUOLIN}; hguarida, {CHUANGDA} (shortage)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoulder</td>
<td>dalii, {DALU}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shout</td>
<td>qora, hiila, {KHAILA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shovel</td>
<td>timuri gurixjog, {TIERMER KUERJI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>gharigha, rjegha, {NAOGHA, WUJIGHA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrink</td>
<td>muladi, {ZHOUKE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrive</td>
<td>xiitila, {KHUO} (grass)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>ha, {KHA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuttlecock</td>
<td>tijian, {TIJIER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shy</td>
<td>xjee, {XIJE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sick</td>
<td>nari, {BIEQIRE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side</td>
<td>nige rog, {CHEBIE}; cun nige rog, {NIMIANS} (on or along this side); ne rog, {NIHAMIAN} (on this side)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sight</td>
<td>wudog, yidog, {QIGE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sightsee</td>
<td>langla, {LANGLAQING}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign</td>
<td>shdog, {HAODA} (C:hao 號)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signal</td>
<td>mudeghajin, {HAOHU} (C:hao號)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silk</td>
<td>tiriga, {TERGHUO}; kadog, {KHADEGH} (strip of silk presented to show respect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sill</td>
<td>qangguang taiga, {CHUANGKUANG TAIKER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silly</td>
<td>guazi, {DIANDUN}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silver</td>
<td>mengu, {MIANGU}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similar</td>
<td>slida, sarila, salida, {XIDERAKUNI} (similarity)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple</td>
<td>quwari, {CHIBER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Mongolian</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simulation</td>
<td>zhuangki,</td>
<td>{XIDERAGHA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sin</td>
<td>neriwadi,</td>
<td>{MAOTUGHA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since</td>
<td>tensa huina, NINGSA,</td>
<td>{NINGSA KHUAINUO}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>dola, DAOLA; dolajin, DAOLAQIN (singer)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single</td>
<td>xghala, KHEZHIGHER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink</td>
<td>dola, suura, DEGHLA, YANKE, SHENGDA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sip</td>
<td>garigi, SHUMI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister</td>
<td>aajji xjundiu, AJIADIAO, GEQIDIAO (sisters); aaji, AJIA (elder sister); xjundiu, DIAO (younger sister)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister-in-law</td>
<td>diu yiri, DIAO BIERI</td>
<td>(wife of younger brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sodii, SAO, BANDINLA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>situation</td>
<td>log</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skate</td>
<td>malizi suura, SANSER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skill</td>
<td>duri, lamaqan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin</td>
<td>arasi, rasi, ARASI; arasi huuli, ARASI KHUER (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skip</td>
<td>duuli, DIAOLI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skirt</td>
<td>narinang, HANTER, KHUERMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skull</td>
<td>tulighui yasi; tulighui yasini qaszari, TERGHAI YECI (sutures of the skull)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sky</td>
<td>tingere, TIANGERE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slack</td>
<td>funiisi guigu tigii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slander</td>
<td>xarishiba, WANLAGHA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slant</td>
<td>muri, MURI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slaughter</td>
<td>jari, JIARI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>qaa; qaana, NERRI (y)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleeve</td>
<td>hanqi, hanji, KHANQI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slide</td>
<td>suura, SANSER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slime</td>
<td>xariwa, ZHUOLIAN SHAO (slimy earth)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slang</td>
<td>deola, KERLA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slit</td>
<td>cizira, CZIIRA (in the side of a gown or shirt)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lope</td>
<td>biima, BERQIE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slouch</td>
<td>duran xri gui, KUIJUKUSHENGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow</td>
<td>jigha, jangna, WUDANG; jangnahan, WUDANGNI (slowly)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>mula, MULA; muladina, MULATU (to become smaller)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smallpox</td>
<td>mazi, QIJIEGH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smash</td>
<td>sajili, KHEGHER, KHEGHERA (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smear</td>
<td>surigu, moki, MOKE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>funiri, HUNTI, HUNIER; fumugii, HUNBUGHAI (bad smell); ANGTUDONG HUNIER (good smell); HUNTI (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>funii, HUNI, YAN WU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snail</td>
<td>sbaniu, GUOGUONIER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snake</td>
<td>mughui, MOGHAI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sneer</td>
<td>xotari, XIAOTER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(C:chao 叫)
sneeze--qora, niiten, {NAITA}
snip--hiiqila, {KHAIQILA QIERGHA}
snore--huji laki
snout--hawari ama, {ZHOUQI}
snow--qasi, qazi, {CHEGHI}
snuffling--hawarishdina, {XIKE} (snuffling)
snoring--hawari laki
snout--hawari
snow--qas, qazi, {CHEGZI}
soak--snkini, {PAOLA} (soaking)
sob--yiila, {YILA}
soldier--hanla, {HANLA}
(C:han 焕)
soldier--qiruu, lengzi, {BINGBIER} (C:bing 兵)
sole--kol jiuja, {KHUER ZHOUJIA} (of foot)
some--ahangi, {DIGER}
sometimes--amankiba,
amangiha, {JIURA MOGHANG, YOUSHIJIE}
son--kuu, {KAO}
son-in-law--kurigeen,
{ZHAONUXU} (C: nuxu 女婿)
as soon as--dini, {DAI}
soot--funiisi, taxja, {HUNI}
sore--nari, {BIETU}
sorrow--pofan; nanxinghula,
{POHUAN, MAOTU} (sorrowful)
soul--funiizi, {SUNISI}
sound--hgari, dog, {DAO}; hgari
ghari, {DAO GHER} (♂)
soup--kua, {SHULI}
sour--hajin, {KHEZHENG};
hajindigha, {KHEZHER} (become sour)
source--juri, {ZHuer, GENZI}
(C:genzi 槟子)
south--furi, {NANBANG}
space--ghajari, ruan,
{WURUANG} (spacious)
span--nanla, {NANLA}
sparking--ghal sziri, {GEGERE} (♂)
speak--kile, {KELI}
spear--jiida, {MIAOZI} (C:mao 炮)
special--yixida, {GUORITEGH}
speech--ugo kile, {KELI}
speed--malii, {MALI} (speedy)
spend--yangla, jari, {JIARI}
spider--hahai, hahii, {HAHAI}
spill--diila, {QUIRKE} (♂)
spin--niki (♀); nikijin tiriga,
{MALI HERGE} (spinning wheel)
spine--gangsa, nuri, {NURU} (base of)
spiral--muruqgidi,
{MERKEKUNI}
spirit--ninpu, {LINBI}
spill--pofan, {ZANKE} (♀),
{ZANKEGHA} (vt) (QD: zan)
splendid--duralaji, gansandini,
{GANSANDANI}
spoil--fuu, muuda, {MAODA}
spoor--timuxii, {TIAOGUER}
spout--pingi
spread--saji, {ERDER}
spring—bulog, {BULEGH} 
(water)
sprinkle—pujiri, saji, {PENKER} 
(C:pen 嘮)
sprout—naazila, {NIANIER, NIAZI}
square—deeran logshdii, 
{SHUGUO RUANG}
squat—dandii, dundii, 
{DANDAI}
squeeze—niiki, {NIEKE} 
(C:nie 捏) (with the hand)
squint—murii rje, {QILI}
stab—quki, {CHUOKE, CHIGE} 
(C:chuo 揍)
stable—dangdii, hadangdii, 
{KHUDANG, ANGKHUZHUO} (II)
stack—duiduizi, {DUIDUIZI} 
(C:dui堆)
stagger—murii snburii, 
{SHUAIBULA}
stairs—tangzi, {KUDIKADI}
stake—xna, {ZHUANGZHUER} 
(C:zhuang 棍)
stall—{TERGHAINANG DIANLI YAO}
stallion—aima, {ERMA}
stamp—taki,
stand—puzi, {BAI}
stare—rje dangla, {ZHIHJIA WUI} (Y)
start—ghudili
starve—luasi, lusi, {LUOSI}
state (talk)—xarila, gule, 
{WUGE}
stay—so, {SAO} (Y)

steam—snaghua; zhinla, 
{ZHENGLI} (C:zheng 蒸) (Y); zhinlaja, {ZHENLISANGNI} 
(steamed); tuluu, {LONGCHUAN} 
(C:long 籠) (steamer)
steeleyard—warimaa, {BERMA}
steep—biima, {DOU}
steer (drive)—kaigi {KAIKE} 
(C:kai 開)
step—taiga; taki, {TAKE} 
(C:ta 踏) (Y)
stepfather—huiti aaba, 
{KHUAITU ABA}
stepmother—huiti aama, 
{KHUAITU ANA}
stick—qoki (to stick up); qoka 
soja (sticking up); qoka ruaxja, 
{CHUOKE RUOGHA} (stick into); 
{LANKE} (to get stuck in mud); 
giiguri, {GAIGUN} (C:gun 棍) 
(walking stick)
still—darang, dirang, yang, 
{YAN}
sting—jiida, {ZERDI} 
{ERGHUOSI} (I)
stingy—xiixang, {NAREN}
stir—shdughua, {KHUDUGHO} 
(Y); shdughuajin (stirrer)
stirrup—din
stitch—shdii, xuu, yuu, 
{SHIDI} (Y)
stomach—gujai, xjiu; {XIJIAO} 
(human); {PIEDIGER} (animal)
stone—taashi, taari, {TASHI}
stop—hanbura, {HANGBURA, BAI}
store--huzushai, {HUOZUOSHE} (C:hezuoshe 合作社) (shop); juula, {TIUGE} (v)
storm--shge huraa, qudog, {SHUGUO KHURA, GUOYU} (QD:guoyu 過雨)
story--nantari, {BHUANG}
stove--zuuha, {ZOUHA, ZAOHA, LUZI} (C:luzi 爐子)
straddle--alidagha so, {SHIGHAINEANG ERDALA SAO}
straight--nigeuguadi, {ZHIJIE} (C:zhijie 直接) (straighten)
strain--kujila, {DENGKE CHENGHARA}
strange--guai, {GAIHA}
strap--tisima, {DAIDER} (C:dai 帶) (of leather); {HUYA} (v)
straw--shdaghua, {CHIGHANG BIESI}
stray (to become lost)--qughua, {SANGGHA}
stream--qilidiu, {MULA ARUER}
street--gaidog (C:jiedao 街道), {GEISHANG}
strength--kuji, {KUJI}
stress--kundin tii, dari, {DAMEI DARI}
stretch--jii, shduridi, {SHUDUERTU}
strike--pugha (v); chuida, {CHUIDA, PEGH} (with the fist); toeshida, {GUAQI} (with a stick)
string--diisi, {DASI}
strip--tiili, awadii, {KHUER, TAI}

strive--xahaila, {XIAPANGE}
stroke--chuida, {CHUIDA} (C:chui 揍)
stroll--langla, harigi, {LANGSHI}
strong--hadang, kujidii, {HEN, BATOU, KUJITAI}
struggle--zinzala, {ZHAZHENGNA}
stub--dandanzi, {BEGHZHUER}
stubborn--wanxangui, {JIANGBANJINNI} (QD: jiangbanjin)
study--suri, {SUE} (learn)
stuff--dangxi, {CHIGE}
stumble--budira naa, {BANLA} (C:ban 絆)
stump--dudunzi, {DUNDUNZI} (of a tree)
stun--tulighui xrigi, {DIANDIERE} (to be stunned)
stupid--szaliu gui, guazi, {DIANDUN}
stutter--diibazi, {JIEBER} (QD:jie)
sty--hgaI pang, {KHEGHAI KHUDANG, KHEGHAI HUER}
succeed--chinla, shda, {PUDU, BER}
such (like this)--jiu tigii, tigii, {NINGDANI}
suck--xiiki, duuli, xmu, {SHUMI}; kugua, {KUGUO} (suck milk)
sudden--lurijogdi, {LERJIEGH} (suddenly)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suffer--niizhang, {NIEZHANG}</td>
<td>swift--maliidi, {MALINI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suffocate--wuula ala, {MENKE ALA}</td>
<td>swim--joxiida, hunba, {MUBA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sugar--gaara, {BER}</td>
<td>(v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summer--yeri, {NAZHER}</td>
<td>swing--baida, ghudili,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summit--ghada tulighui, {DIANGELAI, WULA DIANGELAI}</td>
<td>{SHUAIBULA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sun--nara, {NARA}</td>
<td>swollen--hiidadija, {KHAPUDU}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunflower--nara qijiu, {NARA QIJIEGH}</td>
<td>sword--jiida, {QIDUGHUO}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superfluous--luandu, {WULANGDA}</td>
<td>symbol--kama, logni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior (better)--durishdi, {GEZAIHER}</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supper--nuasza, baluu, xluu, {SHULIANKUNI}</td>
<td>table--xrai, {SHIRI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supply--ghua, {HU}</td>
<td>taboo--jila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>support--fuula, tuli (v); fuulana, {HULA} (supporting)</td>
<td>tadpole--dilidimaguu, {SHENGGHA KUERGHAI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sure--xrai, amaszada, {YAGESA} (surely)</td>
<td>tail--suul, {XIER}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surroundings--tada titudi, {TADADUNI}</td>
<td>take--wari, gi, gala, {BARI, TIU, HEGH} (v); ma, {MA} (take it)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprise--guairijigii, {GAIHARA}</td>
<td>tale--nantari, {BIHUANG}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspect--yinaila, {YIN’ER}</td>
<td>talent--ziliu, szaliu, {JILIU}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swagger--hguai gi</td>
<td>talk--gule, xarila, {PIANKE, KELI} (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swallow--qarigi, qaligi, {ZHEKE}</td>
<td>tall--durishdi, {WENDUER}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sway--baida; ghudili, {SHUAIBULA, MERDEGHTU} (hold sway)</td>
<td>tame--surighuasann, {SUERGHASANGNI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweat--kunisizi, {KUOLIERSI}; kunira, {KUOLIER} (v)</td>
<td>tassel--saqog, {SUIZI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweep--xuu, arigha, {SHOU}</td>
<td>taste--datin, {HUNIER}; datinna, {SHANGKE, ANGTUDONG} (tasty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swell--hiidi, {KHAPUTU, KUO}</td>
<td>tawny--qa udog, {SHADANI}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea--qa (black tea with no milk); tuusi qa (tea prepared with roasted millet and butter)</td>
<td>teach--surighua, {SUERGHA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v); surighuaja, {SUER} (to be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
taught); surighuajin
{SUERGHAQIN} (teacher)
tear--cizili, qida, {CIDA, TIDA}
(y); cizili xgha (tear to pieces)
tear--ninpuzi, {LINGPUZI}
teat--kugua, {KUGUO}
teeth--shdi, {SHUDU}
tell--kile, {KELI}
temper (character)--piqi,
{PIQI SHUAKE} (C:piqi 脾氣)
(to display a bad temper)
temple--laghang, muyiu, smeen,
{XIMIE, XIMIAN}
temporary--xandini,
{YIGETEGHAR}
ten--haran
tend--rje, guala, {WUJI, NAO}
(look after)
tender--narighai, {NIERGHAI}
terrible--ayiligha, {SUERDAI,
AYIGHAKUSHIGE}
test--kola, {KAOKE}
(C:kao 考) (Y)
testicles--taxeo, {PAOZI,
PERDEGH}
tether--randan, {JIANGSHENG}
(C:jiangsheng 鞍繩)
that--tenga, tengi, {TIGE}
thaw--xndirii, {SHENGTUER}
(vi), xntiriigha,
{SHENGTUERGHA} (vi)
their--ganhghi, tehgini,
{GANSINI}
them--nira, {NIERE, TERGHAI}
there--tirii, {TIKERDA,
TIKHADA}
these--nehgi, nesgi {NISI}
they--tehgi, ganhgi, {NUGUSI,
GANSI}; gan ghoorila, gan
ghuila, {GANGHULA} (for two)
thick--jujuan, {ZHUZHUANG};
jujuandi (to be too thick);
jujuandini, (thickly)
thief--hualighii, {KHUERGHAIJI,
LIUERJIANG}; hUILighila
(thieving)
thigh--guhanjisi, {SHIGHAI}
thin--hgalanbuu, narin,
{MIANGAN, SHANGAN}; hgalal,
{MAODA} (become thin)
thing (object)--dangxi, dundog,
{WOJIAN}
think--muula, {MULA};
muulansan, {MULAKUNI,
SANER} (thought); muulaguni
(thinking)
third--ghurandari
thirst--dasi, {NUDASI} (to be
thirsty)
thirty--hujin
this--ne, {NI, NIGE}
thong--yiuyan, {MIELA}
thorn--guusizi, {ERGHUOSI}
thoroughly--yiigula,
{YIGUALA}
thousand--menghan
thread--shdasi, shdazi, {DASI}
threat--ayigha, {AYIGHA}
(threaten)
three--ghuran
threshold--haligha, puzigha,
{DI BOSIGHO}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Huzhu Mongghul</th>
<th>Sino-Platonic Paper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thrift--</td>
<td>xiixang, {KHURA}</td>
<td>(thrift)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throat--</td>
<td>huula, {KHUOLO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throb--</td>
<td>diuli, duuli, {DIAOLI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>through--</td>
<td>tang gharagha,</td>
<td>{NUOQI}; yiiguala, {YIGUA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw--</td>
<td>tashida, hgala,</td>
<td>{HEGERLA, TIERLA, KERLA}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thrust--</td>
<td>quki, {RUOGHA, CHIGE, CHUOKE}</td>
<td>(C:chu戳)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thumb--</td>
<td>shge huriqi, {SHUGO KHURU}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thunder--</td>
<td>qugude, {PANGENLA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tick--</td>
<td>huni bosi, {KHUONI BOSI}</td>
<td>(sheep tick)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie--</td>
<td>jirigha; hujadji, {HUYA} (to tie to); huruudii, {HUORO} (to tie around)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiger--</td>
<td>basi, {BERSI}; turang foori (1-year-old cub)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tight--</td>
<td>qirog, {CHENGGHA, BATOU}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tile--</td>
<td>wajog, {WAZHEGH}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time--</td>
<td>sghuu, saguu {JIA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiny--</td>
<td>mula, {SHIZHEGH, MULA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tire--</td>
<td>yida; yidaja, {YADA} (to be tired)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>title--</td>
<td>nira, {NIERE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tobacco--</td>
<td>huangssaa (for a pipe), {HUANGYAN} (C:yan煅)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today--</td>
<td>niuduri, {NIAODUER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toil--</td>
<td>juarilang, {ZHOBULANG}; {ZHUOBO} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toe--</td>
<td>huri, {KHUER KHURU}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tolerable--</td>
<td>naila, {RENAIGEJI BERKUNI} (C:rennai忍耐)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>together--</td>
<td>handi, {HANGTU}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomb--</td>
<td>fuuri, {HUER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow--</td>
<td>malang, maghaxi, {MUGHASHI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tongue--</td>
<td>kilee, {KELIE} (body part)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tonight--</td>
<td>niusuani, {NIAOSHULIAN}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too (extremely)--</td>
<td>yixida, caihuada, {TAIXIAN}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth--</td>
<td>shdi, {SHUDE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top--</td>
<td>tulighui (T:thod dbus), {DIANGELAI}; durishdini, {ZHAGHA, DIERE} (to have a pointed top)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topple--</td>
<td>sajira, fura, {HUBERA, WUNA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tormented--</td>
<td>hudu wudi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torture--</td>
<td>pughaji szagha, {MOJIE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total--</td>
<td>yiigua, {YIGUA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>totter--</td>
<td>murii snburii, {SHUAIBULA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch--</td>
<td>kuanda, nogha, {DANGGUOGHA, KONGDI} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tour--</td>
<td>langla, harigi, {HERGE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toward--</td>
<td>muxiji, {JI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towel--</td>
<td>loxjii (T:lag phyis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tower--</td>
<td>qoshiden, {TER, SUERBERGHA} (T:mchod rten)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>town--</td>
<td>wuuzin, {GEISHANG, BAZER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trade--dalidi; maimaigi&lt;br&gt;(C:maimai 貿易), {MAIMAGE}&lt;br&gt;(v)</td>
<td>trot--maliihan yiu, {ZOU YAO}&lt;br&gt;(C:zou 奏)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tradition--dangmaani (T:deng ma ni), didangmaa (T:dus deng ma), kuichin, darisuu,&lt;br&gt;{KUCHEN} (traditional custom)</td>
<td>trouble--mada, {MAHUAN, MADA} (C:mafan 麻煩)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trail--kolju, {LAKE} (C:la 拉) (v)</td>
<td>trousers--muladiili, {MODUO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train--ghal tiriga (conveyance); surighua, {SUERGHA} (training)</td>
<td>true--jub, {ZHUO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translate--furali</td>
<td>trust--xrai, {XINHUOLO} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transmit--awuji, {ARUERJI}</td>
<td>truth--duila, xraighani, {ZHUONI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transportation--laki, {LAKE} (C:la 拉)</td>
<td>tug--shbinzi laki, {kujitai LAKE}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trap--janog</td>
<td>tumor--liuzi, {LIUZI} (C:liu 瘤)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trash--lii yanglajin, {ZANGNANGNI} (C:zang 髒)</td>
<td>turn--fura, {HERGEGHA}; furagha, {KUERMER, HUERBER} (turn over)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traveler--langlajin, {LANGLAQIN}</td>
<td>turnip--tiritna, {CHIGHANG TUERMA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treason--fura</td>
<td>twenty--hurin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treasure--guzan {ERTANG MIANGU}</td>
<td>twig--sala, {SHAOSHER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treat--daila; zhiki, {JU} (treat medically)</td>
<td>twilight--gigeen, {GIGANRA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree--xjuzi, xjusi, {BEGHE}</td>
<td>twine--wudog, yidog, {NAREN DIESI}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tremble--xrigudi, {SHUKUTU, SHUGUTU}</td>
<td>twirl--xrigi, tamu, {TUOMO, MALI HERGEGHA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trench--jangmu, {TUDUER, GHUER}</td>
<td>twist--mrihgi, {MERKE, TUOMO} (v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribe--bang, {BANG}</td>
<td>twitter--xuu hiila, {SHIBAO KHAILA}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribune--tulighui, {TERGHAI}</td>
<td>two--ghoori, {GHUER}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trick--jandi, {HUERGHUER} (v); jandii, {DUGHULI ZHUERGE} (trickery)</td>
<td>udder--kugua, dalang, {KUGUO}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ugly--muu, {MAOSAI, SUERDAI}</td>
<td>U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ulcer--yara, \{YARA\}
unable--ada; xuu ada, \{AIBER\}
\textit{(unable to win)}
uncle--aaga, shge aaba, \{AWU, ABEL, DADA, SHUGUABA\}
uncooked--tiugu, \{TUGU\}
uncover--jiiki, awu, \{AMANI HEGHGE, HEGHGE\}
uncultivated--xiiti ghajari, \{SAITARISANG GHAZHER\} \textit{(land)}
under--dura, boni, \{DUORO\}
understand--mude, yangla, \{MAIDIE, MIEDIE\}
undress--nikuju, \{TAI, DIERNANG TAI\}
uneven--texjin gua, \{GANSAN LAIRI\}
unfasten--alidigha, \{TAI\}
unhurried--siida, suida, \{WUDANG\}
unity--nige guuzi; handiladi, \{HANGTULAGHA\} \textit{(united)}
unlock--nii, \{NIE\}
unmixed--yii, nilaghaji, \{SAIHUOLOUGHA\}
unnecessary--biiyog gua, \{BIYAO GUANG\}
\textit{(C:biyao 必要)}
untie--tiigili, \{TAI, ERDER\}
unwilling--duralan gua, \{DURUANG GUANG\}
unwrap--alidigha, \{TAI, ERDER\}
up--durishdi, jighadi, \{ZHAGHAIJ, DIERENI\}; durishdiji \textit{(upwards)}

uproot--shdee, \{ZHUERTAI SHUDI\}
urge--tirigu, \{TUERKE\}
urgent--yojin, \{CHENGGAHA\}
urine--xiisi, \{SHERSI\}; xiina, \{SHER\} \textit{(urinate)}
use--jari, yangla, \{JIARI\}
useful--yanglagundi, jarigundi, \{JIARIKUNI\}
utilize--yangla, \{JIARI\}

V

vagina--babii, shdigu, \{DUGU\}
vague--xan gua, \{XIAN GUANG\}
valley--ghuali, \{GHUER\}
vamp (of a boot)--hai bangzi, \{HAIBANGZI\}
vanity--hguai gi, \{SHUGUOSHI\}
variegated--sanba yanba, \{ZABURUN\}
various--amahgiiniida, \{YANGYIERDI\}
vast--shgemama, \{SHUGUO, WULAN\}
veal--buruu muha, \{BURER MUGHA\}
vegetable--sai, \{SAI\}
vengeance--kama awu, \{KHAROU\}
vertebra (first of the neck)--gangsa yasi
vertical--tusundi \{SHUNDI\}
very--yixida, hudu, hudi, \{HUDU\}; ne hudu, \textit{(this very)}
vicinity--tada, {TADA}
view--rje, {JIKUNI}
vigil--sga, {XIGE}
vigorous--hin, {HEN}
village--ayili (T:yl), {YIMEGH}
vinegar--suu {CU} (C:cu 醋)
vioLate--suula, {BUDIER}
virgin--arin, turang
visible--sga, {QIGEJIBERKUNI}
visit--sgalidi, {WUJILA}; langla, {LANGGLA} (y)
vitriol--biifan {PEIHUANG}
voice--hgari, {DAO}
vomit--bolija, {BERJIE, WOSHI} (y)
vow--ndigha, zhiu, {ZHOU DI} (y)

W

wade--hula moori, {MUBA}
wag (the tail)--shaida, {SHUAIBULA}
wage--seeri, {QIER} (C:qian 錢)
wast--nuri, {NURU}
wait--sgaa, {XIGE} (to wait)
waiter--warj, {ZHIHU}
wake--sariga, {XIERR, XIERGE}
walk--yiu, {YAO, HERGE} (y)
wall--walighasi, rmaa, {BERGHASI}; {NANGTUO} (wall of a home)
wallet--penbozi, {PIANBAOZI}
wander--langla, guangdangla, {HERGE}
war--pughalidi
warm--halang, {KHALONG, WENCHUER}; nigiji halangna, {KHALONGHER} (some what warm); halanghan (warmth); halangdina, {KHALA} (become warm)
warn--mudegha, {MIEDIEGHA}
wash--ghua, {GHUA}
wasp--mori zangnaa, {SHAZUONO}
waste--arang suudila, jinadisuu, {LANGHUI} (wasteland)
watch--rje, nog, {NAO} (w); {WUJ} (timepiece)
water--suzu, {SUSA} {SULA} (y); szudii, {SHANGAN} (watery); qurigua, {KAISHUI} (boiled water)
wave--baida, ghudili, {SHANKE} (y)
way (path)--moori, {MER}; tiriiji, {TIUJI} (toward that way); diriji, {NIUJI} (toward this way)
we--budahgi, budasgi, ndahgi, ndasgi, {DASI}
weak--julan, {RANG}; hgala, {ZHUOLIAN} (to become weak)
wealthy--bayandii, {BAYANG}; bayanja, {BAYAJI} (become wealthy)
weapon--sawaa
wear--musi; musiguna, {MUSI, ZHUO} (to wear); nanba,
{LIANBIE} (to wear a garment over one's shoulder)
weary--yida, {YADA}
weather--tingere, duri, {DUER, TIANGERE}
web--hahii shdasi, {HAHAITER}
wedding--hurin, {KHURONG}; hurin ghua, {KHURONG DI} (to celebrate a wedding)
week--xnqi (C:xingqi 星期), {DUOLANG}
weep--ulaa, {YILA}
weir--huuba {BA}
weigh--kundin; warimaala, {DAMEI, CHENKE} (v)
welcome--ziile, {JIELIE} (C:jie 接)
well--szu jin (C:jing 井) (of water)
wet--niiten, {NIUTIAN}; niitendi, {NIUTIANTU} (become wet)
what--yan, yanna, {YANG}; amahgii sanba (what kind of)
wheat--buudi, {BIDI}
wheel--guli, {GULUER}
when--ali sghuu, kijee, {KEJIE}
where--anjii, anjii, {ANGJII}
whetstone--buliu, {BULIAO}
which--ali, {ALI, AGE}; alinga, alingi, {ALIGE} (which one)
while--dilani; jangdini, {YIGE TEGHER} (for a while)
whip--yiuyan, {MIELA}; yiuyanda (y)
whirlwind--shulidingii, {XUANHUER}

(C:xuanfeng 旋風)
whisper--xrixiri, {XULISHUORUOLI} (v)
whistle--xuixui piila, {BEIBER}
white--qighaan, {CHIGHANG}; qighaanda, {CHIGHAIRA} (to become white)
who--ken, {KAN} (question)
whoever--kenbiisan, {KANBISA BI}
whole--yiigua, {YIGUA}
whose--kenni, {KANNI}
why--amaga, {YALA}
wide--kuanzhan, wuudi, {KUANZHAN}; wuudija, {KUANZHANTUGHA} (widen);
kuanzhandi, {KUANZHAN} (width)
width--yangla, {JIARI} (power over)
wife--beeri, yiri, {BIERI, SHINAGU}; {BERGANDIAO}
(water)
wife--beeri, yiri, {BIERI, SHINAGU}; {BERGANDIAO}
(water)
wife--beeri, yiri, {BIERI, SHINAGU}; {BERGANDIAO}
(water)
wife--beeri, yiri, {BIERI, SHINAGU}; {BERGANDIAO}
(water)
wife--beeri, yiri, {BIERI, SHINAGU}; {BERGANDIAO}
(water)
wife--beeri, yiri, {BIERI, SHINAGU}; {BERGANDIAO}
(water)
wife--beeri, yiri, {BIERI, SHINAGU}; {BERGANDIAO}
(water)
winter--rguli (T:dgun), {WUGUER}; rguli nogxji, {WUGUER NUOQI} (to pass the winter)
wipe--cagi, {CAKE} (C:ca 擦)
wipe--timuri shdasi, {TIERMER DASI}
wise--ziliu, {JILIU}
wish--muulasan, {MULASANG, ZHIWANGLA} (v)
wither--huu, {ROUTU, KUO HUGU}
wolf--kadan, {CHUNA}
woman--nine kun, {XIJUNKONG, SHINAGU}; shdugu yiri {NINGGER} (old woman)
wood--muudi, {MOTU}
woodland--fii, {BEGH TANGZI, HUAI}
wool--ghuasi, {KHUONI WUGHUASI}; julan ghuasi, {ZHUOLIAN GHUASI} (soft wool)
word--ugo, {WUGE} (speech)
work--larihga wari (T:las ka), {WEILIE}; wari, {WEILIE GE} (v)
worker--larihgaqi, {WEILIEGEQIN}
world--hara ghajari, {YANGSHI} (C:shi 世)
worm--huarighii, {ZHUOLIAN KHUERGHAI}
worn--huuqira, {KHAOQINRA}
worry--ayi, pofanra, {AYI, MULA, NAOJIAN, PUOHUANRA}

worse--muudi, {HUAIDA, MAOTU} (worsen)
worship--dasiba, dashiba (dad pa), {JIERBARI, TERGHAI MERGU}
wound--narilagha, {NANWEILA} (to be wounded)
wrangle--jangla, {JIANGLA}
wreck--buragha, xjuan rgha, {BUDERASANGNI}
wrestle--walidi (wrestling match); walidijin, {WUOKO BARI} (wrestler)
wrinkle--ququra, {CHUKE}; finburagha, {CHUCHURI} (to become wrinkled)
write--juri, juri, {ZHURU}
wrong--suula, {ERDA}

Y

yak--hiinog, musi, {MUSUN}
yard--xaazi, {KHUORANG}
yawn--nuurishidaja, {NER DAODA}
year--fan, {HUANG}; derixjin, {GUONIAN} (C:nian 年) (next year); shdanang, {WUDANI HUANG} (last year); rjiang, {WUJINI HUANG} (year before last); nang, {NIEHUANG} (this year)
yearn--muula, panki, sana, {PANKE, SANA, MULA}
yell--qora, doda, {KHAILA}
yellow--xra, {SHA}
yes--nba, ghanla, {AOLAI, ZHA}
(T:'o los)
yesterday--quguduri,
{CHUGUDUER}
yield--ghari, {GHER}
yogurt--tarog
you--qi, {Qi}
young--lalang, {NASI MULA};
jaliuxog, hgualiqog,
{LAOSHUANGBER} (the
youngest)
your--qini, {QINI}
yourself--qi jina, {QI JIENANG}
youth--lalang kun, hgualiqog,
(person); dide kun,
{NONGKONG} (male)
yurt--ger

Z

zero--nigeda gua, {LIN, YANG A
GUANG} (C:ling 零)
**Bibliography**

Anonymous
1983 *Huzhu tuzu zizhixian gaikuang* [General Conditions of Huzhu Mongghul Autonomous County]. Xining: Qinghai renmin chubanshe [Qinghai People’s Press]
1984 *Huangnan zangzu zizhizhou gaikuang* [General Conditions of Huangnan Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture]. Xining: Qinghai renmin chubanshe [Qinghai People’s Press].
1986a *Datong huizu tuzu zizhixian gaikuang* [General Conditions of Datong Hui and Monguor Autonomous County]. Xining: Qinghai renmin chubanshe [Qinghai People’s Press].
1986b *Minhe huizu tuzu zizhixian gaikuang* [General Conditions of Minhe Hui and Mongguel Autonomous County]. Xining: Qinghai renmin chubanshe [Qinghai People’s Press].

Chen Naixiong

Chinggeltai (Chenggeltei)
1988 *Tuzu yu huiyu calliao* [Mongghul Language Materials]. Huhehaote: Nei menggu renmin chubanshe [Inner Mongolia People’s Press].

Diao Wenqing and Cai Xiling

Gao Shufeng
1985 *Qinghai tuzu shehui lishi diaocha* [Social Historical Investigation of the Qinghai Monguor]. Xining: Qinghai renmin chubanshe [Qinghai People’s Press].

Hasbatar
1986 *Tuzu yu cihui* [Mongghul Language Vocabulary]. Huhehaote: Nei menggu renmin chubanshe [Inner Mongolia People’s Press].

Hu Jun and Kevin Stuart
Hu Jun and Kevin Stuart  

Li Keyu  

Limusishiden and Kevin Stuart  

Limusishiden (Li Dechun 李得春) and Kevin Stuart  

Li Youlou  

Li Xuewei and Kevin Stuart  

Lu Wunzhun  

Ma Guangxing  

Ma Zhengliang  

---

24Featured lexical items are all from Huzhu Mongghul Autonomous County. Other Monguor dialects and areas are not represented.
Mitchell, Roger E.
1996 Review of John A. Z’Graggen
Creation Through Death or Deception.
Asian Folklore Studies. LV:2, 391-392.

Poppe, Nicholas
1955 Introduction to Mongolian
Comparative Studies. Helsinki:
Suomalais-Ugrilainen Seuna.

Qau Sinhua, huraji turulasanni
[collector]
1992 Mongghulnu Rgee Gigu Darsuu
[Mongghul Funeral Customs].
Gharighasan Ghajari: HMNDX
Szarbaton Da Qii Uilenu Ger [Huzhu
Mongghul Autonomous County,
Nationality Culture Office].
(mimeograph)

Qausinhua and Dunwunzhin
1991 Mongghulnu Urog Warigu Darsuu
[Mongghul Wedding Customs]. Weiyuan,
Huzhu Mongghul Autonomous County,
Qinghai Province. (mimeograph)

Qian Zhongli
1988 The Chilie Mountain Mongghul
Marriage. Qinghai Local Conditions and
Social Customs. Xining: Qinghai
People’s Press. 91-98. (In Chinese)

QiiSinhua
1989 Sgildu Diurigumunu Gui [Greedy].
Chileb. 4*:21-24.

Qinghai Province Compiling Group
1985 Social and Historical Investigation
of the Qinghai Mongghuer. Xining:
Qinghai People’s Press. (In Chinese)

Qu Qingshan
1985 A Glimpse of Mongghul Nationality
Funerals. Qinghai Social Sciences
105-109. (In Chinese)

Rona-Tas, A.
1966 Tibeto-Mongolic: The Tibetan
Loanwords of Monguor and the
Development of Archaic Tibetan Dialects.
The Hague: Mouton.

Schram, LMJ
1954 The Monguor of the Kansu-Tibetan
Frontier, I: Their Origin, History, and
Social Organization. Transactions of the
American Philosophical Society. 44 (1).
1957 The Monguor of the Kansu-Tibetan
Frontier, II: Their Religious Life.
Transactions of the American
Philosophical Society. 44 (2).
1961 The Monguor of the Kansu-Tibetan
Frontier, III: Records of the Monguor
Clans. Transactions of the American
Philosophical Society. 44 (3).
1962 Marriage Among the T’ou-jen of
Kansu (Gansu). (translator Jean H.
Wincheil). Human Area Relations File
AE9.

Schröder, Dominik
1952-1953 On the Religion of the Tujen
of the Sining Region. (translator Richard

Stuart, Kevin editor
1992 Young Scholar Explores Tu’s
Culture, Tradition. China Daily. 11:3258
(January 9), 6.

Stuart, Kevin and Hu Jun
1989 A Tu Nationality Harvest Festival.
China Reconstructs (North American
1990a Stories of the Tu Nationality by
Bao Yizhi. China Today (North America
1990b The Tu Nadun. China Pictorial.
6:36-37.
1991a The Tu Fala: Trance Mediums of
23:28-35.
Stuart, Kevin and Hu Jun

Stuart, Kevin and Limusishiden, editors

Sun Zhu

Üjiyediin Chuluu

Wang Haiyan and Chao Shenglin, editors (translator Liu Feng)

Wang Xianzheng and Kevin Stuart


Wang Xianzheng, Zhu Yongzhong, and Kevin Stuart

Xi Yuanlin
1983 Tuyu goucifa fanli [Common Examples of Mongghul Language Wordbuilding]. Qinghai minzu xueyuan xuebao. 77-86.
1986 Tongren diqu tuzu fang yan [Tongren Region Monggour Dialect]. Qinghai minzu xueyuan xuebao. 63-80.

Zhaonastu

Zhu Yongzhong and Kevin Stuart

Zhu Yongzhong, Üjiyediin Chuluu, and Kevin Stuart
Since June 2006, all new issues of *Sino-Platonic Papers* have been published electronically on the Web and are accessible to readers at no charge. Back issues are also being released periodically in e-editions, also free. For a complete catalog of *Sino-Platonic Papers*, with links to free issues, visit the *SPP* Web site.

www.sino-platonic.org